

Release Notes

6.4

*SimCorp Solutions
Based on version 6.4
July 2018*

PUBLISHED BY

SimCorp A/S
Weidekampsgade 16
2300 Copenhagen S
Denmark

Published July 2018

Writer: SimCorp Documentation

Based on: 6.4



SimCorp Dimension® is owned by SimCorp A/S. Copyright © 1994-2019. All Rights Reserved. No part of this document may be reproduced or transmitted in any form or by any means, electronic or mechanical, including photocopying and recording, or information storage and retrieval systems, for any purpose without express written permission of SimCorp A/S.



Portions of this software are owned by FinancialCAD Corporation and are used under license. Copyright © 1991-2019 FinancialCAD Corporation. All Rights Reserved.

FINCAD™, ANALYTICS BY FINCAD™ and the ANALYTICS BY FINCAD Logo are registered and unregistered trademarks of FinancialCAD Corporation, and are used under license.



Electronic messaging for Collateral Management processes may access the MarginSphereTM Messaging Platform owned by AcadiaSoft, Inc., and for such access all terms and conditions set forth in the MarginSphereTM service agreement apply. MarginSphereTM, the MarginSphere logo, and the AcadiaSoft logo are registered and unregistered trademarks of AcadiaSoft, Inc., and are used under license.

If you have any comments to the contents of this document or suggestions for topics to be included in a future updating of this document, please do not hesitate to send them by mail to:
SCDimension.doc@SimCorp.com.

Contents

| | | |
|----------|--|-----------|
| 1 | Introduction | 11 |
| 1.1 | Document conventions | 11 |
| 1.2 | Functionality available in earlier versions | 11 |
| 1.3 | New modules | 11 |
| 1.4 | Other SimCorp Dimension release documents | 12 |
| 1.5 | Additional Information | 12 |
| 1.6 | Support schedule | 13 |
| 2 | Accounting | 14 |
| 2.1 | End-of-Period | 14 |
| 2.1.1 | IFRS9 | 14 |
| 2.1.2 | Deferred Profit/Loss | 20 |
| 2.2 | Financial Accounting | 22 |
| 2.2.1 | Added AOCI balances on tax lot opening balances | 22 |
| 2.2.2 | Rollover spread change transactions support tax lot accounting | 23 |
| 2.2.3 | US GAAP | 23 |
| 2.2.4 | Italian GAAP and Tax | 27 |
| 2.2.5 | Original Issue Discount (OID) | 40 |
| 2.2.6 | Patched from 19.01 | 54 |
| 2.3 | NAIC | 58 |
| 2.3.1 | Patched from 6.41 | 58 |
| 2.4 | Private Debt | 58 |
| 2.4.1 | Change of holding setup for Loan Facilities | 58 |
| 2.4.2 | Check Before Upgrade and Conversion program of split for unsettled positions [6.2] [6.3] | 58 |
| 3 | Administration | 60 |
| 3.1 | Collaterals | 60 |
| 3.1.1 | Enable front office users to approve collateral transactions from back office | 60 |
| 3.1.2 | Distinguish OTC initial margins and OTC variation margins in collateral workflow | 61 |
| 3.1.3 | View the excess margin percentage in Collateral Manager and Margin Manager [6.3.1-IMPL] | 62 |
| 3.1.4 | Import Collateral Internal Cost data [6.3] | 63 |
| 3.1.5 | Added time and date for margin call communication to counterparty | 64 |
| 3.1.6 | Enhanced the batch job for cleaning up Collateral Manager results .. | 64 |
| 3.1.7 | [New module] Fund look through - Collateral Manager | 65 |
| 3.1.8 | Enhanced rounding rules | 67 |
| 3.1.9 | Collateral blocking workflow | 69 |
| 3.1.10 | MTA in different currency to collateral pool currency | 69 |

| | | |
|----------|--|-----------|
| 3.1.11 | View/send comments to MarginSphere from Margin Manager [6.1-IMPL][6.2-IMPL][6.3-IMPL] | 70 |
| 3.1.12 | Add a party group to a collateral rule group | 71 |
| 3.1.13 | Increase existing position for securities lending trades | 72 |
| 3.1.14 | Deliver/recall collateral that exceeds maximum trade volume | 72 |
| 3.1.15 | Formulas in Margin Call Tracker | 73 |
| 3.2 | Corporate Actions | 73 |
| 3.2.1 | Improved corporate action information for Corporate Actions Manager and Corporate Action Elections [6.1-IMPL] [6.2-IMPL] [6.3-IMPL] [6.3.1-IMPL] | 73 |
| 3.2.2 | Support for QCAS code from SWIFT SR 2017 for corporate actions [6.0-IMPL] [6.1-IMPL] [6.2-IMPL] [6.3-IMPL][6.3.1-IMPL] | 74 |
| 3.2.3 | Automatic calculation of amount of rights to be exercised [6.1-IMPL] [6.2-IMPL][6.3-IMPL] | 74 |
| 3.2.4 | Import SWIFT MT565 messages to Corporate Actions Manager and Corporate Action Elections [6.3-IMPL] | 75 |
| 3.2.5 | Portfolio segment for taxable corporate actions | 77 |
| 3.2.6 | Use batch job to update election information | 77 |
| 3.3 | Fund events | 78 |
| 3.3.1 | Update multiple fund event calendar dates at once | 78 |
| 3.3.2 | Patched from 19.01 | 78 |
| 3.4 | General Reconciliation | 78 |
| 3.4.1 | Distribute bulk cash across several securities | 78 |
| 3.4.2 | Suspend incoming payments during reconciliation | 80 |
| 3.4.3 | Redistribute remaining force-close amounts across selected transactions | 82 |
| 3.4.4 | Funnel reconciliation excludes previous ID matches | 83 |
| 3.4.5 | Reconciliation Manager avoids duplicate matching index values for manual matches | 84 |
| 3.4.6 | Reconciliation can proceed when external file is missing | 84 |
| 3.4.7 | Use sub-layouts in the Results Monitor applet of Reconciliation Manager | 85 |
| 3.5 | Portfolio Calculation | 85 |
| 3.5.1 | Enabled four eyes approval for static data and price changes in portfolio calculations | 85 |
| 3.5.2 | Enabled payment reconciliation fields for cash buckets | 87 |
| 3.6 | Portfolio events | 88 |
| 3.6.1 | Update multiple portfolio event calendar dates at once | 88 |
| 3.6.2 | Patched from 19.01 | 88 |
| 4 | Connectivity | 89 |
| 4.1 | Communication Server | 89 |
| 4.1.1 | Execute Testbench test cases via batch job | 89 |
| 4.1.2 | General improvements of the Communication Server solution [6.3] .. | 89 |
| 4.2 | Trade Repository Pool | 90 |

| | | |
|----------|---|------------|
| 4.2.1 | Added Index CDS seniority data for ESMA reporting | 90 |
| 5 | Controlling | 91 |
| 5.1 | Compliance Manager | 91 |
| 5.1.1 | Apply responsible groups across your compliance rule sets | 91 |
| 5.1.2 | Display charts and pivot tables based on Result History | 93 |
| 5.1.3 | Include settlement risk up to the settlement date [6.3-IMPL] | 95 |
| 5.1.4 | Handle not rated securities and issuers in rating measures [6.3-IMPL] | 96 |
| 5.1.5 | Front office API enhancements | 97 |
| 5.1.6 | Support for alternative security ID systems | 98 |
| 5.1.7 | Create rules based on external lists | 99 |
| 5.1.8 | Define global exposure rules with custom initial exposure calculation [6.3-IMPL] | 102 |
| 5.1.9 | Set read-only user access to Lists | 102 |
| 5.1.10 | Export pre and post-trade compliance results to Excel | 103 |
| 5.1.11 | Support for compliance override using the Front Office API [6.3-IMPL] | 104 |
| 5.1.12 | Reduce the amount of data that Compliance Manager stores | 105 |
| 5.1.13 | Improved user interface features in the Rule Entry applet | 106 |
| 5.1.14 | Patched from 6.41 | 108 |
| 5.1.15 | Patched from 19.01 | 110 |
| 5.2 | Middle Office | 111 |
| 5.2.1 | Enhanced logic for risk mitigation handling when calculating Solvency II analytics for multi-legged instruments | 111 |
| 5.2.2 | View Position Results for several days | 112 |
| 5.3 | Risk Monitoring | 112 |
| 5.3.1 | MSCI RiskMetrics interface solution enhancements | 112 |
| 5.3.2 | Patched from 6.4 | 115 |
| 5.3.3 | Patched from 19.01 | 118 |
| 6 | Data | 124 |
| 6.1 | Alternative Investments | 124 |
| 6.1.1 | Allow entry-level alternative investments transactions | 124 |
| 6.1.2 | Multi-GAAP accounting for flexible values [6.3-IMPL] | 124 |
| 6.1.3 | Easier configuration of analytics | 126 |
| 6.1.4 | View figures from multiple accounting frameworks in the same widget | 127 |
| 6.1.5 | View total paid-in and total distributed standard balances | 127 |
| 6.1.6 | View additional multiples to measure investment performance | 128 |
| 6.1.7 | View additional multiples to measure fund performance | 129 |
| 6.1.8 | Calculate custom multiples | 130 |
| 6.1.9 | View position calculation results | 130 |
| 6.1.10 | Configuration transport for middle office configurations | 130 |
| 6.2 | FX | 131 |
| 6.2.1 | Support for FX NDF in static data [6.3.1-IMPL] | 131 |

| | | |
|----------|--|------------|
| 6.2.2 | Simplified calculation of the quotation portfolio FX rate | 132 |
| 6.2.3 | Added OTC ISIN and CFI codes to FX trades (MiFID II) [6.3-IMPL] [6.31-IMPL] | 132 |
| 6.2.4 | Use yield curves from the pricing definition for theoretical pricing of legs on FX options or forwards [6.2-IMPL] [6.3-IMPL] [6.3.1-IMPL] | 132 |
| 6.3 | Market Data | 133 |
| 6.3.1 | Enhanced smoothness for monotone convex interpolation [6.3-IMPL] | 133 |
| 6.3.2 | Valuation and analytics for loan facilities | 133 |
| 6.3.3 | Added support for the MTM (mark-to-market) variant of CCS trades | 136 |
| 6.3.4 | Patched from 19.01 | 137 |
| 6.4 | Reference Data | 138 |
| 6.4.1 | Added a new portfolio segment for structuring authorisations according to status codes [6.31-IMPL] | 138 |
| 6.4.2 | New batch task for cleaning up external fund decompositions [6.3.1- IMPL] | 139 |
| 6.5 | Securities | 140 |
| 6.5.1 | Improved the modify and delete workflow for internal trades | 140 |
| 6.5.2 | Enhanced functionality in External Client Trades and Deal Allocation [6.3.1-IMPL] | 140 |
| 6.5.3 | Changed the maturity date for perpetual bonds to synchronise with Bloomberg and WM | 140 |
| 6.5.4 | Patched from 6.41 | 141 |
| 6.5.5 | Patched from 19.01 | 142 |
| 6.6 | Tools | 144 |
| 6.6.1 | [New module] Alerts web API | 144 |
| 6.6.2 | Log Gateway - email body and call script | 145 |
| 6.6.3 | Additional filters for Log gateway rules | 147 |
| 6.6.4 | Added new option in Formula Editor | 147 |
| 6.6.5 | Converting a text string to a number | 148 |
| 6.6.6 | Customise grid layout by grouping and hiding columns | 148 |
| 6.6.7 | Added filter authorisation in Alerts Inbox | 150 |
| 6.6.8 | Link related alerts in Alerts Inbox | 151 |
| 6.6.9 | Enhanced filter functionality for dashboard widgets | 156 |
| 6.6.10 | SQL views added to FlexForm Manager [6.3] | 156 |
| 6.6.11 | Copy data import templates in FlexForm Manager [6.3] | 157 |
| 6.6.12 | Added filter options for FlexForm widgets [6.3] | 157 |
| 6.6.13 | Patched from 6.41 | 158 |
| 7 | General Changes | 159 |
| 7.1 | General functionality enhancements | 159 |
| 7.1.1 | New user manuals | 159 |
| 7.2 | SimCorp Dimension Portal | 161 |
| 7.2.1 | Customise SimCorp Dimension portal background | 161 |
| 8 | Maintenance | 163 |

| | | |
|-----------|--|------------|
| 8.1 | Services | 163 |
| 8.1.1 | [New module] Elastic Services | 163 |
| 8.1.2 | Service Platform - possibility to enable/disable service and/or groups | 166 |
| 8.1.3 | Removed obsolete service functionality | 168 |
| 8.1.4 | Service Type Configuration contains service parameter sets | 169 |
| 8.2 | System Access | 170 |
| 8.2.1 | Authorise access to web API commands | 170 |
| 8.2.2 | Patched from 6.41 | 170 |
| 8.3 | System Maintenance | 171 |
| 8.3.1 | Enhanced performance evaluation for Trade Processing dashboards [6.3.1-IMPL] | 171 |
| 8.3.2 | [New module] Data Privacy Management | 172 |
| 8.3.3 | Enabled additional windows for configuration transport | 173 |
| 8.3.4 | Browse to external document file | 174 |
| 8.3.5 | Configure customised logon messages | 175 |
| 8.3.6 | Optional use of manage Any Queue database privilege | 177 |
| 8.3.7 | Simplified workflow for connecting to the cloud | 178 |
| 8.3.8 | Patched from 6.41 | 179 |
| 9 | Performance | 182 |
| 9.1 | Performance Calculation | 182 |
| 9.1.1 | Decomposition of 1-legged CDS improves return breakdowns in FIPA | 182 |
| 9.1.2 | Calc. FIPA local return using PC | 183 |
| 10 | Portfolio Management | 184 |
| 10.1 | Asset Manager | 184 |
| 10.1.1 | Added swaption transactions and simulations to Asset Manager | 184 |
| 10.1.2 | Create simulations and transactions for bilateral bond swap positions in Asset Manager | 185 |
| 10.1.3 | Unwind or increase post-trade bilateral cross-currency swaps in Asset Manager | 185 |
| 10.1.4 | [New Module] Asset Manager - Accounting Analytics Advanced | 186 |
| 10.1.5 | Manage cash movement transactions directly from the Cash Viewer | 190 |
| 10.1.6 | Handle not rated securities and issuers in rating measures [6.3-IMPL] | 191 |
| 10.1.7 | Display benchmark and model portfolio ratings fields in Asset Manager | 192 |
| 10.1.8 | Open transaction windows from positions in Portfolio Sheet | 193 |
| 10.1.9 | Search on Issuer Group in the Data Selector | 194 |
| 10.1.10 | Save data viewing option in Asset Manager layout | 195 |
| 10.1.11 | Release single orders and transactions excluded from approval [6.3-IMPL] | 196 |
| 10.1.12 | Apply default override reasons to compliance results in Asset Manager | 197 |
| 10.1.13 | Improved workflow using compliance overrides in Asset Manager ... | 197 |

| | | |
|-----------|---|------------|
| 10.1.14 | Create value-based simulations dependent on the trade side in Asset Manager [6.1-IMPL] [6.2-IMPL] [6.3-IMPL] | 199 |
| 10.1.15 | Support for order expiry via the front Office API | 201 |
| 10.1.16 | Confirm or reject re-validation attempt for accepted compliance override [6.1-IMPL] [6.2-IMPL] [6.3-IMPL] | 201 |
| 10.1.17 | Display transaction events in the Order Outbox applet | 201 |
| 10.1.18 | Distinguish between FX forward and FX NDF orders | 202 |
| 10.1.19 | Modify FX simulations as FX currency pair | 203 |
| 10.1.20 | Performance improvements in Asset Manager | 205 |
| 10.1.21 | Treat FX forwards as FX spots in Order Manager [6.3-IMPL] | 206 |
| 10.1.22 | Use Modified duration contribution YTM, difference (BM) as target for multiple portfolio alignment [6.31-IMP] | 206 |
| 10.1.23 | View more details about cash balances in the Cash Viewer applet | 207 |
| 10.1.24 | Round Estimated Value QC for value-based simulations | 208 |
| 10.1.25 | Make shared simulations private | 209 |
| 10.1.26 | Import and export assign value defaults | 209 |
| 10.1.27 | Control how the 'Created by' user is recorded on Order Manager dealer transactions [6.3-IMPL] | 210 |
| 10.1.28 | Match maturity dates for FX hedge adjustments [6.3-IMPL] | 211 |
| 10.1.29 | Support for cut-off times for fund certificates | 212 |
| 10.1.30 | Support for six additional free codes on orders [6.3-IMPL] | 214 |
| 10.1.31 | Unwind bilateral bond swap positions in Asset Manager | 215 |
| 10.1.32 | Display OTC post-trade type and bilateral transaction type for simulations and preliminary transactions | 216 |
| 10.1.33 | Display only regularly-used Quick selection fields in the Data Selector | 216 |
| 10.1.34 | Change originator on preliminary transactions in the approval flow | 217 |
| 10.1.35 | Use fixed model weights in Asset Manager | 219 |
| 10.1.36 | Patched from 6.41 | 219 |
| 10.1.37 | Patched from 19.01 | 225 |
| 10.2 | Portfolio Management | 229 |
| 10.2.1 | Use rebalancing method with iterative distribution of cash to equal the biggest deviation [6.3-IMPL] | 229 |
| 10.2.2 | Distinguish between FX forward and FX NDF orders | 230 |
| 10.2.3 | Create value-based simulations and orders from the Rebalancing window or module [6.3-IMPL] | 232 |
| 10.2.4 | Perform TAA rebalancing without cash buckets in Portfolio Currency | 234 |
| 11 | Reporting | 236 |
| 11.1 | Dashboards | 236 |
| 11.1.1 | [New module] KPI Benchmarking | 236 |
| 11.2 | Data Warehouse | 237 |
| 11.2.1 | SimCorp IMW data warehouse data model | 237 |
| 11.2.2 | Added field versioning for custom fields in dimensions [6.3] | 238 |
| 11.2.3 | Configurable parallel degree of MERGE statements | 238 |
| 11.2.4 | Base Marts - Clean up historical records [6.3] | 239 |

| | | |
|-----------|--|------------|
| 11.2.5 | Removed database statistics gathering from DWH loading | 241 |
| 11.2.6 | Enhanced Merge Models capabilities [6.3] | 241 |
| 11.2.7 | Retro-fill historical fact records [6.3] | 245 |
| 11.2.8 | Patched from 6.41 | 246 |
| 11.3 | Reporting Pool | 249 |
| 11.3.1 | MiFID II: Show status of Reporting Pool data [6.3] | 249 |
| 11.3.2 | Numeric fields in Reporting Pool use accounting formatting | 249 |
| 11.3.3 | Patched from 19.01 | 250 |
| 12 | Risk Analysis Manager | 251 |
| 12.1 | MSCI RiskMetrics Integration | 251 |
| 12.1.1 | Patched from 19.04 | 251 |
| 13 | Settlement | 253 |
| 13.1 | Status | 253 |
| 13.1.1 | Added more portfolio free codes to the Transaction Status widget in Dashboards [6.3.1-IMPL] | 253 |
| 13.1.2 | Improved mapping between SimCorp Dimension and Omgeo OASYS | 253 |
| 13.1.3 | Create transactions for bulk cash in the Transaction Explorer [6.4] | 254 |
| 13.2 | SWIFT | 254 |
| 13.2.1 | Patched from 6.41 | 254 |
| 14 | Trading | 255 |
| 14.1 | Order Manager | 255 |
| 14.1.1 | Hardware recommendation changes | 255 |
| 14.1.2 | Bloomberg Multi-Asset Protocol for FI and FX | 255 |
| 14.1.3 | Limit orders | 255 |
| 14.1.4 | Composite quotes [IMPL-6.3] | 257 |
| 14.1.5 | Improved support of FX NDFs [IMPL-6.3] | 258 |
| 14.1.6 | MiFID II manual workflows [IMPL-6.1] [IMPL-6.2] [IMPL-6.3] | 259 |
| 14.1.7 | MiFID II inbound and outbound data for program trades - FILE trading [IMPL-6.1] [IMPL-6.2] [IMPL-6.3] | 259 |
| 14.1.8 | MiFID II FIX to APA reporting [IMPL-6.3] | 260 |
| 14.1.9 | Indicator to show active placements at parent level [IMPL-6.3] | 260 |
| 14.1.10 | Grouping fills for futures for allocation [IMPL-6.3] | 261 |
| 14.1.11 | Program merging | 261 |
| 14.1.12 | Adding a pop-up to force traders to action orders that have been in their inbox for a certain period [IMPL-6.3][IMPL-6.31] | 262 |
| 14.1.13 | Removed Oracle Notification | 265 |
| 14.1.14 | Patched from 19.01 | 265 |
| 14.2 | Trade Capture | 265 |
| 14.2.1 | Added dirty price quotations for bond forward contracts [6.3.1-IMPL] | 265 |
| 14.2.2 | Capture tri-party and CCP repos in Trade Manager | 266 |
| 14.2.3 | Capture cross-currency repo from pool template [6.3] | 266 |
| 14.2.4 | Added American optionality for swaptions | 267 |
| 14.2.5 | Forecast swap cashflows for physical delivery swaptions | 268 |

| | | |
|---------|---|-----|
| 14.2.6 | Added collateralized cash price settlement method for swaptions | 269 |
| 14.2.7 | Aligned swaption pricing in Trade Manager | 270 |
| 14.2.8 | Register amortising, accreting, and rollercoaster cross-currency swaps | 270 |
| 14.2.9 | Use FRN as underlying for bond swaps in Trade Manager | 271 |
| 14.2.10 | Register cross-currency swaps with only final exchange | 271 |
| 14.2.11 | Retrieve Trade Manager contract data in database views | 272 |
| 14.2.12 | Improved workflow for offset close of cleared trades in Trade Manager [6.1-IMPL] [6.2-IMPL] [6.3-IMPL] [6.3.1-IMPL] | 273 |
| 14.2.13 | Improved copy functionality in Trade Manager [6.3.1-IMPL] | 273 |
| 14.2.14 | Added additional keyboard shortcuts in the Trade Manager | 274 |

1 Introduction

SimCorp is pleased to present the ***SimCorp Dimension Release Notes*** which describe features and functions that have been added, enhanced, or modified in SimCorp Dimension version 6.4.

1.1 Document conventions

The Release Notes document uses the following document conventions:

- **User interface elements**, including **windows**, **fields**, **domain values**, and **options**, appear in bold.
- **User input** is shown in a different font and with highlighting.
- Dates and numbers follow the English (United Kingdom) standard, for example, "31 December 2017" or "31/12/2017" and "1,000,002.50".

1.2 Functionality available in earlier versions

The Release Notes describe new features and enhanced functionality which are available in SimCorp Dimension 6.4.

Some features and functions are part of a module that you must acquire separately. For more information, see [New modules below](#) the "New modules" section in this chapter.

Some features and functions have been patched to earlier versions. Refer to the section headings which indicate the earlier versions and branches:

- "[6.4]" means functionality that was initially developed for 6.4, but included in the 6.31 release.
- "[6.2]" means functionality is available in all branches of version 6.2 (both IMPL and PROD).
- "[6.2-IMPL]" means functionality is available in the IMPL tracks, but not in the production track.

For example, if you are using SimCorp Dimension 6.2-IMPL, you have access to features and functions that are marked "[6.2]" and "[6.2-IMPL]".

To see which version you are using, see the **About SimCorp Dimension** window in your installation.

1.3 New modules

Some of the described features and functions are available in modules which you must acquire separately. Furthermore, these modules may require other modules before you can use them. Please contact your SimCorp consultant for details.

Functionality that is available as a new module is marked "[New module]" in the section header.

The new modules are:

ABOR

- [US GAAP Premium to call](#)

Front Office

- [Accounting Analytics - Advanced](#)

IBOR

- [Collateral management fund certificate look through](#)

TECH

- [Alerts web API](#)
- [Elastic Services](#)
- [Data Privacy Management](#)
- [KPI Benchmarking](#)

1.4

Other SimCorp Dimension release documents

The **System Administrator's Manual** describes supported software, system prerequisites, system architecture, protection and accessibility functions, system environment, and more.

How to copy the SimCorp Dimension Database describes how to manually copy an Oracle database that contains the SimCorp Dimension database by using file copy, Recovery Manager (RMAN), or Data Pump.

CBU and Conversion Issues describes issues, checks, and routines related to conversions and facilitates the upgrade from one version to another.

Changes to Tables, Views, RbAs, Transaction Codes, and SRMs describes changes and enhancements in Tables, Report views, Domain values, Record-Based Authorisation (RbAs), Transaction Codes, and System Runtime Measurements (SRM) between SimCorp Dimension version 6.3 and version 6.4.

Standard Reports describes new, modified, renamed, and deleted standard reports in SimCorp Dimension 6.4 and includes an overview, documentation, and examples of standard reports.

1.5

Additional Information

To see the information contained in these Release Notes in the context of background concepts and of setup and operational instructions, see updated user manuals in the SimCorp Dimension Help.

To see the described enhancements in action, consult the SimCorp eLearning Portal where select modules and enhancements are covered in

eLearning lessons which are available to subscribers. If you are interested in subscribing to this service or simply want to learn more about it, see your SimCorp representative.

1.6 Support schedule

By its standard contract, SimCorp commits to supporting three releases of SimCorp Dimension, and SimCorp's clients are obliged to upgrade to the current release or the previous release within six months of the release date. With every new release of SimCorp Dimension, SimCorp discontinues the support of the oldest active release.

With this release of 6.4, the oldest active release of SimCorp Dimension is 6.2. Support for release 6.1 expires on 31 July 2018.

To help you schedule future upgrades, here are the upcoming dates when active releases are no longer supported:

- 6.1 support discontinues on 31 July 2018.
- 6.2 support discontinues on 31 January 2019.
- 6.3 support discontinues on 31 July 2019.
- 6.31 support discontinues on 31 October 2019.
- 6.4 support discontinues on 31 January 2020.

2 Accounting

2.1 End-of-Period

2.1.1 IFRS9

2.1.1.1 Added CLA balance on End-of-Period adjustments [6.3]

As of version 6.4, the **Previous balance CL allowance** field is available in the profit/loss results for End-of-Period (EOP) adjustment transactions.

With this enhancement, you can correctly book End-of-Period adjustment results to the general ledger (G/L) and separate the adjustment part for the debit and credit amounts.

The balance CLA (Credit Loss Allowance) is part of the OCI (Other Comprehensive Income) balance.

The **Previous balance CL allowance** field shows the CLA balance on the day you create EOP adjustment transactions on tax lot level and position level.

The following image shows the field in the profit/loss results.

| Only non-zero values are shown (Signed columns: Profits are positive). | | | | | | |
|--|----------------------------|----------------------------|-----------------------------------|-----------------------------------|----------|---------------------------------|
| Field name | Amount quotation Ccy (EUR) | Amount portfolio Ccy (EUR) | Signed amount quotation Ccy (EUR) | Signed amount portfolio Ccy (EUR) | Bal. P/L | Transaction match reference No. |
| 1 Book value | 49.845,10 | 49.845,10 | -49.845,10 | -49.845,10 | Bal | |
| 2 Cost yield | 5,407704 | | 5,407704 | | | |
| 3 OCI gain | -49.845,10 | -49.845,10 | -49.845,10 | -49.845,10 | P/L | |
| 4 Recovered Sec. Appr. | 30.038,63 | 30.038,63 | -30.038,63 | -30.038,63 | P/L | |
| 5 Unreal. P/L cost, Sec. | -20.000,00 | -20.000,00 | -20.000,00 | -20.000,00 | Bal | |
| 6 Security adjustment | 49.845,10 | 49.845,10 | -49.845,10 | -49.845,10 | P/L | |
| 7 Prev. balance CL allowance | -1.019.806,47 | -1.019.806,47 | -1.019.806,47 | -1.019.806,47 | P/L | |
| 8 Balance EOP negative adjustment PC | | 19.806,47 | | -19.806,47 | Bal | |
| 9 Book value | 49.845,10 | 49.845,10 | -49.845,10 | -49.845,10 | Bal | 20180102000504 |
| 10 OCI gain | -49.845,10 | -49.845,10 | -49.845,10 | -49.845,10 | P/L | 20180102000504 |
| 11 Unreal. P/L cost, Sec. | -20.000,00 | -20.000,00 | -20.000,00 | -20.000,00 | Bal | 20180102000504 |
| 12 Security adjustment | 49.845,10 | 49.845,10 | -49.845,10 | -49.845,10 | P/L | 20180102000504 |
| 13 Prev. balance CL allowance | -1.019.806,47 | -1.019.806,47 | -1.019.806,47 | -1.019.806,47 | P/L | 20180102000504 |

You can use the **Previous balance CL allowance** field in:

- The **Finance Schemes** window to create finance transactions.
- Finance formulas in SimCorp Dimension.

2.1.1.2 Added write-off functionality [6.3]

Under IFRS9, there is a requirement to reduce the gross carrying amount of a financial asset when there are no reasonable expectations of recovering the contractual cash flow.

You can now write off the CLA (Credit Loss Allowance) balance by creating write-off transactions in SimCorp Dimension.

You can create write-off transactions for tax lots in the following credit impairment stages:

- **Stage 0**
- **Stage 3**
- **Manual Stage 3**

By creating write-off transactions, you can write off a CLA balance partly or fully so that the value correctly reflects the state of the financial asset.

The write-off transactions are tax lot and accounting framework specific. **Write-off** is the new business transaction code for the transactions.

You can create write-off transactions in the **Write-off** window. In the window, you can manually enter or import the write-off amount QC. The write-off amount PC will be calculated automatically based on the booking FX rate of the CL Allowance balance.

When you create a write-off transaction, the CLA, BV (Book Value), and CV (Cost Value) balances are reduced, and the write-off amount is a realised loss.

Because the write-off amount updates the Balance Cost Value, a new yield for mathematical adjustment is calculated on the write-off transaction.

Note

SimCorp Dimension ensures that all CLA transactions are generated on the effective dates so that the CLA balance is up-to-date prior to the write-off transaction.

The write-off process is independent of the defaulted securities process, and the two processes can run on the same position.

To create a write-off transaction, open the new **Write-off** window.

1. Select a **Security ID** and a **Portfolio group/ID**.
2. In the **Write-off amount** field, enter the amount to write off.
You will get an error message if the write-off amount is larger than the CLA balance.
3. Select the requested status for the transaction in the **Request** field.
4. Select in which accounting framework that you want to create the transaction.
5. Save the transaction.

When creating a transaction, click **Transaction Match** in the **write-off** window.

For more information, open the **Profit/Loss** sub-window. For more information about the calculations, click **Explain Calculation** in the **Profit/Loss** sub-window.

2.1.1.3 Enabled Credit Loss Allowance for Loans [6.3]

As of version 6.4, you can manually enter or import Credit Loss Allowance (CLA) amounts for the **Loans** instrument type, so that the expected losses are accounted for according to the IFRS9 standard.

The CLA balances are updated based on the amounts specified in the CLA transactions. You can view CLA balances in portfolio calculations for loan positions.

Note

You cannot calculate the Credit Loss Allowance for Loans, but you can manually enter or import the relevant amounts.

The Bank Loans and Loan Facility instrument types are not supported.

Select **IFRS9** as the Credit Loss Allowance method (in the **Financial Accounting Methods** window > **CL allowance** field) for loans.

The CLA for Loans is available for all P/L methods that Loans can be used with. For more information about the supported P/L methods, open the **Explain Accounting Combinations** window and then select **Functions** > **Explain Instrument Vs. FAM Column** > **Explain Instrument Vs. Profit/Loss Method**.

In addition, you can select the following options in the **Maturity adjustment on** setting in the **Financial Accounting Methods** window for loans (in combination with the CLA settings):

- **Put/call**
- **Call**
- **Predicted maturity**

To view more information about the maturity adjustment on setting for a transaction:

1. Open the **Credit Loss Allowance** window.
2. Select **Functions** > **Accounting Information**.
3. On the **Amortisation** tab, view the information in the **Maturity adjustment on** field.

The following image shows an example with **Predicted maturity** in the **Maturity adjustment on** field.

Accounting Information - Credit Loss Allowance

| | | | |
|-----------------------|------------|-------------------------------------|----------------|
| Instrument | | | |
| Security ID | CLA3 ABS1 | 151589 | 0 |
| Instrument type | ABS | | |
| Portfolio | | | |
| Portfolio group | CLA3 | Portfolio | CLA3 PF1 |
| Accounting principles | | | |
| Principle | CLA_MATAD2 | Method | CLA3 TB DC2CN2 |
| Segment | | Drawn bonds | (none) |
| Purpose | AMOUNT | IFRS 9 purpose | AC |
| Position sign | Ordinary | | |
| Transaction fr code 1 | | Free code 2 | |
| Free code 3 | | Free code 4 | |
| AU CGT eligible | No | Calc. funding interest in cash fwk. | (none) |

| Methods | Profit/Loss | Adjustments | Amortisation | Deferred profit/loss | Split Fields | Match History | Original issue discount |
|---------------------------------|----------------------------------|---------------------------------|--------------------------------------|----------------------|--------------|---------------|-------------------------|
| Premium/discount | None | Int. appr. when bought at par | No | | | | |
| Premium/discount days calc. | Payment date | Swap payments | None | | | | |
| Premium/discount incl. costs | Cost/tax excluded | Variable yield adjustment | None | | | | |
| Premium/disc. despite maturity | No | Amortisation or accretion | Amortisation and accretion, separate | | | | |
| Premium/disc. from issue date | No | De minimis definition | | | | | |
| Premium/discount smoothing | As on security | IMR amortisation method | (none) | | | | |
| Initial premium/discount | No | Suppress deflect. amortisation | No | | | | |
| Interest appreciation | Book value, daily coupon, no Ccy | Cash flow composition | CLA AMOUNTS | | | | |
| Interest appr. days calc. | Normal | Maturity adjustment on | Predicted maturity | | | | |
| Interest appreciation basis | As on security | Hedge amortisation | None | | | | |
| Int. appr. without traded AI | No | Amortisat. deflation protection | No | | | | |
| Int. appr. before issue date | Trade date | Full nominal amortisation | None | | | | |
| IA daily coupon calc. principle | Daily coupon, average | True-up interest appreciation | Recalculate Yield | | | | |

Close Show Main Refresh Properties Help

2.1.1.4 Enabled additional Maturity adjustment on methods for Credit Loss Allowance [6.3]

As of version 6.4, you can create Credit Loss Allowance (CLA) transactions for bond-like instruments using the following settings in the **Maturity adjustment on** field in the **Financial Accounting Methods** window:

- Put/call
- Call
- Predicted maturity

The credit loss allowance transactions generate credit loss amounts and interest appreciation/mathematical adjustment.

The credit loss amounts will continue to amortise considering the credit impairment stage of the instrument and the relevant cash flow.

The new settings are relevant for interest appreciation, because they define the maturity date for the expected cash flow of a credit-impaired bond. For instruments in credit impairment stage 1 or 2, the maturity date defined by the new settings is considered when calculating amortisations.

In the **Profit/Loss** sub-window, you can view the following yields:

- **Yield for CL allowance**
- **Yield for Math. Adj.**

Defining calls in the Bond static data

To define the call data, open the instrument in the **Bonds** window and then select **Functions > Put/Calls**.

For example:

| Date | Price | Number of days | Option type | To date | Switch date | Strike yield |
|--------------|---------------|----------------|-------------|------------|-------------|--------------|
| 1 01-01-2014 | 120,000000000 | 0 | Call | 01-03-2014 | | |
| 2 | | | | | | |
| 3 | | | | | | |
| 4 | | | | | | |
| 5 | | | | | | |
| 6 | | | | | | |
| 7 | | | | | | |

For a bond that is transacted under **Call** or **Put/Call**, the amortisation will run until 01-01-2014 and up to 120, even if the specified maturity date is 01-01-2016 and the redemption price is 100 (par).

When you create a credit loss allowance transaction on 01-01-2014, the Book Value Balance QC is equal to $120 * \text{holding nominal}$. This only applies to instruments in credit impairment stages 1 and 2, because the ones in stages 0 and 3 will continue to amortise until their specified maturity dates.

Defining puts/calls in the Bond static data

To define the put data, open the instrument in the **Bonds** window and then select **Functions > Put/Calls**.

For example:

The screenshot shows a software window titled "Put/Calls - Bonds (151589;0;CLA3 ABS1)". At the top left is a checked checkbox labeled "Put/Call data". Next to it are dropdown menus for "Day count" set to "(none)" and "Callable MBS" which is unchecked. On the right side of the header are buttons for "Close", "Properties...", and "Help". The main area is a table with columns: Date, Price, Number of days, Option type, To date, Switch date, and Strike yield. Row 1 contains the values: 01-01-2014, 70,000000000, 0, Put, 01-03-2014, empty, and empty. Rows 2 through 7 are empty. At the bottom of the table are navigation arrows.

For a bond that is transacted under **Put/Call**, the amortisation will run until 01-01-2014 and down to 70, even if the specified maturity date is 01-01-2016 and the redemption price is 100.

When you create a Credit Loss Allowance transaction on 01-01-2014, the Book Value Balance QC is $70 \times$ Holding Nominal. This only applies to instruments in credit impairment stages 1 and 2, because the ones in stages 0 and 3 will continue to amortise until their specified maturity dates.

For the **Put/Call** setting, you can use both put and call dates for the amortisation.

Defining predicted maturity dates in the Bond static data

To define the predicted maturity dates, open the instrument in the **Bonds** window and then select **Functions > Predicted Maturity Dates**.

For example:

The screenshot shows a software window titled "Predicted Maturity Dates - Bonds (CLA3 BO1;0;CLA3 BO1)". At the top left is a checked checkbox labeled "Predicted maturity date". On the right side of the header are buttons for "Close", "Properties", "Print", and "Help". The main area is a table with columns: From date and Predicted maturity date. Row 1 contains the values: 01-01-2013 and 01-01-2014. Row 2 contains the values: 01-05-2013 and 01-06-2014. At the bottom of the table are navigation arrows.

For a bond that is transacted under **Predicted Maturity**, the amortisation will run until 01-01-2014, even if the specified maturity date is 01-01-2016.

When you create a Credit Loss Allowance transaction on 01-01-2014, the Book Value Balance QC is $100 \times$ Holding Nominal.

The **From date** field defines when the predicted maturity date goes into effect. In the example, between 01-01-2013 and 01-05-2013, the predicted maturity date will be 01-01-2014. Before that, amortisation will run until the bond's specified maturity.

Afterwards, the amortisation will run until 01-06-2014. This only applies to instruments in credit impairment stages 1 and 2, because the ones in stages 0 and 3 will continue to amortise until their specified maturity dates.

When you reach the predicted maturity date, the interest appreciation will no longer be generated for bonds in credit impairment stages 1 and 2. Credit loss allowance will continue to be generated until the bond's maturity.

2.1.2 Deferred Profit/Loss

2.1.2.1 Added corporate actions support for deferred P/L positions [6.3]

As of version 6.4, SimCorp Dimension supports reallocation corporate actions for positions with deferred profit/loss balances. The corporate actions include:

- Demerger
- Stock split
- Exchange offer

To view more information about the deferred profit/loss related to a corporate action transaction, open a corporate actions window—for example, the **Demerger** window—and then open the **Profit/Loss** sub-window.

In SimCorp Dimension:

- For taxable (realising profit/loss) corporate actions, you can generate deferred profit/loss realisation transactions that realise all available deferred profit/loss balances before this type of corporate action transaction.
The linked deferred profit/loss balances from previous portfolios are also released, similar to disposal or sell transactions.
- For non-taxable corporate actions (or reallocations), SimCorp Dimension reallocates the deferred profit/loss balances that are related to that tax lot. This transaction creates a link to the previous deferred profit/loss balances, and the balances are released after a third-party sell transaction or at maturity.

Configure corporate actions as taxable

You can specify that a corporate action event is taxable by selecting the **Taxable** check box in the **Corporate Actions** window. SimCorp Dimension calculates a profit/loss for taxable corporate actions.

SimCorp Dimension calculates the profit/loss based on the setting in the **Tax market value** field in the **Financial Accounting Methods** window:

- **New Share Price:** The profit/loss is calculated based on the new share price.
- **Old Share Price:** The profit/loss is calculated based on the old share price.
- **Tax Free:** No profit/loss is calculated. This value is the same as a non-taxable corporate action.

2.1.2.2 Deferred profit/loss supports yield to best and yield to worst

As of version 6.4, the deferred P/L balances can be amortised to the same date as the interest appreciation amortisation from the original tax lots.

The following instrument types are supported:

- Bond
- ABS

The deferred P/L functionality supports the following **Maturity adjustment on** settings in the **Financial Accounting Methods** window:

- **Yield to worst**
- **Yield to best**
- **Yield to best, put**

You can create a variable yield adjustment (VYA) transaction to recalculate the yields for the deferred P/L balances.

Variable yield adjustment transactions

Ensure that you generate variable yield adjustment transactions before you generate the deferred P/L variable yield adjustment transactions.

You cannot delete the variable yield adjustment transactions when you have generated the deferred P/L variable yield adjustment transactions.

The information for the deferred P/L variable yield adjustment is read from the original tax lot when you

- Have an internal trade, and
- A variable yield adjustment is recalculated to the other date (according to the **Maturity adjustment on** setting), and
- You sell the original tax lot fully but there is still a deferred profit/loss holding.

Viewing deferred profit/loss holdings

The deferred P/L balances are amortised to the same option date and price as the original tax lot when the deferred P/L variable yield adjustment transaction is generated. The following fields are available in the **View**

Deferred Profit/Loss Holdings sub-window (in the **View Positions** window):

- **Maturity adjustment date**
- **Maturity adjustment type**

When there is an original tax lot, for example, opened by a buy transaction, and there is an internal trade, then the yield for deferred amortisation is calculated to the maturity adjustment date and the maturity adjustment type from the original tax lot.

In the static data in SimCorp Dimension, you can set up a configuration so that the original yield and yield for deferred P/L amortisation are calculated to different maturity dates, for example, by configuring different put/call dates, prices, and so on.

2.2 Financial Accounting

2.2.1 Added AOCI balances on tax lot opening balances

As of version 6.4, you can show imported AOCI balances on tax lot opening balances. This supports scenarios where cash flow hedges of future bond purchases as well as Fair Value macro and micro hedges are registered without the hedging derivative. This means, SimCorp Dimension only imports and administers the hedge balances, but not hedge relationships, hedge inceptions, or hedge adjustments.

AOCI balances data can be imported or entered manually into the new **Opening Balance > AOCI Accounting Details** sub-window.

To show imported AOCI balances:

1. Open the **Opening Balance** window and load an appropriate setup.
2. Open the **Functions > AOCI Accounting Details** sub-window:
 - The **AOCI type** field indicates **Cash Flow**, **Fair Value Macro**, or **Fair Value Micro**.
 - The **AOCI category** field indicates for **Cash Flow** type data either **PP** or **PPCR**.

AOCI balance data is also shown in these windows:

- In the **View Positions - Holding Keys - P/L** window, specifically in the **Holdings** and the **AOCI Match Holdings** sub-windows, in the **Balance AOCI** fields
- In the **View Transactions** window, specifically in the **AOCI Accounting Details** sub-window

2.2.2 Rollover spread change transactions support tax lot accounting

As of version 6.4, you can roll over loan facility positions with tax lots on facility and contract level. This applies to positions in spread change transactions which re-allocate contract values per tax lot. Previously, spread change transactions did not re-allocate amounts to superseding contracts per tax lot.

2.2.3 US GAAP

2.2.3.1 [New module] US GAAP Premium to call

| | |
|-------------------------------------|---|
| Client Segment | Any client reporting according to US-GAAP |
| Target Audience | CFO, Accountant |
| Subscription based licensing | Included in the Investment Accounting Manager subscription package. |
| Module-based Licensing | Adjustment Transactions |

This module allows accounting for bonds with call options, bought at a premium, according to the US-GAAP Accounting Standards Update ASU 2017-08, which comes into effect for public entities from January 2019.

Benefits

You can remain US-GAAP compliant without adding manual workflows outside SimCorp Dimension.

2.2.3.2 Enabled premium amortisation to next call option for European call options [6.3]

As of version 6.4, you can configure SimCorp Dimension to amortise a premium to the next call option date and price after issue, but a discount to maturity and redemption price.

This feature improves the US GAAP compliance for premium amortisation of debt securities with European call options.

The following instrument types are supported:

- Bond
- ABS
- SSD

For example, use this feature for a 30-year local government bond that is issued at a premium with a call option at par value after 10 years.

For an incrementing transaction, the buy cost price of the bond is

compared to the next call price and to the redemption price.

The following table describes how a position is amortised depending on the buy price, the call price, and the redemption price.

| Relationship between prices | Amortise to |
|--|--------------------------------------|
| Cost price in incrementing transaction \geq First future call price \geq Redemption price (maturity) | Call price (Premium) |
| All other cases | Maturity price (Premium or Discount) |

The position is dissolved if the call option is exercised on the next call date. Exercising a call option is a manual process in SimCorp Dimension.

This feature uses the unmodified call date in SimCorp Dimension.

Using Variable Yield Adjustments

If the call option is not exercised, you can save a **Variable Yield Adjustment** (VYA) transaction on the call dates. This will recalculate the yield to next call date or maturity depending on the price of the next call.

The following table describes how the yield is recalculated depending on the call price and the maturity price.

| Position | Next call price higher or equal to the current call price | Next call price higher or equal to the maturity price | Recalculate yield to |
|----------|---|---|----------------------|
| 1 | Yes | Yes | Maturity |
| 2 | No | Yes | Next call |
| 3 | No | No | Maturity |
| 4 | Yes | No | Maturity |

Enabling premium amortisation to next call option

To enable premium amortisation to the next call, open the **Financial Accounting Methods** window > **Maturity adjustment on** field and select **Premium to call, discount to maturity**. This option is supported for tax lot based P/L methods, including tax buckets.

Creating opening balance transactions

To correctly initialise the holdings via opening balance transactions, the yield for mathematical adjustment must be calculated by SimCorp Dimension. Therefore, in the **Opening Balance** window, ensure that you:

- Clear the **Yield** field, or
- Select the **Check yield for Math. Adj.** check box.

2.2.3.3 Enabled premium amortisation for American call options [6.3]

As of version 6.4, you can amortise bond-like instruments with a premium to the next call option after issue, but a discount to maturity.

This enhancement extends the support for US GAAP in SimCorp Dimension with support for premium amortisation for American call options.

The following table describes how a position is amortised depending on the cost price, call price, and the redemption price.

| Case | Rule | Handling |
|------|---|---|
| 1) | Buy inside call period and current cost price >= current call price, and current call price >= redemption price | Amortise to the next day (calendar date, no holiday adjusting and according to the Interest appreciation days calculation setting in the Financial Accounting Methods window) |
| 2) | Buy outside call period (including on the To date of a call) and current price >= next call price, and next call price >= redemption price | Amortise to first date of the next call (no holiday adjusting) |
| 3) | if neither case 1) or case 2) | Amortise to the maturity date and the redemption price |

On the last day of the call period, the yield is recalculated to the following call date. This cycle continues until you either reach par or the final maturity.

Note

When there are coupon term dates inside the call period and the maturity type is Call, then the Variable Yield Adjustment transactions on these term dates changes the maturity date from the **From date** of the call to the **To date** of the call.

Setting up the Financial Accounting Methods

Ensure that you select the **Premium to call, discount to maturity** setting in the **Financial Accounting Methods** window > **Maturity adjustment on** field.

Ensure that the **Variable yield adjustment** setting is different from **None** in the **Financial Accounting Methods** window (also for fixed rate bonds).

You can view the current maturity date and maturity type in the **View Positions** window > **View Match Holdings** sub-window in the following fields:

- **Maturity adjustment date**
- **Maturity adjustment type**

Variable Yield Adjustment on the to date of a call period

You can recalculate the yield for mathematical adjustment for bonds with American call options on the to date of the call period.

With this operation, a new simulated maturity is found, and the amortisation continues. The Variable Yield Adjustment transactions changes the maturity date and the maturity type when needed.

When creating Variable Yield Adjustment (VYA) transactions:

- SimCorp Dimension does not support mixing the call types (European calls and American calls) on the same security. Variable Yield Adjustment transactions will in this case be created only for American calls, which means that they will be created only on the to date of the call.
- If you create Variable Yield Adjustment transactions for a longer time period in one go (a period that includes call dates), SimCorp Dimension does not verify if all VYA transactions for all call dates are needed. This could lead to incorrect transactions being saved.

The VYA transactions are created daily, but there could be issues if you create a backdated trade. In this case, ensure that you create VYA transactions with the to date setting set to every call date (in the **Create Variable Yield Adjustments** window).

Example: Call period is 10th to 30th of January

If you buy at tax lot at premium before the first call date (that is, before January 10th), SimCorp Dimension amortise the premium to the 10th and to the call price. SimCorp Dimension sets the maturity type to Call and the maturity date to the 10th.

- If the security is not called, then the yield is recalculated on the 30th. The amortisation stops during the call period and then resumes on the last day of the call period if there is a remaining premium.
- If there is a partial call on the 15th, then the yield is recalculated on the 30th as the remaining position is already at the call price.
- If there is a full call on the 15th, then there is no Variable Yield Adjustment (VYA) as there is no longer a position.

If you buy a tax lot at premium within the call period, the premium is amortised to the next calendar day (depending on the **Interest appreciation days calculation** setting).

2.2.4 Italian GAAP and Tax

2.2.4.1 New linear premium/discount adjustment method for OID and modified PD

As of version 6.4, the **OID and premium/discount increasing, BV** (OID + PD) is a new premium/discount adjustment method for the Italian GAAP and Tax regulation.

This method calculates OID (Original Issue Discount) similar to the **Original issue discount, BV** premium/discount adjustment method.

In addition to the OID calculation, SimCorp Dimension maintains the discount balances. The calculation method is similar to the **Sep. premium/discount, increasing, BV** method, but differs in the following ways:

- OID + PD only maintains the discount balance. Premiums are represented as a negative discount.
- OID is subtracted from the premium/discount calculated by **Sep. premium/discount, increasing, BV**.

The new premium/discount adjustment method is supported for bond-like instruments.

For a holding where this method is selected, the balances and profit/loss values are calculated. The following balances are maintained on the holding:

- **Balance OID**—The current OID balance for the holding.
- **Balance interim OID**—The amount of up-to-date adjustments since the last premium/discount adjustment.
- **Balance amortized OID since EOY**—Total adjustment to book value from OID.
- **Balance discount**—The current discount balance. Negative sign refers to a premium.
- **Balance dissolved discount since EOP**—The amount of up-to-date adjustments since the last premium/discount adjustment. Similar to Balance interim OID.
- **Balance dissolved discount since EOY**—Total adjustment to book value from discount.

In addition, the following is supported:

- Portfolio calculation and Balance booking is supported. When running a portfolio calculation:
 - EOP/EOY transactions using the new method is simulated.
 - Unrealised balances and profit/loss (P/L) figures are calculated and shown.
- Original issue discount and premium/discount are calculated for incrementing transactions.
- P/L figures are calculated for decrementing transactions.
- Reallocations and corporate actions move the premium/discount and the OID balances.
- Enter premium/discount and OID amounts in the **Opening Balance** window.

You can view more information about the original issue discount in the **Original Issue Discount Details** sub-window. The sub-window is available in the following windows:

- **Premium Adjustments**
- **Premium/Discount EOP Adjustments, Separate**
- **Premium/Discount EOY Adjustments, Separate**
- **Premium/Discount Match Adjustments**

Setting up the Financial Accounting Methods

Ensure that you configure the **Financial Accounting Methods** according to the following table.

| Field | Description |
|--|--|
| Profit/loss method | Select Average or Average with Tax Lots . |
| Premium/discount despite maturity | Select No . |
| Maturity simulation | Select None , which means that the final maturity is always used. |
| Premium/discount from issue date | Select Yes . |
| Premium/discount days calculation | Select Payment date . |
| Premium/discount smoothing | The new method (OID + PD) supports premium/discount smoothing. This means that if you select Smooth in the field, OID + PD will always be calculated with ACT/ACT as the day count convention. |

2.2.4.2 New EOP adjustment method for LACOM including OID

As of version 6.4, you can select **LACOM, including OID** as a new EOP/EOY adjustment method (LACOM, Least of Amortised Cost Or Market), where the amortisation includes the Original Issue Discount (OID). You select this new EOP/EOY adjustment method in the **Financial Accounting Methods** window.

When using this new method, the new book value is calculated as:

Book value = Min(Market, Cost value updated by OID)

The **LACOM, including OID** adjustment method is available only for bonds.

When you select the new EOP/EOY adjustment method, ensure that the following is specified in the **Financial Accounting Methods** window:

- Amortised Cost Composition must have **Amortisation adjustment** set to **Yes**.
- Premium/discount adjustment can be set to either **None**, **Original issue discount**, or **OID and premium/discount increasing, BV**.
- Interest appreciation must be set to **None**.

To use the new EOP/EOY adjustment method:

- Create a premium/discount adjustment transaction.
- Create an EOP/EOY adjustment transaction.

2.2.4.3 New simple OID linear method

As of version 6.4, the **Original Issue Discount** (OID) is a new premium/discount adjustment method.

For a holding where you select the OID method, the balances and profit/loss values are calculated.

The **Original Issue Discount** premium/discount adjustment method draws a straight line from the issue value/date to the maturity value/date.

When there is an incrementing transaction, an OID balance is added that corresponds to the distance from the line to the maturity value. Over time, this balance is dissolved towards zero at maturity.

The following balances are maintained on the holding:

- **Balance OID**—The current OID balance for the holding.
- **Balance interim OID**—The amount of up-to-date adjustments made since the last premium/discount adjustment.
- **Balance amortised OID since EOY**—The adjustment to book value from OID adjustments.

The following profit/loss fields are unique for OID:

- **OID contribution**—The addition to the OID balance that comes from an incrementing transaction.
- **Interim OID**—The amount of OID balance dissolved since last premium/discount calculation in the holding.
- **OID reduction**—The adjustment to book value. Also updates OID balance.

Note

The OID premium/discount adjustment method differs from the other premium/discount adjustment methods because it does not consider the transaction price.

Only the issue price and maturity price is used.

Setting up the Financial Accounting Methods

To save a **Financial Accounting Methods** setup with OID as the premium/discount adjustment method:

- Select **Average** or **Average with tax lots** as the profit/loss method.
- Select **No** as the Premium/discount despite maturity.
- Select **None** as the Maturity simulation. Final maturity is always used.
- Select **Yes** as the Premium/discount from issue date.
- Select **Payment date** as the Premium/discount days calculation.

OID supports premium/discount smoothing. This means that if you set it to **Smooth**, OID will always be calculated with ACT/ACT as the day count convention.

2.2.4.4 New EOP method for guarantee fund

As of version 6.4, the **HACOM, including OID** (HACOM, Highest of Amortised Cost Or Market) is a new EOP/EOY adjustment method, where the amortisation includes Original Issue Discount (OID).

With this method, you can re-evaluate the book value of the position in the guarantee fund portfolios.

The new book value is calculated according to the following:

Book value = Max(Market, Cost value updated by OID)

The EOP/EOY adjustment method is available for bonds, ABS, and index bonds.

When you select the new EOP/EOY adjustment method in the **Financial Accounting Methods** window, ensure that you specify the following:

- Amortised Cost Composition must have **Amortisation adjustment** set to **Yes**.
- Premium/discount adjustment can be set to either **None**, **Original issue discount**, or **OID and premium/discount increasing, BV**.
- Interest appreciation must be set to **None**.

To use the new EOP/EOY method:

- Create a premium/discount adjustment transaction.
- Create an EOP/EOY adjustment transaction.

2.2.4.5 Linear premium/discount adjustment method for non-durable index bonds

As of version 6.4, SimCorp Dimension supports new linear amortisation (premium/discount) methods with OID (Original Issue Discount) or purchase amortisation for the Italian market. The supported instrument type is index bonds.

The following is new in SimCorp Dimension:

- Two new premium/discount adjustment methods are available for calculating linear amortisation for an index bond:
 - **Original issue discount, BV**
 - **OID and premium/discount increasing, BV**

You can select the new adjustment methods in the **Financial Accounting Methods** window > **Premium/discount adjustment** field.

- The PC values are calculated based on the book value FX rates.
- For non-durable (AFS, available for sale) index bonds, the par value is used as the basis for index calculation combined with simple OID linear amortisation.

You can use the feature for average profit/loss methods.

A new book value QC/PC is calculated based on the new methods and the holdings are updated.

You can run a portfolio calculation to simulate EOP/EOY transactions with the new methods. You can view unrealised balances, and profit/loss figures are calculated and shown.

When you save an incrementing transaction, SimCorp Dimension calculates up-to-date amortisation. When you save a decrementing transaction, the profit/loss figures are calculated. The holding and position will be updated with the sum of BV and CV.

Calculating OID values for non-durable (AFS) index bonds

For non-durable (AFS) index bonds, you can calculate OID values when opening an index bond position (profit/loss figures). You can also view the OID contribution in the **Profit/Loss** sub-window. The OID contribution is independent of the index values, which means that OID is unindexed.

You can view the **Original Issue Discount Details** sub-window in the **Premium/Discount EOP/EOY Adjustments, Separate** window for index bonds when using **Original Issue Discount** as the premium/discount adjustment method. In the sub-window, you can view the OID amounts without the index part.

Generating premium/discount transactions

For non-durable (AFS) index bonds, you can generate premium/discount transactions with the OID premium/discount method.

Before you can do this, you must select **Original Issue Discount** as the premium/discount adjustment method for an index bond and create a buy transaction.

1. Create a **PremiumPerAdj** transaction in the **Premium/Discount EOP Adjustments, Separate** window or in the **Premium/Discount EOY Adjustments, Separate** window.
2. OID is linearly amortised and shown in the **Original Issue Discount Details** sub-window. You can view the part of the adjustment that originates from the OID without index adjustment.

You can view the index adjustment ((index factor - 1) x redemption price x nominal/quote factor) in the **Index adjustment** field on the transaction. You can view which part of the adjustment that originates from the index adjustment without OID.

Saving premium/discount transactions using the OID method (P/L figures and balances)

When you create a **PremiumPerAdj** transaction in the **Premium/Discount EOP Adjustments, Separate** window or in the **Premium/Discount EOY Adjustments, Separate** window, the index adjustment amounts are available in the **Profit/Loss** sub-window. The OID adjustment amounts are available in the **Profit/Loss** window.

The transaction updates the following P/L fields:

- **Unrealised index adj. QC/PC**
- **Index appreciation QC/PC**
- **Amortised cost QC/PC**

In addition, you can book the index adjustment amounts because the following fields are also updated:

- Balance book value QC/PC
- Balance index appreciation QC/PC
- Balance amortised cost QC/PC

2.2.4.6 Added Average with Tax Lots as a new profit/loss method

As of version 6.4, you can set up SimCorp Dimension to calculate tax amounts for the Italian tax regulation, by using the new **Average with Tax Lots** profit/loss (P/L) method.

The **Average with Tax Lots** profit/loss method tracks the age of each tax lot with average profit/loss. The consumption of the tax lots is done according to LIFO logic, which means that the new P/L method implements a LIFO-chain on an average P/L.

You can select **Average with Tax Lots** in the **Financial Accounting Methods** window > **Profit/loss method** field.

You can find more information about the age of each tax lot and the LIFO-chain in the **View Positions** window > **View Average Match Holdings** sub-window.

The tax lots are consumed according to LIFO-logic with average P/L calculations.

- On decrementing transactions, the P/L is calculated according to the average P/L method, with the tax lots dissolved according to LIFO-logic.
- On incrementing transactions, the average match holding table is updated with the nominal amount and From date (Default booking date).
- On opening balance transactions, the average match holding table is updated with the nominal amount and From date (Default booking date) and Effective date (Effective matching date).

2.2.4.7 Enabled support for IRAP

As of version 6.4, you can book, store, and proportionally dissolve the unrealised IRAP amount when the positions that holds this amount are sold.

The IRAP amount is the difference between the local Italian tax regime and the Italian GAAP.

The decrementing trades that address the tax lots acquired before 31.12.2007 triggers the realisation of the IRAP amount, which is proportional to the amount of nominal reduced.

Note

The feature is supported for the **Equity** instrument type.

On any decrementing transaction, the tax lots of positions with IRAP amounts are consumed based on the LIFO principle. To enable this functionality, ensure that you select **Average with Tax Lots** profit/loss method in the **Financial Accounting Methods** window.

Opening balance transactions and IRAP

In SimCorp Dimension, you create the position with the Balance IRAP QC/PC amounts via an opening balance transaction.

Enter the amounts in the **Opening Balance** window, or import the amounts by using the **Filter Tool Box** (for example).

You can specify the Carried IRAP QC/PC balances in the **Opening Balance** window > **Match for Average** sub-window:

- You can specify the Nominal amount which holds unrealised IRAP amounts (from the tax lots acquired before 31.12.2007) and the Nominal amount without any IRAP amounts (from the tax lots acquired after 31.12.2007).
- You can specify the different amounts, the carried tax lot acquisition date, and whether the registered amount is subject to PEX. You indicate whether the tax lot is subject to PEX by selecting the **Carried eligible for PEX** check box.
- You can define the FX rate to be used. The PC amounts on the decrementing transactions are recalculated according to the FX rate defined on the opening balance transaction.
- There are no restrictions for entering IRAP QC/PC balances depending on the carried tax lot acquisition date. That is, even though the IRAP amounts are only relevant for positions or tax lots that were owned before 31.12.2007, you can still register IRAP amounts on later dates.

The IRAP amounts are booked at both the holding level and the holding match level, as shown in the following example:

| Accounting framework | Carried nominal | Carried current face value | Carried eligible for PEX | Carried tax lot acquisition date | Effective matching date | FIFO matching order | Carried IRAP QC | Carried IRAP PC |
|----------------------|-----------------|----------------------------|-------------------------------------|----------------------------------|-------------------------|---------------------|-----------------|-----------------|
| 1 MAIN | 5.000 | 0 | <input type="checkbox"/> | 01-06-2007 | 01-06-2007 | | 500,00 | 1.000,00 |
| 2 MAIN | 3.000 | 0 | <input type="checkbox"/> | 01-07-2007 | 01-07-2007 | | 300,00 | 600,00 |
| 3 MAIN | 2.000 | 0 | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | 01-07-2008 | 01-07-2008 | | 0,00 | 0,00 |
| 4 MOL | 5.000 | 0 | <input type="checkbox"/> | 01-06-2007 | 01-06-2007 | 2 | 500,00 | 1.000,00 |
| 5 MOL | 3.000 | 0 | <input type="checkbox"/> | 01-06-2007 | 01-06-2007 | 1 | 300,00 | 600,00 |
| 6 MOL | 2.000 | 0 | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | 01-07-2008 | 01-07-2008 | | 0,00 | 0,00 |
| 7 | | | <input type="checkbox"/> | | | | | |
| 8 | | | <input type="checkbox"/> | | | | | |
| 9 | | | <input type="checkbox"/> | | | | | |
| 10 | | | <input type="checkbox"/> | | | | | |

The transaction updates both the **Holdings** and the **Average Match Holdings** tables.

Partial sell transactions and IRAP

When you create a decrementing transaction, for example in the **Dealer Equities** window, you can view information about the IRAP balances in the **Profit/Loss Match Details for Average** sub-window as shown in the following example:

| Index | Transaction match reference | Accounting framework | Temporarily booked | Finally booked | Nominal to match | Current face val matched | Tax lot acquisition date | Eligible for PEX | Realised IRAP QC | Realised IRAP PC |
|-------|-----------------------------|----------------------|-------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|--------------------------|--------------------------|-------------------------------------|------------------|------------------|
| 1 | 20180320000058 | MAIN | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | 500 | | 01-07-2007 | <input type="checkbox"/> | 50,00 | 100,00 |
| 2 | 3 | 20180320000058 | MAIN | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | 2.000 | 01-07-2008 | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | 0,00 | 0,00 |
| 3 | 1 | 20180320000058 | MOL | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | 500 | 01-06-2007 | <input type="checkbox"/> | 50,00 | 100,00 |
| 4 | 3 | 20180320000058 | MOL | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | 2.000 | 01-07-2008 | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | 0,00 | 0,00 |

You can also view IRAP information in the the **Profit/Loss** sub-window as shown in the following example:

| Only non-zero values are shown (Signed columns: Profits are positive). | | | | | | |
|--|----------------------------|----------------------------|-----------------------------------|-----------------------------------|----------|---------------------------------|
| Field name | Amount quotation Ccy (USD) | Amount portfolio Ccy (EUR) | Signed amount quotation Ccy (USD) | Signed amount portfolio Ccy (EUR) | Bal. P/L | Transaction match reference No. |
| 1 Booked current value | 2.625,00 | 3.963,75 | -2.625,00 | -3.963,75 | Bal | |
| 2 Cost value | 2.625,00 | 5.250,00 | -2.625,00 | -5.250,00 | Bal | |
| 3 Book value | 2.625,00 | 5.250,00 | -2.625,00 | -5.250,00 | Bal | |
| 4 P/L book, Ccy | | -1.286,25 | | -1.286,25 | P/L | |
| 5 P/L cost, Ccy | | -1.286,25 | | -1.286,25 | P/L | |
| 6 Loss cost, Ccy | | 1.286,25 | | -1.286,25 | P/L | |
| 7 Loss book, Ccy | | 1.286,25 | | -1.286,25 | P/L | |
| 8 Realised IRAP | 50,00 | 100,00 | 50,00 | 100,00 | P/L | |

Reallocation transactions and IRAP

You can reallocate the IRAP amount by creating reallocation transactions. You can view the IRAP amounts on reallocation transactions in the **Reallocation Values** sub-window as shown in the following image:

| Only non-zero values are shown (Signed columns: Profits are positive). | | | | | |
|--|----------------------------|----------------------------|-----------------------------------|-----------------------------------|----------|
| Field name | Amount quotation Ccy (EUR) | Amount portfolio Ccy (USD) | Signed amount quotation Ccy (EUR) | Signed amount portfolio Ccy (USD) | Bal. P/L |
| 1 Car. cost value | 525.000,00 | 630.000,00 | -525.000,00 | -630.000,00 | Bal |
| 2 Car. book value | 518.401,98 | 4.665.617,82 | -518.401,98 | -4.665.617,82 | Bal |
| 3 Car. interest Appr. | -7.405,29 | -15.183,05 | 7.405,29 | 15.183,05 | Bal |
| 4 Car. interest Appr. yield | 2.087471 | | 2.087471 | | |
| 5 Car. accrued interest at EOP | 15.000,00 | 18.000,00 | -15.000,00 | -18.000,00 | Bal |
| 6 Car. EOP Neg. Adj. | | -4.043.535,45 | | 4.043.535,45 | Bal |
| 7 Car. EOP Neg. Ccy Adj. | | -4.043.535,45 | | 4.043.535,45 | Bal |
| 8 Car. nominal value since last Cp./Per. | 500.000,00 | | -500.000,00 | | Bal |
| 9 Car. nominal value at last period | 500.000,00 | | -500.000,00 | | Bal |
| 10 Car. sum of Real. Int. Appr. since last Int. Acc. | -807,27 | -7.265,42 | 807,27 | 7.265,42 | Bal |
| 11 Car. date latest premium/discount Diss. | | | | | |
| 12 Car. accrued interest | 14.219,18 | 127.972,62 | -14.219,18 | -127.972,62 | P/L |
| 13 Car. IRAP | 105.353,94 | 179.999,78 | -105.353,94 | -179.999,78 | Bal |

You can also view the information in the **Profit/Loss** sub-window.

Portfolio calculations and IRAP

The IRAP balances are also supported in portfolio calculations. You can run a portfolio calculation for the positions with IRAP values.

You can view the portfolio calculation results in the **Portfolio Calculation List** sub-window as shown in the following example.

| Portfolio | From date | To date | Security ID | Balance nominal/number | Balance IRAP QC | Balance IRAP PC | Period realised IRAP QC | Period realised IRAP PC | FX rate QC/PC | Balance book value QC | Balance book value PC | Balance book value PC |
|-----------------|------------|------------|-------------|------------------------|-----------------|-----------------|-------------------------|-------------------------|---------------|-----------------------|-----------------------|-----------------------|
| 1 MSF_IRAP_PP01 | 31-12-2014 | 31-12-2014 | MSF_EQ1 | 10.000 | 800,00 | 1.600,00 | 0,00 | 0,00 | 1,223400000 | 10.500,00 | 21.000,00 | 21.000,00 |
| 2 MSF_IRAP_PP01 | 31-12-2014 | 31-12-2014 | MSF_EQ1 | 10.000 | 800,00 | 1.600,00 | 0,00 | 0,00 | 1,223400000 | 10.500,00 | 21.000,00 | 21.000,00 |
| 3 MSF_IRAP_PP01 | 31-12-2014 | 20-03-2015 | MSF_EQ1 | 7.500 | 750,00 | 1.500,00 | 50,00 | 100,00 | 1,223400000 | 7.875,00 | 15.750,00 | 15.750,00 |
| 4 MSF_IRAP_PP01 | 31-12-2014 | 20-03-2015 | MSF_EQ1 | 1.000 | 100,00 | 200,00 | 700,00 | 1.400,00 | 1,223400000 | 1.050,00 | 1.997,10 | 1.997,10 |
| 5 | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 6 | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 7 | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| MSF_IRAP_PP01 | 31-12-2014 | | MSF_EQ1 | | | | | | 1,223400000 | | | |

Finance booking and IRAP

You can finance book the IRAP values that are realised on decrementing sell transactions.

The following fields are available for finance booking:

- **Carried IRAP PC**
- **Carried IRAP QC**
- **IRAP PC**
- **IRAP QC**
- **Realised IRAP PC**
- **Realised IRAP QC**

You can raise the finance transactions to a GL status, as shown in the following example:

| Finance account | Finance account name | Debit amount | Credit amount | G/L account | Finance scheme | Finance account assignme |
|-----------------|----------------------|--------------|---------------|--------------|----------------|--------------------------|
| 1 ANHK_REAIRAP | ANHK_REAIRAP | 100.154,79 | | ANHK_REAIRAP | ANHK_IRAP | ANHK_IRAP |
| 2 ANHK_IRAP | ANHK_IRAP | 100.154,79 | | ANHK_IRAP | ANHK_IRAP | ANHK_IRAP |
| 3 ANHK_INTERIM | ANHK_INTERIM | | 100.154,79 | ANHK_INTERIM | ANHK_IRAP | ANHK_IRAP |
| 4 ANHK_INTERIM | ANHK_INTERIM | | 100.154,79 | ANHK_INTERIM | ANHK_IRAP | ANHK_IRAP |
| 5 | | | | | | |

2.2.4.8 Enabled support for dividend washing rules

As of version 6.4, SimCorp Dimension supports the dividend washing rules for the Italian market.

The capital losses that come from the disposal of shares and other similar financial securities that are not eligible for PEX are handled as follows:

- These capital losses are deductible only for the part that exceeds the tax-exempt amount of the dividends received from the shares within the 36 months prior to the disposal.
- Dividends are excluded from the IRES taxable base for 95 percent of the amount if the dividends come from companies that reside in countries other than the tax-havens.
- To comply with the Italian legislation, you can calculate the tax-exempt amounts of the dividends in SimCorp Dimension.

Dividend washing rule explained

The dividend washing rule applies when:

- The disposed security was owned for less than 36 months.
- The losses are tax deductible (the position or tax lot does not fall under the PEX scheme).
- The security has distributed tax-deductible dividends in the last 36 months preceding the realisation.

You can view the calculated tax-exempt amount of dividends in the profit/loss results on the realisation transaction.

The dividend tax-exempt amount is tracked on the tax lot level on the securities that meet the subjective PEX criteria (country of residence and business activity of the issuer).

You can view the history of the dividends received and the ex-dividend date on the tax lot level in the **View Positions** window.

The dividend tax-exempt amount is calculated on a sell transaction:

- When the realisation transaction results in a capital loss.
- The disposed security was owned for less than 36 months.
- The losses are tax deductible (position or tax lot is not in the PEX scheme).
- In the last 36 months preceding the realisation transaction, the security has distributed tax-deductible dividends.

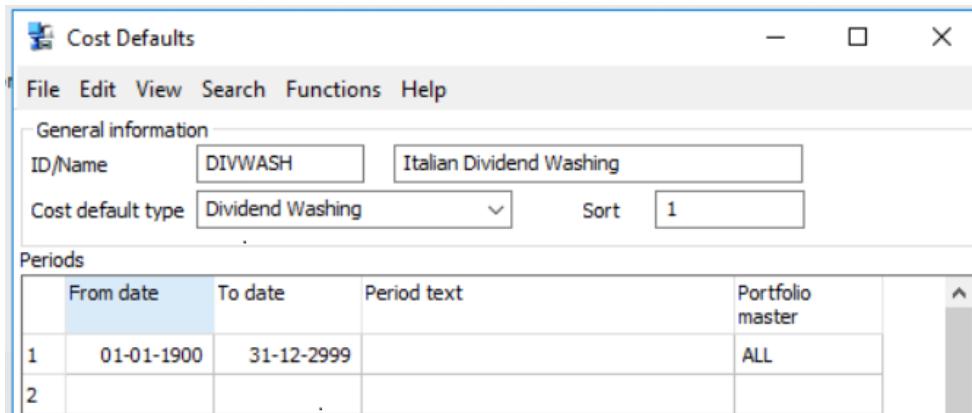
Financial Accounting Methods

Ensure that the profit/loss method is set to **Average with Tax Lots**.

The dividend exempt amount can be calculated for equities and fund certificates.

Cost default type

You can select **Dividend Washing** as a new cost default type in the **Cost Defaults** window as shown in the following example:



Profit/loss match details for dividends

The **Profit/Loss Match Details for Dividends** is a new sub-window in the **Dividends** window. You can view dividend exemption information in the sub-window shown in the following example:

| Index | Trans. No. | Accounting framework | Temporarily booked | Finally booked | Calculated dividend exemption amount PC | Calculated dividend exemption amount QC | Dividend acquisition date | Opening dividend transaction number | |
|-------|----------------|----------------------|-------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|---|---|---------------------------|-------------------------------------|---|
| 1 | 20180508000367 | MAIN | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | 302.032,69 | 245.575,00 | 02-03-2005 | 20180508000374 | Close |
| 2 | 20180508000372 | MAIN | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | 120.813,08 | 98.230,00 | 02-03-2005 | 20180508000374 | Properties |
| 3 | | | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | | | | | Print |

Holding table for dividends

You can view the dividends that are created with **Average with Tax Lots** as the profit/loss method in the **View Positions** window > **Dividend Tax Exemption Match Holdings** sub-window.

To view, open a position in the **View Positions** window and then select **Functions > View Dividend Tax Exemption Match Holdings**, which is shown in the following example:

| Dividend Tax Exemption Match Holdings - View Positions - Holding Keys - P/L | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|---|------------|------------|-------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|------------------|------------------------|----------------------------------|------------------------|-----------------------|-------------------------|--------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| Transaction cancellation flag | From date | To date | Temporarily booked | Finally booked | Transaction code | Elementary Trans. code | Opening dividend transaction No. | Order No. Temp. booked | Order No. Fin. booked | Effective matching date | Balance dividend exemption amount PC | Balance dividend exemption amount QC |
| 1 Active | 10-03-2012 | 31-12-4712 | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | Buy | Buy | 20180403000206 | 1 | 1 | 10-03-2012 | 594,28 | 789,64 |
| 2 Active | 10-03-2012 | 31-12-4712 | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | Buy | Buy | 20180403000206 | 1 | 1 | 10-03-2012 | 1.188,57 | 1.579,28 |
| 3 Active | 10-03-2012 | 31-12-4712 | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | Buy | Buy | 20180403000206 | 1 | 1 | 10-03-2012 | 594,28 | 789,64 |
| 4 Active | 10-03-2012 | 31-12-4712 | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | Buy | Buy | 20180403000206 | 1 | 1 | 10-03-2012 | 1.188,57 | 1.579,28 |
| 5 | | | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | | | | | | | | |

2.2.4.9 Opening balance and reallocation transactions supported for dividend washing rules

As of version 6.4, to comply with the Italian legislation, you can now configure SimCorp Dimension to calculate the tax-exempt amount of the dividends.

| | |
|---|--|
| Tax-exempt amount of the dividends | Dividends are excluded from IRES taxable base for 95 % of their amount if they come from companies that are resident in countries other than the tax-havens. |
|---|--|

The Italian anti-dividend washing rules state that when capital losses comes from the disposal of shares and other similar financial securities (that are not eligible for PEX), these losses are deductible only for the part that exceeds the tax-exempt amount of the dividends within the 36 months prior to the disposal.

With this feature, you can:

- Import the dividend tax exemption history together with the ex-dividend date on the tax lot level in SimCorp Dimension from an external system. For example, import to the following fields:
 - **Ex-dividend date**
 - **Calculated dividend exemption amount QC**
 - **Calculated dividend exemption amount PC**

The **Dividend exemption amount QC/PC** is dissolved proportionally within each average tax lot.

The **OpenBalDivWash** is a new transaction code for opening balance transactions for Dividend Washing.

- Reallocate the dividend tax exemption history.
 - You can create reallocation transactions that reallocate the dividend tax exemption amounts together with the tax lot.
 - The tax lots are reallocated according to the LIFO principle for the **Average with Tax Lots** profit/loss method.
- You can view more information in the **View Positions** window > **View Dividend Tax Exemption Match Holdings** sub-window.

You can import the dividend tax exemption history only for the positions or tax lots that use **Average with Tax Lots** as the profit/loss method.

To create an opening balance transaction for dividend washing:

1. Open the **Opening Balance - Dividend Washing** window.
2. Enter the relevant information in the window, including the **Accounting framework**, **Dividend acquisition date** and the **Bal. Div. exemption**.

The balance dividend exemption amount that you specify in the **Bal. Div. exemption** field is proportionally distributed to the tax lots according to the nominal. For example, enter **5,000.00** in the field.

You can then verify the dividend exemption amounts on the tax lot level by selecting **Functions > Dividend Tax Exemption Matching**. The following image shows how the dividend exemption amounts for this example are distributed in the **Calculated dividend exemption amount QC/PC** field.

| Tax lot acquisition date | Trans. No. | Index | Select unmatched | Nominal unmatched | Calculated dividend exemption amount QC | Calculated dividend exemption amount PC |
|--------------------------|----------------|-------|-------------------------------------|-------------------|---|---|
| 1 10-03-2018 | 20180606000377 | 0 | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | 5.000 | 1.000,00 | |
| 2 15-03-2018 | 20180606000379 | 0 | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | 5.000 | 1.000,00 | |
| 3 25-03-2018 | 20180606000381 | 0 | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | 15.000 | 3.000,00 | |

3. Save the transaction.

Note

Ensure that you create one opening balance transaction for dividend washing for each relevant dividend.

2.2.5 Original Issue Discount (OID)

2.2.5.1 Original Issue Discount (OID) and Deferred Profit/Loss

As of version 6.4, SimCorp Dimension supports internal trades for positions with **Original Issue Discount** as the interest appreciation (IA) method and with Deferred Profit/Loss configured.

SimCorp Dimension supports the calculation and realisation of Deferred Profit/Loss amounts for positions with **Original Issue Discount** as the IA method.

You can also use Original Issue Discount (OID) with the Period Closure (PCL) functionality.

For the positions with OID configured as the IA method, you can calculate the Deferred Profit/Loss amounts on internal trades for the following accounting treatments:

- Book, Defer (Buyer side); Book, Defer (Seller side)
- Market (Buyer side); Market, Defer (Seller side)

For the US TAX framework when OID is configured, you can use the following accounting treatments:

- Book, Defer (Buyer side); Book Defer (Seller side);
- Market (Buyer side); Market, Defer (Seller side)
- Market (Buyer side), Market, Real (Seller side);
- Book, Recognize to P/L (Buyer side); Book, Recognize to P/L (Seller side)

When you have a Market Discount (MD), the deferred profit/loss amounts on internal trades are calculated with a special logic of handling capital gain/loss and interest income, for the tax lots with OID and MD configured as deferred.

You can book Deferred Profit/Loss amounts in Deferred Profit/Loss holdings and realise them using Deferred Profit/Loss realisation transactions.

2.2.5.2 New rule for amortisation calculation for market discount, acquisition premium and OID

As of version 6.4, it is possible to configure SimCorp Dimension to amortise the Original Issue Discount (OID), Market Discount (MD) and Acquisition Premium (AP) separately.

| | |
|--------------------------------|--|
| Original Issue Discount | Difference between the issue price and the redemption price. |
| Market Discount | <p>Difference between the acquisition price (market price) and the adjusted issue price.</p> <p>This difference is defined as MD when the tax lot is acquired at a price below the adjusted issue price.</p> <p>When the tax lot is acquired at a price above the adjusted issue price, the difference between acquisition price and adjusted issue price is defined as an Acquisition Premium (AP).</p> |

By using this feature, you can account for financial instruments issued with OID in accordance with the requirements of US Tax law.

The specific possibilities provided by the functionality are described further.

- You can amortise and book OID as a separate amount. The OID is amortised as a difference between the issue price or adjusted issue price, depending on the time of the tax lot acquisition, and the redemption price. This amortisation is based on the issue yield.

To amortise the OID amount, you can configure the system to calculate the issue yield based on a cash flow that is built on the parameters

available at the issue date of the instrument. All subsequent changes of the parameters are ignored, so that the issue yield is constant and does not recalculate if the actual cash flow changes.

- You can amortise and book the MD as a separate amount. The MD is amortised as a difference between the acquisition price and an adjusted issue price defined at the date of the tax lot acquisition. This amortisation is based on a separate yield. The yield for the MD amortisation is calculated on the cash flow, which is built on the following principles:
 - The coupon rate for the MD cash flow is calculated as a difference between the coupon rate of the instrument at issue date and the actual coupon rate at the date of the tax lot acquisition.
- Once the coupon rate is calculated for a specific tax lot, it remains unchanged until the maturity or exercise date. Any subsequent changes of the actual coupon rates of the instrument after the acquisition date are ignored.
- The MD cash flow does not contain any principal payments. All principal payments are included in the OID cash flow. The amortised issue price at acquisition, acquisition price and coupon payments (if any) are scaled for the unpaid principal at the date of the tax lot acquisition.

Note

If the tax lot is acquired at Market Discount but with no OID (OID is De minimis or issue price is equal to the redemption price), the discount amount is amortised based on actual cash flow.

If the tax lot is acquired at Market Premium, the amount of a premium is amortised based on the actual cash flow.

- You can test the OID amortisation and the MD amortisation for the De minimis rule separately.

In the De minimis definition, you can also select whether the De minimis threshold

- for OID is calculated with the redemption price or without it;
- for Market Discount is calculated with the Redemption price, Adjusted issues price at the date of tax lot acquisition or without prices.

- You can amortise OID and MD to the maturity and redemption price, as well as to the expected maturity date and price.

The maturity simulation convention specifies whether OID and MD is amortised to the exercise date and price or to maturity. In the case the maturity simulation convention is applied to OID and MD amortisation, such logic is followed:

- OID and MD are amortised to the same date.
- If there is OID to amortise, the option date determined for OID is also the one to which MD is amortised.
- If there is no OID to amortise, then only MD is analysed.

Note

If the maturity simulation convention is activated, the OID and MD are always amortised to the same date.

- You can defer the MD amortisation or amortise it at every end-of-period (EOP) transaction.

For more information about the solution for ***Original Issue Discount***, contact your SimCorp representative.

For an overview of the functionality, see the following topics:

- [Financial Accounting Methods settings related to OID below](#)
- [Acquisition prices conventions on page 48](#)
- [De minimis rules and formulas on page 48](#)
- [Separate configuration for acquisition premium proportional method and market discount separate for OID on page 49](#)

2.2.5.2.1 **Financial Accounting Methods settings related to OID**

Set the following settings in the **Financial Accounting Methods** window to activate the Original Issue Discount.

| Field | Description |
|------------------------------|---|
| Interest appreciation | <p>To enable calculation of OID, MD or AP amortisation, select the Original Issue Discount option.</p> <p>This interest appreciation (IA) method requires defining a de minimis rule in the De minimis definition field.</p> <p>In the De minimis definition window, you can assign the relevant IA method for each case:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • OID—Original Issue Discount • MD—Market Discount • AP—Acquisition Premium • PAR—Tax lot is acquired at redemption price • MP—Market Premium, tax lot is acquired at a price above the redemption price |
| Profit/loss method | <p>Select one of the following profit/loss methods:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • FIFO • High cost • Low cost • Tax bucket |
| Tax bucket | <p>The supported profit/loss methods for the Tax bucket are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • FIFO • High cost • Low cost |

| Field | Description |
|------------------------------|---|
| De minimis definition | <p>Prior to configuring the De minimis definition for each De minimis type, which is Market Premium, Par, Acquisition Premium, Original Issue Discount and Market Discount, select an interest appreciation method in the De minimis Rules window.</p> <p>Use the field when configuring interest appreciation to:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • test OID and MD for the de minimis rule • define separate amortisation methods for OID and MD <p>Right-click in the field and select Edit Table. The De Minimis Definitions window opens and show the available de minimis rules . Right-click a rule and select Edit Table to view the details.</p> <p>You can configure MD and OID so that they both are tested for de minimis rule, or only one of them. Taxable and tax-exempt bonds can be configured to test OID for de minimis rule.</p> <p>The de minimis threshold is calculated according to the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • To amortise AP in accordance with the premium proportionate method, select the Book value, premium proportionate, no Ccy interest appreciation method for the Acquisition premium type. • To amortise MD based on a separate yield select the Book value, market discount zero coupon, no Ccy interest appreciation method for the Market Discount type. <p>To test OID or MD for the De minimis rule, select one of the available settings in the De minimis rule field.</p> <p>Depending on how De minimis threshold for OID is calculated, the following De minimis rule settings are available for OID and AP:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • $OID/AP \leq UPB * WAL * 0.25\%$ • $OID/AP < UPB * WAL * 0.25\%$ • $OID/AP \leq UPB * WAL * RedPr * 0.25\% / QuotFact$ • $OID/AP < UPB * WAL * RedPr * 0.25\% / QuotFact$ • None <p>Depending on how De minimis threshold for MD is calculated, the following De minimis rule settings are available for Market Discount:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • $MD \leq UPB * WAL * 0.25\%$ • $MD < UPB * WAL * AdjssPr * 0.25\% / QuotFact$ <p>Par, Premium- supports only None.</p> |

| Field | Description |
|--|--|
| | <p>When you configure the De minimis definition, ensure that there is a rule for the case when the threshold check is passed and for the case when it failed.</p> <p>Note</p> <p>For non pool-based instruments, use Nominal instead of UPB.</p> |
| Interest appreciation basis | <p>In the field, define the interest appreciation calculation basis.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> For bonds, CDs, ABSs select: Market discount cash flow For US pools select: WAC(orig)+CPR(orig) <p>Selecting Market discount cash flow for a tax lot that is acquired with MD and OID ensures that in the cash flow used to calculate the yield for MD, the coupon rate is calculated as the difference between the coupon rate at acquisition date and the coupon rate at issue date.</p> <p>The coupon rate is not changed after the acquisition date.</p> <p>This setting also implies that no principal payments are included in the MD cash flow.</p> <p>Interest appreciation basis set to Market discount cash flow for a tax lot that is acquired with MD but no OID or at the case of Market premium, introduces the same logic for building the cash flow as the As on security setting.</p> <p>For US pools, set the interest appreciation basis to WAC(orig)+CPR(orig). If the tax lot is acquired</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> with OID and MD, this setting ensures that the coupon rate in the MD cash flow is calculated as the difference between the coupon rate at acquisition date and issue date. In this case, also WAC and CPR defined at the issue date are used to build the cash flow for MD. with MD but no OID or at the case of Market premium, this setting ensures that in the cash flow WAC and CPR are fixed at the date of acquisition. The actual coupon rate is used in this case. |
| OID Interest appreciation basis | <p>The Coupon issue setting is applicable for Bonds, ABSs and CDs and ensures that in the cash flow used to calculate issue yield, the coupon rate is fixed at the issue date.</p> <p>For US pools, select WAC(issue)+CPR(issue)+Coupon(issue)+WAM (issue) to fix the WAC, CPR, Coupon and WAM at the issue date for the OID cash flow.</p> |

| Field | Description |
|---|--|
| Maturity adjustment on | <p>It is possible to apply maturity simulation conventions to both OID and MD amortisation.</p> <p>To apply maturity simulation convention to the MD amortisation, select the following methods in the Maturity adjustment on field:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Combined Worst call/Best put • Worst call, Best put <p>The maturity simulation settings applied to OID amortisation must be the same as applied to MD amortisation.</p> |
| OID Maturity adjustment on | <p>To apply maturity simulation convention to OID amortisation, select the following methods in the OID Maturity adjustment on field:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Combined Worst call/Best put • Worst call, Best put |
| EOP adjustment method | <p>The only supported setting for the OID functionality is Currency only.</p> |
| Variable yield adjustment | <p>Select either the None or the Prospective setting.</p> |
| Impairments | <p>The only possible setting is None.</p> |
| Interest appreciation when bought at par | <p>Can be either No or Yes.</p> |
| Deferred PL profile | <p>Not supported.</p> |
| Deferred profit/loss amortisation | <p>Select None.</p> |
| Amortisation deflation protection | <p>Select No.</p> |
| Accrete market discount on EOP | <p>Select either Yes or No.</p> |

2.2.5.2.2 Acquisition prices conventions

The following describes how OID amortisation is handled in the different cases.

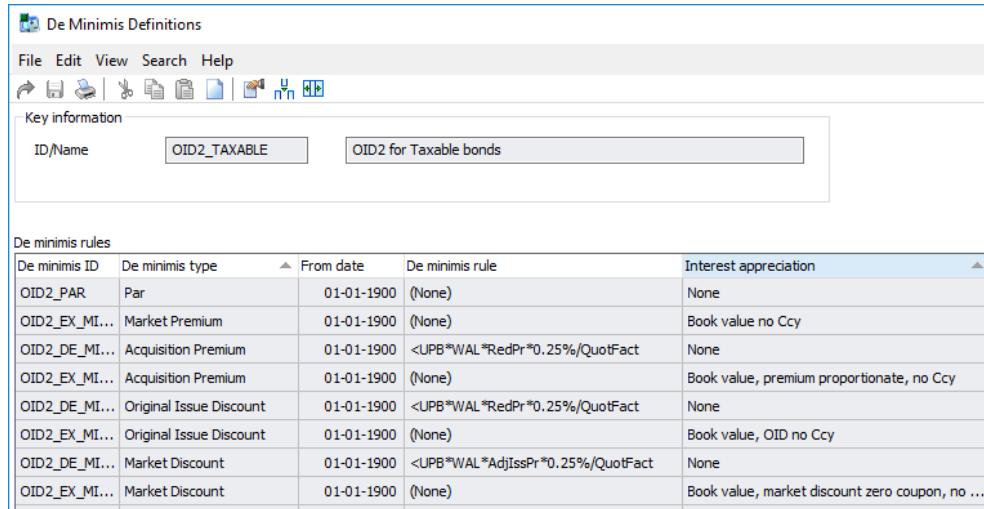
- If Acquisition price and Issue Price < Par and:
 - Acquisition price < Amortised issue price: Market Discount case
 - OID and MD are amortised and booked separately
 - OID and MD can be checked for the de minimis rule separately
 - Acquisition price > Amortised issue price: Acquisition premium case
 - OID net of acquisition premium is amortised (that is, OID amortisation and Acquisition Premium amortisation are netted)
 - OID is checked for the de minimis rule
- If Acquisition price > Par, or if Acquisition price = Par, then OID is ignored (even if issue price < Par)

2.2.5.2.3 De minimis rules and formulas

For taxable bonds, if the OID amount is less than the de minimis threshold, it is possible to configure SimCorp Dimension to avoid the OID amortisation.

This means the OID amount can be ignored, if the OID amount is smaller than the de minimis threshold. The same rule can be set for MD from the acquisition date.

The following image shows how you can define a de minimis definition in the **De Minimis Definitions** window when the bond is taxable.



OID is not tested for the de minimis rule when the bond is tax-exempt.

The following image shows how you can define a de minimis definition in the **De Minimis Definitions** window when the bond is tax-exempt.

| De Minimis Definitions | | | | | |
|-------------------------|--|---------------------------|------------|------------------------------------|---|
| Key information | | | | | |
| ID/Name | <input type="text" value="OID2_TAX_EXEMPT"/> | OID2 for Tax-exempt bonds | | | |
| De minimis rules | | | | | |
| De minimis ID | De minimis ID name | De minimis type | From d... | De minimis rule | Interest appreciation |
| OID2_PAR | OID2_PAR | Par | 01-01-1900 | (None) | None |
| OID2_EX_MINI_MP | OID2_EX_MINI_MP | Market Premium | 01-01-1900 | (None) | Book value no Ccy |
| OID2_EX_MINI_AP | OID2_EX_MINI_AP | Acquisition Premium | 01-01-1900 | (None) | Book value, premium proportionate, no Ccy |
| OID2_EX_MINI_OID | OID2_EX_MINI_OID | Original Issue Discount | 01-01-1900 | (None) | Book value, OID no Ccy |
| OID2_EX_MINI_MD | OID2_EX_MINI_MD | Market Discount | 01-01-1900 | (None) | Book value, market discount zero coupon, no Ccy |
| OID2_DE_MINI_MD<AP | OID2_DE_MINI_MD | Market Discount | 01-01-1900 | <UPB=WAL*AdjIssPr*0.25% / QuotFact | None |

2.2.5.2.4 Separate configuration for acquisition premium proportional method and market discount separate for OID

It is possible to configure SimCorp Dimension to calculate OID yield, Acquisition premium/discount, Accreted OID and Original issue discount (OID) according to the new rule.

2.2.5.2.4.1 Incrementing transaction

The image below shows the result of the profit/loss calculation for an incrementing transaction (for example).

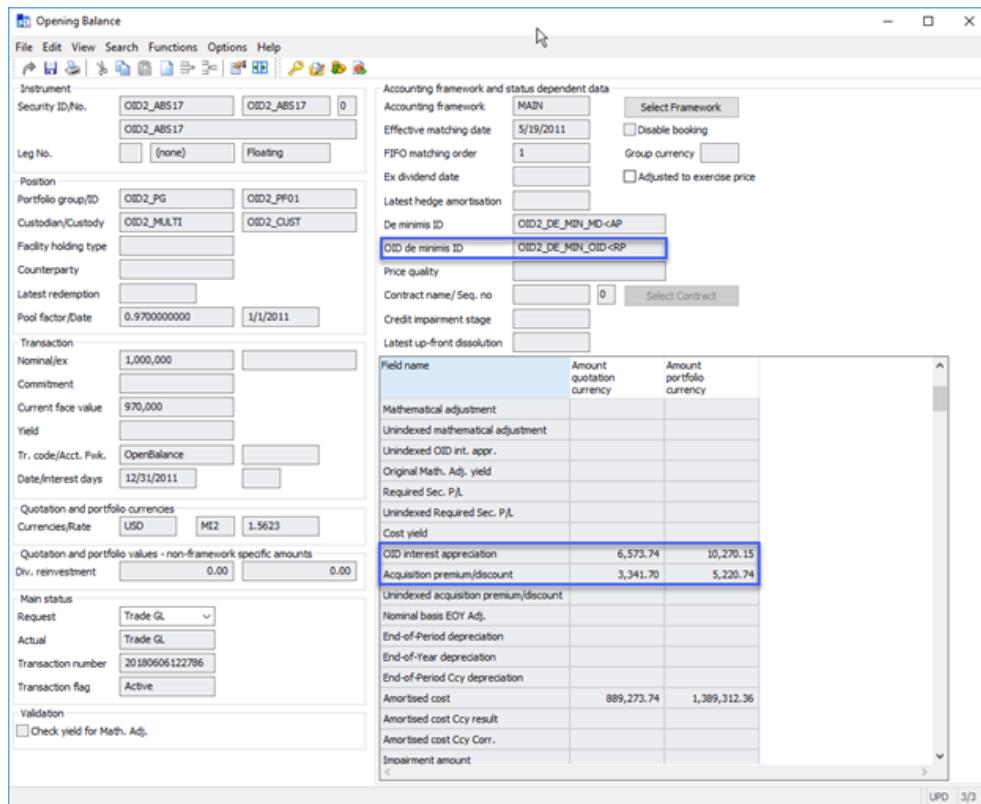
| Field name | Amount quotation Ccy (EUR) | Amount portfolio Ccy (USD) | Signed amount quotation Ccy (EUR) | Signed amount portfolio Ccy (USD) | De minimis ID | De minimis rule | OID de minimis ID | OID de minimis rule |
|---------------------------------|----------------------------|----------------------------|-----------------------------------|-----------------------------------|--|-----------------|---|---------------------|
| 7 Amortised cost | 860,000,00 | 860,000,00 | 860,000,00 | 860,000,00 | <input type="checkbox"/> | | <input type="checkbox"/> | |
| 8 Acquisition premium/discount | 56,366,06 | 56,366,06 | 56,366,06 | 56,366,06 | <input type="checkbox"/> | | <input type="checkbox"/> | |
| 9 Accreted OID | 16,366,06 | 16,366,06 | 16,366,06 | 16,366,06 | <input type="checkbox"/> | | <input type="checkbox"/> | |
| 10 Booked current value | 860,000,00 | 860,000,00 | 860,000,00 | 860,000,00 | <input type="checkbox"/> | | <input type="checkbox"/> | |
| 11 Cost value | 860,000,00 | 860,000,00 | 860,000,00 | 860,000,00 | <input type="checkbox"/> | | <input type="checkbox"/> | |
| 12 Book value | 860,000,00 | 860,000,00 | 860,000,00 | 860,000,00 | <input type="checkbox"/> | | <input type="checkbox"/> | |
| 13 OID yield | 6,623251 | 6,623251 | | | <input type="checkbox"/> | | <input type="checkbox"/> | |
| 14 Yield for Math. Adj. | 3,790809 | 3,790809 | | | <input type="checkbox"/> | | <input type="checkbox"/> | |
| 15 Amortised cost | 860,000,00 | 860,000,00 | 860,000,00 | 860,000,00 | <input type="checkbox"/> | | <input type="checkbox"/> | |
| 16 Acquisition premium/discount | 56,366,06 | 56,366,06 | 56,366,06 | 56,366,06 | <input type="checkbox"/> OID2_EX_MINI_MD | (None) | <input type="checkbox"/> | |
| 17 Accreted OID | 16,366,06 | 16,366,06 | 16,366,06 | 16,366,06 | <input type="checkbox"/> | | <input type="checkbox"/> | |
| 18 Original issue discount | 100,000,00 | 100,000,00 | 100,000,00 | 100,000,00 | <input type="checkbox"/> | | <input type="checkbox"/> OID2_EX_MINI_OID | (None) |

The Acquisition premium/discount field on the incrementing transaction shows the total market discount amount that is amortised.

In the image above, the **De minimis ID** field shows the rule applied and the **De minimis rule** fields shows if the rule passes the threshold. The **OID de minimis ID** field shows the rule applied and the **OID de minimis rule** fields shows if the rule passes the threshold.

Accreted OID is the part of the original issue discount that was amortised before the purchase date.

It is possible to define OID in the **Opening Balance** window. The following image shows an example where the OID interest appreciation and Acquisition premium/discount is defined:



Note

The acquisition premium/discount is used in calculations, so it should be either entered in the **Opening Balance** window, or it will be calculated based on the **Effective matching date**.

If the field **Acquisition premium/discount** is left empty in the opening balance transaction, SimCorp Dimension calculates it as follows:

$$\text{APD} = \text{AIPAOBD} * \text{Nom} * \text{PF} - (\text{CV} + \text{OIDIA})$$

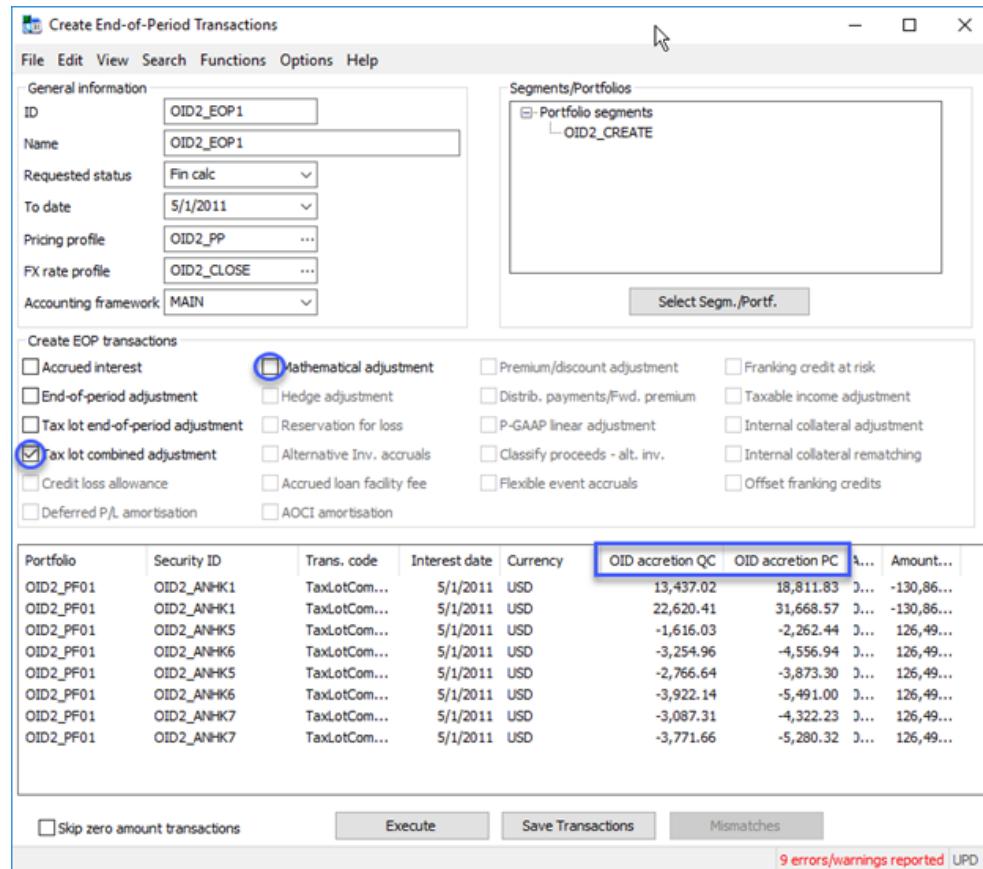
where:

- APD = Acquisition premium/discount
- AIPAOBD = Adjusted issue price acquisition on opening balance date
- Nom = Nominal
- PF = Pool factor
- CV = Balance cost value
- OIDIA = Balance OID interest appreciation

2.2.5.2.4.2 Mathematical adjustment transactions

You can create the OID amortisation transactions and market discount amortisation transactions in the **Create End-of-Period Transactions**

window. For example, select to create **Tax lot combined adjustment** or **Mathematical adjustment** transactions in the window.



In the **Mathematical Adjustments** window, open **Functions > Original Issue Discount Details** to view the OID amounts.

Tax lot combined adjustments, Variable yield adjustments, and Tax lot corrections are supported for OID.

You can view the OID balance fields on the holding and holdings match levels. For example:

| From date | To date | Accounting framework | Transaction No. | Trans. Transaction code | Trans. created by | De reference | De reference ID | De reference rule | De reference | De reference ID | De reference rule | Balance acquisition premium/discount QC | OID adjusted to maturity date | OID maturity date | Balance original appreciation QC | Balance original appreciation PC | Curve name |
|-------------|----------|----------------------|-----------------|-------------------------|-------------------|-------------------------------------|-----------------|-------------------|--------------|-----------------|--------------------------|---|-------------------------------|-------------------|----------------------------------|----------------------------------|------------|
| 1 5/1/2011 | 5/2/2011 | MAIN | 20100000122948 | Buy | 20100000122948 | <input type="checkbox"/> | OID2_EX_MHNE_AP | | -44,309.02 | -49,882.24 | <input type="checkbox"/> | 5/1/2013 Put | | | | | |
| 2 5/1/2011 | 5/2/2011 | MAIN | 20100000122975 | Buy | 20100000122975 | <input type="checkbox"/> | OID2_EX_MHNE_AP | | 41,308.41 | 63,863.83 | <input type="checkbox"/> | 5/1/2013 Put | | | | | |
| 3 5/1/2011 | 5/2/2011 | MAIN | 20100000122975 | Buy | 20100000122975 | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | OID2_EX_MHNE_AP | | 41,308.41 | 63,863.83 | <input type="checkbox"/> | 5/1/2013 Put | 7,486.33 | 60,774.86 | | | |
| 4 5/1/2011 | 5/2/2011 | MAIN | 20100000122975 | Buy | 20100000122975 | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | OID2_EX_MHNE_AP | | 41,308.41 | 63,863.83 | <input type="checkbox"/> | 5/1/2013 Put | 7,486.33 | 60,774.86 | | | |
| 5 5/1/2011 | 5/2/2011 | MAIN | 20100000122975 | Buy | 20100000122975 | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | OID2_EX_MHNE_AP | | 41,308.41 | 63,863.83 | <input type="checkbox"/> | 5/1/2013 Put | 7,486.33 | 60,774.86 | | | |
| 6 5/1/2011 | 5/2/2011 | MAIN | 20100000122975 | Buy | 20100000122975 | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | OID2_EX_MHNE_AP | | 41,308.41 | 63,863.83 | <input type="checkbox"/> | 5/1/2013 Put | 7,486.33 | 60,774.86 | | | |
| 7 5/1/2011 | 5/2/2011 | MAIN | 20100000122975 | Buy | 20100000122975 | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | OID2_EX_MHNE_AP | | 41,308.41 | 63,863.83 | <input type="checkbox"/> | 5/1/2013 Put | 7,486.33 | 60,774.86 | | | |
| 8 5/1/2011 | 5/2/2011 | MAIN | 20100000122975 | Buy | 20100000122975 | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | OID2_EX_MHNE_AP | | 41,308.41 | 63,863.83 | <input type="checkbox"/> | 5/1/2013 Put | 7,486.33 | 60,774.86 | | | |
| 9 5/1/2011 | 5/2/2011 | MAIN | 20100000122975 | Buy | 20100000122975 | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | OID2_EX_MHNE_AP | | 41,308.41 | 63,863.83 | <input type="checkbox"/> | 5/1/2013 Put | 7,486.33 | 60,774.86 | | | |
| 10 5/1/2011 | 5/2/2011 | MAIN | 20100000122975 | Buy | 20100000122975 | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | OID2_EX_MHNE_AP | | 41,308.41 | 63,863.83 | <input type="checkbox"/> | 5/1/2013 Put | 7,486.33 | 60,774.86 | | | |
| 11 5/1/2011 | 5/2/2011 | MAIN | 20100000122975 | Buy | 20100000122975 | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | OID2_EX_MHNE_AP | | 41,308.41 | 63,863.83 | <input type="checkbox"/> | 5/1/2013 Put | 7,486.33 | 60,774.86 | | | |
| 12 5/1/2011 | 5/2/2011 | MAIN | 20100000122975 | Buy | 20100000122975 | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | OID2_EX_MHNE_AP | | 41,308.41 | 63,863.83 | <input type="checkbox"/> | 5/1/2013 Put | 7,486.33 | 60,774.86 | | | |
| 13 5/1/2011 | 5/2/2011 | MAIN | 20100000122975 | Buy | 20100000122975 | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | OID2_EX_MHNE_AP | | 41,308.41 | 63,863.83 | <input type="checkbox"/> | 5/1/2013 Put | 7,486.33 | 60,774.86 | | | |
| 14 5/1/2011 | 5/2/2011 | MAIN | 20100000122975 | Buy | 20100000122975 | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | OID2_EX_MHNE_AP | | 41,308.41 | 63,863.83 | <input type="checkbox"/> | 5/1/2013 Put | 7,486.33 | 60,774.86 | | | |
| 15 5/1/2011 | 5/2/2011 | MAIN | 20100000122975 | Buy | 20100000122975 | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | OID2_EX_MHNE_AP | | 41,308.41 | 63,863.83 | <input type="checkbox"/> | 5/1/2013 Put | 7,486.33 | 60,774.86 | | | |
| 16 5/1/2011 | 5/2/2011 | MAIN | 20100000122975 | Buy | 20100000122975 | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | OID2_EX_MHNE_AP | | 41,308.41 | 63,863.83 | <input type="checkbox"/> | 5/1/2013 Put | 7,486.33 | 60,774.86 | | | |
| 17 5/1/2011 | 5/2/2011 | MAIN | 20100000122975 | Buy | 20100000122975 | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | OID2_EX_MHNE_AP | | 41,308.41 | 63,863.83 | <input type="checkbox"/> | 5/1/2013 Put | 7,486.33 | 60,774.86 | | | |
| 18 5/1/2011 | 5/2/2011 | MAIN | 20100000122975 | Buy | 20100000122975 | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | OID2_EX_MHNE_AP | | 41,308.41 | 63,863.83 | <input type="checkbox"/> | 5/1/2013 Put | 7,486.33 | 60,774.86 | | | |
| 19 5/1/2011 | 5/2/2011 | MAIN | 20100000122975 | Buy | 20100000122975 | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | OID2_EX_MHNE_AP | | 41,308.41 | 63,863.83 | <input type="checkbox"/> | 5/1/2013 Put | 7,486.33 | 60,774.86 | | | |
| 20 5/1/2011 | 5/2/2011 | MAIN | 20100000122975 | Buy | 20100000122975 | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | OID2_EX_MHNE_AP | | 41,308.41 | 63,863.83 | <input type="checkbox"/> | 5/1/2013 Put | 7,486.33 | 60,774.86 | | | |
| 21 5/1/2011 | 5/2/2011 | MAIN | 20100000122975 | Buy | 20100000122975 | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | OID2_EX_MHNE_AP | | 41,308.41 | 63,863.83 | <input type="checkbox"/> | 5/1/2013 Put | 7,486.33 | 60,774.86 | | | |
| 22 5/1/2011 | 5/2/2011 | MAIN | 20100000122975 | Buy | 20100000122975 | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | OID2_EX_MHNE_AP | | 41,308.41 | 63,863.83 | <input type="checkbox"/> | 5/1/2013 Put | 7,486.33 | 60,774.86 | | | |
| 23 5/1/2011 | 5/2/2011 | MAIN | 20100000122975 | Buy | 20100000122975 | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | OID2_EX_MHNE_AP | | 41,308.41 | 63,863.83 | <input type="checkbox"/> | 5/1/2013 Put | 7,486.33 | 60,774.86 | | | |
| 24 5/1/2011 | 5/2/2011 | MAIN | 20100000122975 | Buy | 20100000122975 | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | OID2_EX_MHNE_AP | | 41,308.41 | 63,863.83 | <input type="checkbox"/> | 5/1/2013 Put | 7,486.33 | 60,774.86 | | | |
| 25 5/1/2011 | 5/2/2011 | MAIN | 20100000122975 | Buy | 20100000122975 | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | OID2_EX_MHNE_AP | | 41,308.41 | 63,863.83 | <input type="checkbox"/> | 5/1/2013 Put | 7,486.33 | 60,774.86 | | | |
| 26 5/1/2011 | 5/2/2011 | MAIN | 20100000122975 | Buy | 20100000122975 | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | OID2_EX_MHNE_AP | | 41,308.41 | 63,863.83 | <input type="checkbox"/> | 5/1/2013 Put | 7,486.33 | 60,774.86 | | | |
| 27 5/1/2011 | 5/2/2011 | MAIN | 20100000122975 | Buy | 20100000122975 | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | OID2_EX_MHNE_AP | | 41,308.41 | 63,863.83 | <input type="checkbox"/> | 5/1/2013 Put | 7,486.33 | 60,774.86 | | | |
| 28 5/1/2011 | 5/2/2011 | MAIN | 20100000122975 | Buy | 20100000122975 | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | OID2_EX_MHNE_AP | | 41,308.41 | 63,863.83 | <input type="checkbox"/> | 5/1/2013 Put | 7,486.33 | 60,774.86 | | | |
| 29 5/1/2011 | 5/2/2011 | MAIN | 20100000122975 | Buy | 20100000122975 | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | OID2_EX_MHNE_AP | | 41,308.41 | 63,863.83 | <input type="checkbox"/> | 5/1/2013 Put | 7,486.33 | 60,774.86 | | | |
| 30 5/1/2011 | 5/2/2011 | MAIN | 20100000122975 | Buy | 20100000122975 | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | OID2_EX_MHNE_AP | | 41,308.41 | 63,863.83 | <input type="checkbox"/> | 5/1/2013 Put | 7,486.33 | 60,774.86 | | | |
| 31 5/1/2011 | 5/2/2011 | MAIN | 20100000122975 | Buy | 20100000122975 | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | OID2_EX_MHNE_AP | | 41,308.41 | 63,863.83 | <input type="checkbox"/> | 5/1/2013 Put | 7,486.33 | 60,774.86 | | | |
| 32 5/1/2011 | 5/2/2011 | MAIN | 20100000122975 | Buy | 20100000122975 | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | OID2_EX_MHNE_AP | | 41,308.41 | 63,863.83 | <input type="checkbox"/> | 5/1/2013 Put | 7,486.33 | 60,774.86 | | | |
| 33 5/1/2011 | 5/2/2011 | MAIN | 20100000122975 | Buy | 20100000122975 | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | OID2_EX_MHNE_AP | | 41,308.41 | 63,863.83 | <input type="checkbox"/> | 5/1/2013 Put | 7,486.33 | 60,774.86 | | | |
| 34 5/1/2011 | 5/2/2011 | MAIN | 20100000122975 | Buy | 20100000122975 | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | OID2_EX_MHNE_AP | | 41,308.41 | 63,863.83 | <input type="checkbox"/> | 5/1/2013 Put | 7,486.33 | 60,774.86 | | | |
| 35 5/1/2011 | 5/2/2011 | MAIN | 20100000122975 | Buy | 20100000122975 | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | OID2_EX_MHNE_AP | | 41,308.41 | 63,863.83 | <input type="checkbox"/> | 5/1/2013 Put | 7,486.33 | 60,774.86 | | | |
| 36 5/1/2011 | 5/2/2011 | MAIN | 20100000122975 | Buy | 20100000122975 | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | OID2_EX_MHNE_AP | | 41,308.41 | 63,863.83 | <input type="checkbox"/> | 5/1/2013 Put | 7,486.33 | 60,774.86 | | | |
| 37 5/1/2011 | 5/2/2011 | MAIN | 20100000122975 | Buy | 20100000122975 | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | OID2_EX_MHNE_AP | | 41,308.41 | 63,863.83 | <input type="checkbox"/> | 5/1/2013 Put | 7,486.33 | 60,774.86 | | | |
| 38 5/1/2011 | 5/2/2011 | MAIN | 20100000122975 | Buy | 20100000122975 | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | OID2_EX_MHNE_AP | | 41,308.41 | 63,863.83 | <input type="checkbox"/> | 5/1/2013 Put | 7,486.33 | 60,774.86 | | | |
| 39 5/1/2011 | 5/2/2011 | MAIN | 20100000122975 | Buy | 20100000122975 | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | OID2_EX_MHNE_AP | | 41,308.41 | 63,863.83 | <input type="checkbox"/> | 5/1/2013 Put | 7,486.33 | 60,774.86 | | | |
| 40 5/1/2011 | 5/2/2011 | MAIN | 20100000122975 | Buy | 20100000122975 | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | OID2_EX_MHNE_AP | | 41,308.41 | 63,863.83 | <input type="checkbox"/> | 5/1/2013 Put | 7,486.33 | 60,774.86 | | | |
| 41 5/1/2011 | 5/2/2011 | MAIN | 20100000122975 | Buy | 20100000122975 | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | OID2_EX_MHNE_AP | | 41,308.41 | 63,863.83 | <input type="checkbox"/> | 5/1/2013 Put | 7,486.33 | 60,774.86 | | | |
| 42 5/1/2011 | 5/2/2011 | MAIN | 20100000122975 | Buy | 20100000122975 | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | OID2_EX_MHNE_AP | | 41,308.41 | 63,863.83 | <input type="checkbox"/> | 5/1/2013 Put | 7,486.33 | 60,774.86 | | | |
| 43 5/1/2011 | 5/2/2011 | MAIN | 20100000122975 | Buy | 20100000122975 | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | OID2_EX_MHNE_AP | | 41,308.41 | 63,863.83 | <input type="checkbox"/> | 5/1/2013 Put | 7,486.33 | 60,774.86 | | | |
| 44 5/1/2011 | 5/2/2011 | MAIN | 20100000122975 | Buy | 20100000122975 | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | OID2_EX_MHNE_AP | | 41,308.41 | 63,863.83 | <input type="checkbox"/> | 5/1/2013 Put | 7,486.33 | 60,774.86 | | | |
| 45 5/1/2011 | 5/2/2011 | MAIN | 20100000122975 | Buy | 20100000122975 | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | OID2_EX_MHNE_AP | | 41,308.41 | 63,863.83 | <input type="checkbox"/> | 5/1/2013 Put | 7,486.33 | 60,774.86 | | | |
| 46 5/1/2011 | 5/2/2011 | MAIN | 20100000122975 | Buy | 20100000122975 | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | OID2_EX_MHNE_AP | | 41,308.41 | 63,863.83 | <input type="checkbox"/> | 5/1/2013 Put | 7,486.33 | 60,774.86 | | | |
| 47 5/1/2011 | 5/2/2011 | MAIN | 20100000122975 | Buy | 20100000122975 | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | OID2_EX_MHNE_AP | | 41,308.41 | 63,863.83 | <input type="checkbox"/> | 5/1/2013 Put | 7,486.33 | 60,774.86 | | | |
| 48 5/1/2011 | 5/2/2011 | MAIN | 20100000122975 | Buy | 20100000122975 | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | OID2_EX_MHNE_AP | | 41,308.41 | 63,863.83 | <input type="checkbox"/> | 5/1/2013 Put | 7,486.33 | 60,774.86 | | | |
| 49 5/1/2011 | 5/2/2011 | MAIN | 20100000122975 | Buy | 20100000122975 | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | OID2_EX_MHNE_AP | | 41,308.41 | 63,863.83 | <input type="checkbox"/> | 5/1/2013 Put | 7,486.33 | 60,774.86 | | | |
| 50 5/1/2011 | 5/2/2011 | MAIN | 20100000122975 | Buy | 20100000122975 | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | OID2_EX_MHNE_AP | | 41,308.41 | 63,863.83 | <input type="checkbox"/> | 5/1/2013 Put | 7,486.33 | 60,774.86 | | | |
| 51 5/1/2011 | 5/2/2011 | MAIN | 20100000122975 | Buy | 20100000122975 | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | OID2_EX_MHNE_AP | | | | | | | | | | |

- **Combined Worst call/Best put**
- **Worst call, Best put**

The AP proportional/MD separate configuration assumes that if OID to be amortised to some put/call price, then both amortisations will stop as soon as the OID put/call price is reached.

There are situations with no MD amortisation at all (when bought at issue date and at issue price) or when there is no OID amortisation (security issue price is 100 %). For these cases, the Adjusted to exercise price or OID adjusted to exercise price will show whether the maturity or put/call price has been reached.

2.2.5.2.4.3 Decrementing transactions

The redemption, reallocation, and sell (or buy for the short position) transactions support OID with the AP proportional/MD separate configuration, similarly to the AP netted/MD as a difference configuration.

If the MD is not calculated on the EOP, it will be realised on the decrementing transactions.

Similarly to the AP netted/MD as a difference configuration, the netting logic (for capital gain/loss and interest income if these amounts have opposite signs) is applied for the OID with the AP proportional/MD separate configuration.

This means that for short positions the net capital gain and interest expense and no netting is applied when the capital loss and interest expense is calculated on decrementing transaction (as these amounts have the same sign).

For short positions, the amount in the field Realised interest is negative and represents not an interest income, but interest expense. Therefore, by netting capital gain and interest expense for short positions and capital loss and interest income for long positions the same logic is used.

2.2.5.2.4.4 Portfolio calculations, balance booking and finance Booking

It is possible to calculate and simulate both OID and MD amortisations in portfolio calculations (PFC) for OID with the AP proportional/MD separate configuration similarly to the AP netted/MD as a difference configuration.

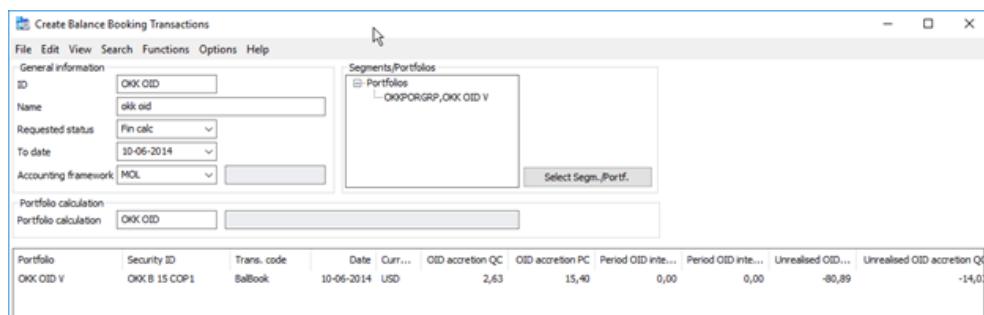
To overwrite the setting in the **Financial Accounting Methods** window and allow simulating the MD amortisation when it is not calculated on EOP, select the **Simulate deferred market discount** check box in the **Portfolio Calculation** window > **Settings** sub-window.

For example:

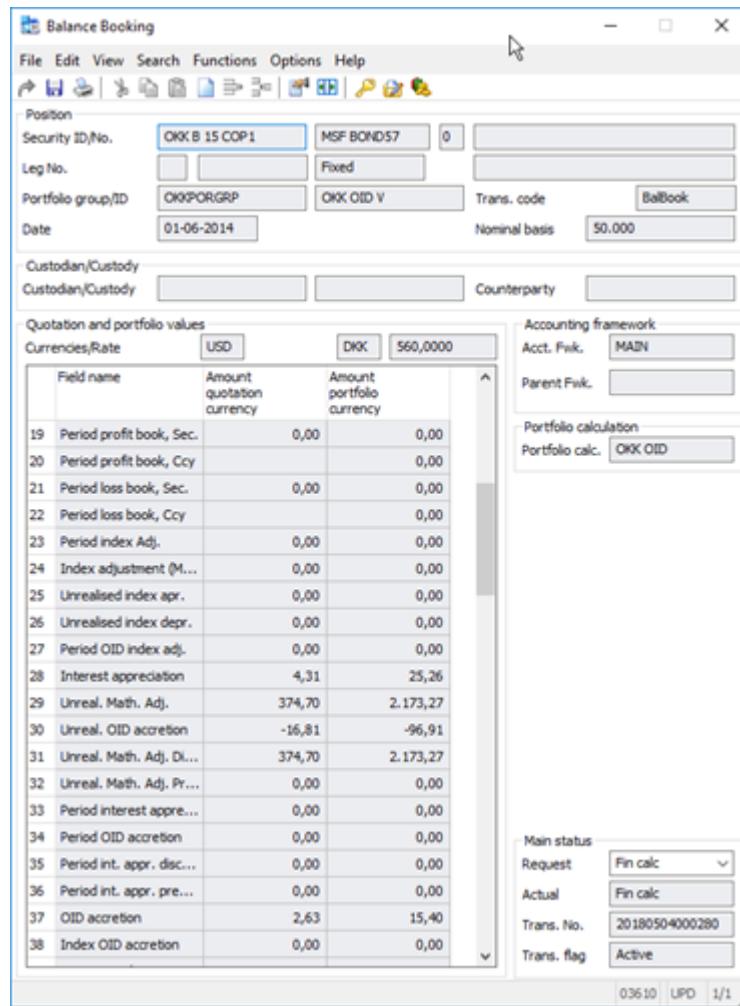
Results also include

- | | |
|---|---|
| <input type="checkbox"/> Business classification from portfolios | B'ness Cls. in PFCalc. <input type="text"/> |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Franking credit calculation | <input type="checkbox"/> Days franking credit at risk |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Open payments | <input type="checkbox"/> Early payments |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Expected restitution calculation | <input type="checkbox"/> DRD and QD calculation |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Open and made payment reconciliation | <input type="checkbox"/> Funding costs |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Cumulated costs | <input type="checkbox"/> Special period fields |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Tax lot end-of-period adjustment | <input type="checkbox"/> Repo, lending and collateral match |
| <input type="checkbox"/> SVO ratings | <input type="checkbox"/> Disable hedge EOP adjustments |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Default foregone income | <input type="checkbox"/> Pending four eyes approval |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Simulate deferred market discount | |

It is possible to generate balance booking transactions based on the portfolio calculation. For example, create a setup for generating the transactions in the **Create Balance Booking Transactions** window.



You can then view the transactions in the **Balance Booking** window.



All the OID-related profit/loss fields are available for the finance booking, as it was for the AP netted/MD as a difference configuration.

2.2.6 Patched from 19.01

2.2.6.1 InvStRefG – 45-Day Rule – Decomposition for index certificates and index securities [6.3] [6.31] [6.4] [6.41]

As of version 19.01, you can decompose index securities and index certificates into their components when calculating Franking credits, so that the hedge ratios for the holdings support the German legislation InvStRefG.

- The decomposition is based on Exposure.
- The decomposition for index securities works on the security itself. For index certificates, the underlying security is decomposed.
- The decomposition results are used for the hedge calculation within the 45-day rule.

In previous versions of SimCorp Dimension, these securities were not considered when calculating hedge ratios, unless they were an underlying security to a derivative, for example index options.

Index certificates and index securities are decomposed when calculating Franking credits for equities. This means that if the equity is included in the index security, then the relative weight of the equity in the index will impact exposure and delta calculations for the 45-day rule.

As shown in the following example, you can view the decomposition of the index certificate or index security in the portfolio calculations and other windows.

| Portfolio Calculation List (FCR_COMP) | | | | | | | | | | | |
|---|------------|------------|-------------|-----------------------|-----------|------------------------|---------------|------------------|-----------------------|----------------------------|------------------|
| | From date | To date | Security ID | Security ID component | Portfolio | Balance nominal/number | Clean price | Clean value QC | Balance book value QC | Balance franking credit QC | Exposure QC |
| 1 | 07-01-2017 | 07-01-2017 | _EQ_DIV2 | | FCR_COMP | 3.005.000 | 89,0000000000 | 267.445.000,00 | 270.450.000,00 | 0,00 | 267.445.000,00 |
| 2 | 07-01-2017 | 07-01-2017 | _EQ_DIV3 | | FCR_COMP | 0 | 84,0000000000 | 0,00 | 0,00 | 0,00 | 0,00 |
| 3 | 07-01-2017 | 07-01-2017 | _EQ_DIV1 | | FCR_COMP | 5.000.000 | 87,0000000000 | 435.000.000,00 | 347.000.000,00 | 0,00 | 435.000.000,00 |
| 4 | 07-01-2017 | 07-01-2017 | _IND_SEC_1 | | FCR_COMP | 2.000.000 | 33,0000000000 | 66.000.000,00 | 78.000.000,00 | 0,00 | 66.000.000,00 |
| 5 | 07-01-2017 | 07-01-2017 | _IND_SEC_1 | _EQ_DIV1 | FCR_COMP | 151.724,137931 | 87,0000000000 | 13.200.000,00 | 0,00 | 0,00 | 13.200.000,00 |
| 6 | 07-01-2017 | 07-01-2017 | _IND_SEC_1 | _EQ_DIV2 | FCR_COMP | 222.471,9101124 | 89,0000000000 | 19.800.000,00 | 0,00 | 0,00 | 19.800.000,00 |
| 7 | 07-01-2017 | 07-01-2017 | _IND_SEC_1 | _EQ_DIV3 | FCR_COMP | 392.857,1426571 | 84,0000000000 | 33.000.000,00 | 0,00 | 0,00 | 33.000.000,00 |
| 8 | 07-01-2017 | 07-01-2017 | _IND_SEC_1 | | FCR_COMP | 0 | 0,0000000000 | 0,00 | 0,00 | 0,00 | 0,00 |
| 9 | 07-01-2017 | 07-01-2017 | | | FCR_COMP | 10.005.000 | | 768.445.000,00 | 695.450.000,00 | 0,00 | 768.445.000,00 |
| 10 | 12-01-2017 | 12-01-2017 | _EQ_DIV2 | | FCR_COMP | 3.005.000 | 89,0000000000 | 267.445.000,00 | 270.450.000,00 | 0,00 | 267.445.000,00 |
| 11 | 12-01-2017 | 12-01-2017 | _EQ_DIV3 | | FCR_COMP | 0 | 84,0000000000 | 0,00 | 0,00 | 0,00 | 0,00 |
| 12 | 12-01-2017 | 12-01-2017 | _EQ_DIV1 | | FCR_COMP | 5.000.000 | 87,0000000000 | 435.000.000,00 | 347.000.000,00 | 0,00 | 435.000.000,00 |
| 13 | 12-01-2017 | 12-01-2017 | _IND_SEC_1 | | FCR_COMP | -1.500.000 | 33,0000000000 | -49.500.000,00 | -64.500.000,00 | 0,00 | -49.500.000,00 |
| 14 | 12-01-2017 | 12-01-2017 | _IND_SEC_1 | | FCR_COMP | 0 | 0,0000000000 | 0,00 | 0,00 | 0,00 | 0,00 |
| 15 | 12-01-2017 | 12-01-2017 | _IND_SEC_1 | _EQ_DIV3 | FCR_COMP | -294.642,8571429 | 84,0000000000 | -24.750.000,00 | 0,00 | 0,00 | -24.750.000,00 |
| 16 | 12-01-2017 | 12-01-2017 | _IND_SEC_1 | _EQ_DIV2 | FCR_COMP | -166.853,9325843 | 89,0000000000 | -14.850.000,00 | 0,00 | 0,00 | -14.850.000,00 |
| 17 | 12-01-2017 | 12-01-2017 | _IND_SEC_1 | _EQ_DIV1 | FCR_COMP | -113.793,1034483 | 87,0000000000 | -9.900.000,00 | 0,00 | 0,00 | -9.900.000,00 |
| 18 | 12-01-2017 | 12-01-2017 | | | FCR_COMP | 6.505.000 | | 652.945.000,00 | 552.950.000,00 | 0,00 | 652.945.000,00 |
| 19 | 08-03-2017 | 08-03-2017 | _EQ_DIV1 | | FCR_COMP | 5.000.000 | 87,0000000000 | 435.000.000,00 | 347.000.000,00 | 1.500.000,00 | 435.000.000,00 |
| 20 | 08-03-2017 | 08-03-2017 | _EQ_DIV3 | | FCR_COMP | 5.600.000 | 84,0000000000 | 470.400.000,00 | 240.800.000,00 | 1.372.000,00 | 470.400.000,00 |
| 21 | 08-03-2017 | 08-03-2017 | _EQ_DIV2 | | FCR_COMP | 3.005.000 | 89,0000000000 | 267.445.000,00 | 270.450.000,00 | 2.554.250,00 | 267.445.000,00 |
| 22 | 08-03-2017 | 08-03-2017 | _IND_SEC_1 | _EQ_DIV3 | FCR_COMP | -294.642,8571429 | 84,0000000000 | -24.750.000,00 | 0,00 | 0,00 | -24.750.000,00 |
| 23 | 08-03-2017 | 08-03-2017 | _IND_SEC_1 | _EQ_DIV2 | FCR_COMP | -166.853,9325843 | 89,0000000000 | -14.850.000,00 | 0,00 | 0,00 | -14.850.000,00 |
| 24 | 08-03-2017 | 08-03-2017 | _IND_SEC_1 | _EQ_DIV1 | FCR_COMP | -113.793,1034483 | 87,0000000000 | -9.900.000,00 | 0,00 | 0,00 | -9.900.000,00 |
| 25 | 08-03-2017 | 08-03-2017 | _IND_SEC_1 | | FCR_COMP | -1.500.000 | 33,0000000000 | -49.500.000,00 | -64.500.000,00 | 0,00 | -49.500.000,00 |
| 26 | 08-03-2017 | 08-03-2017 | _IND_SEC_1 | | FCR_COMP | 0 | 0,0000000000 | 0,00 | 0,00 | 0,00 | 0,00 |
| 27 | 08-03-2017 | 08-03-2017 | | | FCR_COMP | 12.105.000 | | 1.123.345.000,00 | 793.750.000,00 | 5.426.250,00 | 1.123.345.000,00 |
| 28 | | | | | FCR_COMP | | | | | | |

00240 | READ | (default) 9/27

The Franking credits on the equity is also impacted, as shown in the following example.

| | Date | Delta |
|----|------------|-----------|
| 1 | 03-01-2017 | 1,0000000 |
| 2 | 04-01-2017 | 1,0000000 |
| 3 | 05-01-2017 | 1,0000000 |
| 4 | 06-01-2017 | 1,0000000 |
| 5 | 07-01-2017 | 1,0303448 |
| 6 | 08-01-2017 | 1,0303448 |
| 7 | 09-01-2017 | 1,0303448 |
| 8 | 10-01-2017 | 1,0303448 |
| 9 | 11-01-2017 | 1,0303448 |
| 10 | 12-01-2017 | 0,9772414 |
| 11 | 13-01-2017 | 0,9772414 |
| 12 | 14-01-2017 | 0,9772414 |
| 13 | 15-01-2017 | 0,9772414 |
| 14 | 16-01-2017 | 0,9772414 |

2.2.6.2 InvStRefG – 45-Day Rule – Period end adjusted to next banking day [6.3] [6.31] [6.4] [6.41]

As of version 19.01, you can calculate 45-day rule periods adjusted to the next banking day to comply with the German regulation InvStRefG.

If the 45th day is on a weekend or public holiday, the transactions up to the next business day are considered when evaluating Franking credits, for example when invalidating Franking credits.

If the 45th day is on a weekend or public holiday, the hedge ratio must be below 30 percent until the end of the next business day to count the Franking credit.

Note

When you sell on the 45th day, which is adjusted due to a holiday on the 45th day, then the Franking Credit will get invalidated.

To use the new functionality, you can select a new calendar convention in the **Portfolios** window:

1. Press **F5** to select a portfolio.
2. Select **Functions > Extra Information**.

3. On the **Info2** tab, select the calendar in the **Franking credit calendar** field.
4. Click **Close** and then save the portfolio.

The base filter 1562 has been updated with this change (available from SimCorp Dimension version 19.01).

Example

- If the effective matching date is 17-11-2015 for a specific tax lot (the agreement date of the Buy), then the Franking credit days transaction calculates 45 days on the 01-01-2016.
- If 01-01-2016 is a bank holiday in the Franking credit calendar, and 02-01-2016 and 03-01-2016 are weekend days, then SimCorp Dimension calculate 45 days on the 04-01-2016.
- If the delta is below the 0.7 threshold, then the 45-day rule is not fulfilled.

In this example, the 45-day rule is not fulfilled on the next business day, meaning that the Franking credit is invalidated, as shown in the following image.

| Date | Delta |
|---------------|-----------|
| 1 17-11-2015 | 1,0000000 |
| 2 18-11-2015 | 1,0000000 |
| 3 19-11-2015 | 1,0000000 |
| 4 20-11-2015 | 1,0000000 |
| 5 21-11-2015 | 1,0000000 |
| 6 22-11-2015 | 1,0000000 |
| 7 23-11-2015 | 1,0000000 |
| 8 24-11-2015 | 1,0000000 |
| 9 25-11-2015 | 1,0000000 |
| 10 26-11-2015 | 1,0000000 |
| 11 27-11-2015 | 1,0000000 |
| 12 28-11-2015 | 1,0000000 |
| 13 29-11-2015 | 1,0000000 |
| 14 30-11-2015 | 1,0000000 |
| 15 01-12-2015 | 1,0000000 |

| Date | Delta |
|---------------|-----------|
| 43 29-12-2015 | 1,0000000 |
| 44 30-12-2015 | 1,0000000 |
| 45 31-12-2015 | 1,0000000 |
| 46 01-01-2016 | 1,0000000 |
| 47 02-01-2016 | 1,0000000 |
| 48 03-01-2016 | 1,0000000 |
| 49 04-01-2016 | 0,3000000 |
| 50 05-01-2016 | 0,2975610 |
| 51 | |
| 52 | |
| 53 | |
| 54 | |
| 55 | |
| 56 | |

In previous versions, SimCorp Dimension only looked on the 01-01-2016 and therefore the Franking credit would not be invalidated.

2.3 NAIC

2.3.1 Patched from 6.41

2.3.1.1 Added security identification to the NAIC Code Assignments to Securities window [6.3-IMPL] [6.31-IMPL] [6.4]

As of version 6.41, the **Security No.** and **Ser. No.** fields were added to the **NAIC Code Assignments to Securities** window so you can distinguish between the various securities with the same ID.

2.4 Private Debt

2.4.1 Change of holding setup for Loan Facilities

As of version 6.31, there is a change to the holding setup for Loan Facilities. In previous versions, SimCorp Dimension split the Loan Facility transactions on the trade date. This holding split has been removed to improve the support for unsettled workflows in Loan Facilities.

SimCorp consultants can change the holding setup for Loan Facilities in the **Transaction Options** window > **Back Office 4** tab by selecting or clearing the **Split loan facility transaction on trade date (TD)** check box.

- When the check box is selected, the unsettled trades are handled as separate holdings.
This means that SimCorp Dimension will handle Loan Facility holdings as in previous versions (6.3 and lower), and that there is a holding split for Loan Facility unsettled transactions (Trade Date transactions).
- When the check box is cleared, there will not be a holding split on Trade Date transactions. This is the default option.

The background for the change is that in a future version of SimCorp Dimension, this holding split will be removed for Loan Facilities to improve the support of unsettled workflows.

During a transition period, the setting in the **Transaction Options** window will ensure backwards compatibility if you already have Loan Facility holdings in SimCorp Dimension with this holding split.

When you upgrade to version 6.4 or higher, a Check Before Upgrade (CBU) program will check for Loan Facility holdings with this holding split. A conversion program will enable the setting in the **Transaction Options** window (select the check box) if you have Loan Facility holdings with this holding split.

2.4.2 Check Before Upgrade and Conversion program of split for unsettled positions [6.2] [6.3]

As of version 6.4, there is a new Check Before Upgrade (CBU) program and a new Conversion program for removing the split between the settled and

unsettled loan facility positions.

The loan facility positions in SimCorp Dimension will be converted to a new structure where there is no longer a split in the Nominal agreement framework between the settled and unsettled positions.

The CBU program will check the existing holding splits between the settled and unsettled loan facility positions in your installation and issues a warning if there are holding splits. You can continue running the upgrade process.

The Conversion program checks if your installation requires a split on unsettled loan facility positions.

If there are unsettled loan facility trades in your installation, the conversion program select the new split setting in the **Transaction Options** window > **Back Office 4** tab > **Split loan facility transaction on trade date (TD)** check box. The conversion program does not change the holdings and there will be a split for the two transactions (settled and unsettled).

The old and deprecated functionality remains active, but the installation will not be ready for future SimCorp Dimension upgrades. SimCorp is notified through the CBU program so that the clean up of the data can be scheduled.

If the old and deprecated functionality is no longer required, the option to split unsettled loan facility transactions is removed, and the installation is ready for future upgrades.

3 Administration

3.1 Collaterals

3.1.1 Enable front office users to approve collateral transactions from back office

As of version 6.4, front office users can approve or reject collateral transactions created on entry level by back office users in the **Margin Manager**. This further integrates the collateral transaction workflow between front and back offices. For information about previously released related functionality, see "Front office approval" in the *Release Notes 6.3*.

The approval mechanism uses three fields that are available in the **Margin Manager** and collateral transaction windows in the back office and in the **Order Outbox** in **Asset Manager** in the front office: **Originator**, **Approval group**, and **Approver**.

Note

The approval mechanism does not work for collateral transactions entered in the **Collateral Manager**.

To set up the approval of collateral transactions by front office users, verify that the collateral transaction portfolio is part of the following segments, or create the segment in the **General Segments** window, add the portfolio, and assign the following segments:

1. The front office holdings segment in the **Front Office Options** window on the **Options** tab in the **Front office holdings portfolio segment** field.
2. The order approval segment in the **Order Options** window on the **Options** tab in the **Use approval for portfolios in segment** field.
3. The preliminary transactions instrument segment in the **Order Options** window on the **Options** tab in the **Use approval for preliminary transactions in instrument segment** field.
4. The compliance configuration segment in the **Compliance Configuration** window for the **MAIN** branch in the **Pre-trade** section in the **Enforce check within** field.

Also ensure that the user ID of the back office user who registers collateral transactions has been configured:

1. In the **Order Approval Users** window with the **Order approval level name** field set, for example, to **Originator** (the level and its name must previously be configured in the **Order Approval Levels** window)
2. In the **Order Approval Groups** window

To register a collateral transaction that is subject to approval by a front office user, open the **Margin Manager**:

1. Load collateral results in the **Margin Calls** section by **Collateral requirements - Collateral manager setup ID** and **Security ID**.
2. Create a collateral transaction as normal, for example, a **Call money** transaction.

Note

Collateral transactions with **Transaction business code** set to **ColBorrowSec** and **ColLendSec** are currently not supported by the approval mechanism.

3. Display the **Originator**, **Approval group**, and **Approver** fields in the **Collateral Movements** section:
 - A. The **Originator** field is set to the current user (if they have been configured in the **Order Approval Users** window).
 - B. Select an **Approval group** setup for the originator. This is set automatically, if there is only one **Approval group** setup configured for the originator and the collateral transaction has not been set by auto-allocation.
4. Save the collateral movement and the **Requested transaction status** field is set to **Entry** level, waiting to be approved by front office users.

As a result, you can find the collateral transaction in the **Asset Manager** in the **Order Outbox** where you can validate it and approve it. After approval, the transaction's status is shown in the **Approval status** field in the **Collateral Movements** section of the **Margin Manager**.

The approval fields are also filled in in the collateral transaction window, for example, the **Call Money Payments > Additional Data** sub-window on the **Approval** tab:

- The **Originator** user ID cannot be changed.
- You can update the **Approval group** setting, if necessary.
- If the transaction must be approved by a front office user, you cannot raise the transaction main status in the **Request** field to **Position** level. Instead, a warning is displayed stating that the transaction must pass compliance validation first.

3.1.2 Distinguish OTC initial margins and OTC variation margins in collateral workflow

As of version 6.4, SimCorp Dimension distinguishes between OTC initial margins and OTC variation margins in the OTC collateral workflow. This enhancement aligns the handling of OTC derivatives margins with that of exchange-traded derivatives margins, such as futures and options.

The enhancement corrects scenarios where you have previously duplicated the variation margin impact in the **Collateral Manager** when you registered an OTC trade with a **Payment amount** in a **Variation Margin Payments** window. In this case, the mark-to-market value of the derivative was included in the exposure calculation of the **Collateral Manager** which would then generate another cash payment. This has now been corrected by setting the **Suggested margin** and **Market value incl. margin** fields to 0 for such variation margin OTC trades. The duplicates have also been corrected in SimCorp Dimension patched versions 6.1 and 6.2.

The enhancement affects an existing check box in the **Transaction Options** window on the **Back Office 3** tab in the **OTC margins** section and splits in two:

- The **Include OTC margins into settlement amount** check box has been renamed to **Include OTC variation margin into settlement amount**.
- A new **Include OTC initial margin into settlement** check box has been added. Initially, this check box receives the same setting as the renamed check box.

To distinguish OTC initial margins and OTC variation margins, adjust the settings on the check boxes in the **Transaction Options** window on the **Back Office 3** tab in the **OTC margins** section. Select the check box and the corresponding OTC margin is included in the settlement amount and on the **Initial Margins** or **Variation Margins** tabs in the **Collateral Manager**.

3.1.3 View the excess margin percentage in Collateral Manager and Margin Manager [6.3.1-IMPL]

As of version 6.4, you can quickly view the excess collateralisation (margin) percentages for collateral pools in **Collateral** dashboards, **Margin Manager**, and **Collateral Manager**.

SimCorp Dimension calculates the excess margin percentage as follows:

First, SimCorp Dimension adds the following three fields together to get the total margin:

- **Market value incl. margin pool currency**
- **Variation margin**
- **Initial margin**

Then, the excess is calculated using the total margin:

$$\text{Total margin} + \text{Collateral value} = \text{Excess}$$

Finally, the excess margin in percentage is calculated by dividing the excess by the total margin:

$$-100 \times \left(\frac{\text{Total margin} + \text{Collateral value}}{\text{Total margin}} \right)$$

The result, which can be a negative value, is displayed in the new **Excess margin percentage** field.

- If the total margin is 0 and the excess value is greater than 0, the excess margin percentage is shown as 999.99%.
- If the total margin is 0 and the excess value is less than 0, the excess margin percentage is shown as -999.99%.
- If both the total margin and the excess value are 0, the excess margin percentage is empty, which means an empty pool.

The excess margin percentage is calculated as part of the margin call calculation process.

You find the **Excess margin percentage** field in the following areas of SimCorp Dimension:

- The **Margin Manager**—In the **Margin Call Tracker** applet in the **Margin Calls** section or in the **Dashboard** applet on the **Collateral** widget.
- The **Collateral Manager**—In the **Total collateral requirements** or **Collateral pool requirements** sections on the **Calculation** tab

3.1.4 Import Collateral Internal Cost data [6.3]

As of version 6.4, you can import data into **Collateral Internal Cost** setups by using Data Format Setups and a base filter. This enables you to automate data updates, for example, of funding cost data for specific securities and instrument segments that is based on market rates.

Previously, you could only enter data manually in the **Collateral Internal Cost** window.

The **Security No.**, **security Ser. No.** (serial number), and **Security name** fields have been added to the **Collateral Internal Cost** window as part of this enhancement.

To add, update, and delete **Collateral Internal Cost** data, create a Data Format Setup as usual and set the **Base Filter** field on the **General Parameters** tab to **BASE_2208**. Recommended fields for this base filter are:

- **Instrument segment**
- **Collateral internal cost**
- **Reference rate**
- **Add rate**

Search fields of the data format setup are **Instrument segment**, **Security ID**, and **Security serial No.** fields.

By default the **Security serial No.** field is listed on the **Constants** tab. If you need the serial number to distinguish imported records, remove this setting and add the serial number on the **External Data** tab.

The **Security No.** and **Security name** fields cannot be used in the base filter.

For more information and instructions about Data Format Setup, see the **Filter Tool Box** user manual.

3.1.5 Added time and date for margin call communication to counterparty

As of version 6.4, you can see the date and time when margin calls have been communicated with a counterparty in the **Margin Call Tracker** applet of the **Margin Manager** and in the **Collateral** widget. This adds transparency to the communication workflow with counterparties.

The date and time reflects the time of communication with MarginSphere after clicking the **Create Margin Call** button:

- The **Send time** field indicates when a collateral message was sent from SimCorp Dimension to MarginSphere.
- The **Receive time** field indicates when a collateral message from MarginSphere was received by SimCorp Dimension.

You can display the **Send time** and the **Receive time** fields:

- In the **Margin Call Tracker** applet in the **Communication** section, which shows date and time for each communication.
- In the **Margin Call Tracker** applet in the **Margin Calls** section, which shows only the time for the earliest send or receive communication. The time is updated once, when earlier data becomes available, and then locked.
- In the **Collateral** widget, which shows date and time for the earliest send or receive communication.

3.1.6 Enhanced the batch job for cleaning up Collateral Manager results

As of version 6.4, you can clean up results in the **Collateral Manager** for a single day or for a given time range. There are two batch tasks available for these clean-up jobs:

- Delete the results from a certain date by using the existing **Collateral Manager - Cleanup Results** batch task.
- Delete all results where you want to clean up results in a given time range by using the new **Collateral Manager - Cleanup Results Period** batch task. You specify the date range in the **From date** and **To date** fields.

You cannot delete collateral results if there is a link to a collateral result transaction. Therefore, you can also specify in either of these batch tasks whether related transactions from the results should be unlinked. Select **Yes** to unlink in the new **Unlink related transactions** field. If you select **No** and there are related transactions, the results with the related transactions will not be deleted. You can see these affected results in the log for the batch job.

Previously, the **Collateral Manager - Cleanup Results** batch task could remove results for a given date, but only one date at a time. When no calculation date was set, then all the results were removed.

3.1.7

[New module] Fund look through - Collateral Manager

| | |
|-------------------------------------|---|
| Client Segment | All clients |
| Target Audience | Operational users for collateral management |
| Subscription based licensing | Included in the Collateral Optimisation subscription package. |
| Module-based Licensing | Fund Administration Manager Collateral Optimisation Collateral - OTC or Collateral - Repo and Lending |

Some asset managers may enable their clients to access a percentage of their proportionate underlying positions held within fund certificates to meet counterparty margin calls. To support such a workflow you can now define:

- The percentage of the fund certificates that can be accessed. This is defined in the **Fund Certificates > Market Conventions** window.
- The eligibility according to collateral rules. This is configured in the **Collateral Rule Definitions** window.

After calculation in the **Collateral Manager**, you can view the decomposed positions on the **Available Positions** tab in the **Margin Manager**.

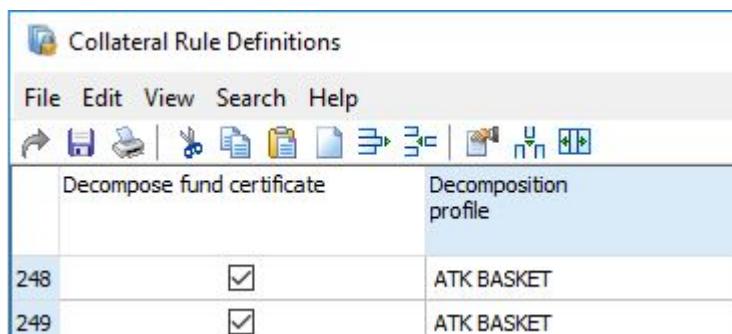
With this module, you can automatically track and manage assets if you have outsourced the management of your cash resources to an internal fund. SimCorp Dimension allows you to monitor the current state and the net value of your assets.

For example, if you have a portfolio that contains market trades handled by a fund manager, these trades could generate a collateral exposure. This will result in a margin call from the external counterparty. If you do not have eligible holdings to meet these margin call requirements, you could use your fund certificate position(s).

To enable you to cover margin calls automatically, you can configure the **Collateral Manager** to converting fund certificate positions into real fund assets (according to your share in the fund).

To configure automatic conversion of fund certificate positions into real fund assets, follow these steps:

1. Open the **Portfolios** window. Create the following portfolios to track your assets:
 - Asset portfolio - contains your assets (such as bonds and equities).
 - Liability portfolio - contains fund certificates. You should create a liability portfolio for each fund certificate.
2. Open the **Market Conventions - Fund Certificates** sub-window. Enter a percentage in the **Limit delivery of fund assets as collateral by %** field. This amount determines the percentage of the fund assets that can be delivered as collateral.
3. To create a decomposition profile, open the **Decomposition Profiles** window. Enter a name for the decomposition profile and select **Fund** in the **Decomposition type** field.
4. To configure a deliverable rule, which determines the fund certificates that are available for delivery, open the **Collateral Rule Definitions** window:



The screenshot shows a software interface titled "Collateral Rule Definitions". The window has a menu bar with File, Edit, View, Search, and Help. Below the menu is a toolbar with various icons. The main area is a table with three columns: "Decompose fund certificate", "Decomposition profile", and "Collateral rule type". Row 1 (highlighted in blue) contains "248" in the first column, a checked checkbox in the second, and "ATK BASKET" in the third. Row 2 (highlighted in blue) contains "249" in the first column, a checked checkbox in the second, and "ATK BASKET" in the third.

| Decompose fund certificate | Decomposition profile | Collateral rule type |
|----------------------------|-------------------------------------|----------------------|
| 248 | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | ATK BASKET |
| 249 | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | ATK BASKET |

- Select the **Decompose fund certificate** check box.
- Select your profile in the **Decomposition profile** field.
- Select a **Holding segment** that includes your fund certificates.
- Enter **Deliverable collateral** in the **Collateral rule type** field.
5. To configure an eligibility rule, which determines the securities that are available for delivery, add a second row in the **Collateral Rule Definitions** window:
 - Select an **Instrument segment** that includes the securities that are available for delivery.
 - Enter **Eligible collateral** in the **Collateral rule type** field.
6. Open the **Collateral Rule Groups** window and select your rule in the **Collateral rule** field.
7. Open the **Collateral Manager** and select a setup.

8. Press the **Execute calculation** button to view your decomposed fund assets.

You can view details on the **Calculation log** sub-tab. On this tab you can see an explanation of the decomposition or view configuration errors.

You can view assets available for allocation on the **Available Positions** sub-tab. If a security is decomposed from a fund certificate, you can see the ID of the certificate in the **Decomposed fund certificate** field.

3.1.8 Enhanced rounding rules

| | |
|--|---|
| Client segment | Clients managing margin calls in house |
| Target audience | Users configuring agreement static |
| Subscription based licensing | Collateral Manager |
| Sales Modules and sales module dependencies | Collateral - OTC Collateral - Repo and Lending |

Regulatory CSA requires rounding to be in favour of the counterparty being collateralized.

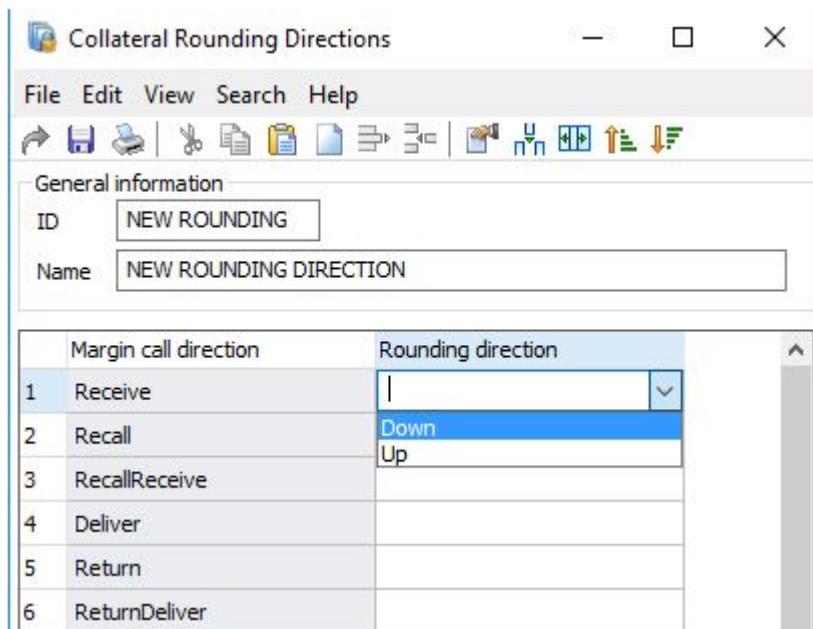
This enhancement allows you to define the rounding direction associated with each margin call action, thereby enabling you to meet the requirements for Regulatory CSA, in addition to providing flexibility for other rounding types.

With this major enhancement, you can configure rounding directions for collateral according to the margin call direction. This allows you to ensure that the receiver's exposure is fully covered by the haircut value of the collateral.

Previously, you could only configure the rounding direction of the suggested margin. You can now configure rounding directions for several margin call directions in a new **Collateral Rounding Directions** window. Furthermore, the **Strict rounding** check box has been replaced by a new **Rounding direction** field.

To assign rounding directions according to margin call direction, follow these steps:

1. Open the **Collateral Rounding Directions** window. Enter a name for the rounding rule in the **ID** and **Name** fields.



2. Select one or more margin call actions in the **Margin call direction** field.
 3. Select a rounding direction in the **Rounding direction** field.
 4. Select your rounding setup in the **Rounding directions** field. The field is available:
 - On the **Collateral Requirement** tab in the **Collateral Pools** window.
 - On the **Margin call conditions** tab in the **Collateral Manager**.

To apply the rounding before the minimum transfer amount is determined, select the **Rounding before MTA** check box.
 5. To only apply the minimum transfer amount on receive or deliver transactions, select the **Apply MTA and rounding on deliver/receive amount only** check box in the **Collateral Manager > Settings > Collateral Calculations** window.
- This will affect the calculations for the receive/deliver margin call types you have selected in the **Collateral rounding direction** field.

Note

You need a conversion job to apply new rounding direction types to existing transactions. For backward compatibility, a new default rule is created and applied to existing rules, which mirrors the pre-existing transactions.

3.1.9 Collateral blocking workflow

| | |
|-------------------------------------|---|
| Client segment | Clients managing margin calls in house |
| Target audience | Portfolio Managers, Treasury Desks |
| Subscription based licensing | Collateral Manager, Foundations |
| Sales module dependencies | Collateral - OTC Collateral - Repo and Lending Blocking (securities and holdings) |

Portfolio managers may wish to withhold positions from being pledged by operations teams as collateral to meet margin calls. This workflow is supported with this enhancement.

From version 6.3, a new blocking/expire blocking workflow was made available in **Asset Manager**, with the availability set in the **Blocking Types** window. For more information, see Front office approval in the *Release Notes* for version 6.3.

As of version 6.4, the name of the check box in the **Additional settings** section in the **Blocking Types** window has been renamed from **Used in Asset Manager** to **Block front office position**.

Use calculation service to create blocking transactions

As of version 6.4, you can use a service to create blocking transactions.

When you right-click and select **Blocking** in **Asset Manager**, SimCorp Dimension creates a reallocation blocking transaction. If you use the calculation service to generate the transaction, you will be able to work in **Asset Manager** while the transaction is being created.

To configure a calculation service, follow these steps:

1. Open the **Calculation Service Configuration** window
2. Enter a name for the setup in the **ID/Name** fields.
3. Select **Create administrative transactions** in the **Job** field.
4. Select **Asset Manager message** (in a second row) in the **Job** field.

3.1.10 MTA in different currency to collateral pool currency

| | |
|-------------------------------------|--|
| Client segment | Clients managing margin calls in house |
| Target audience | Users configuring agreement static |
| Subscription based licensing | Collateral Manager |

| | |
|--|---|
| Sales Modules and sales module dependencies | Collateral - OTC Collateral - Repo and Lending |
|--|---|

For some CSA agreements, the minimum transfer amount is designated in a different currency to the CSA agreement currency.

The minimum transfer amount (MTA) on the collateral pool defines the minimum amount that must be transferred on a given margin call. Previously, the MTA was calculated in the same currency as the pool currency. You can now enter a different currency and calculate the FX rate.

It is now mandatory to enter a currency in the new **Currency** field. The field is available:

- On the **Collateral Requirement** tab in the **Collateral Pools** and **Templates - Collateral Pools** windows.
- On the **Margin Call Conditions** tab in the **Collateral Manager**.

You can view the currency used for margin call calculations in the new **MTA currency cross** and **MTA FX rate** fields. These fields are available:

- On the **Calculation** and **Results** tabs in the **Collateral Manager**
- In the **Margin Call Tracker** applet in the **Margin Manager**.
- In the **Import Counterparties' Collateral Figures** window.

3.1.11 View/send comments to MarginSphere from Margin Manager [6.1-IMPL][6.2-IMPL][6.3-IMPL]

As of version 6.4, you can receive comments from MarginSphere when they dispute, partially dispute, or cancel a margin call. You can view the comments in the new **Cancel comment** field in the **Communication** section on the **Margin Call Tracker** applet in the **Margin Manager**.

Furthermore, you can send a standard rejection code and provide additional comments when you send:

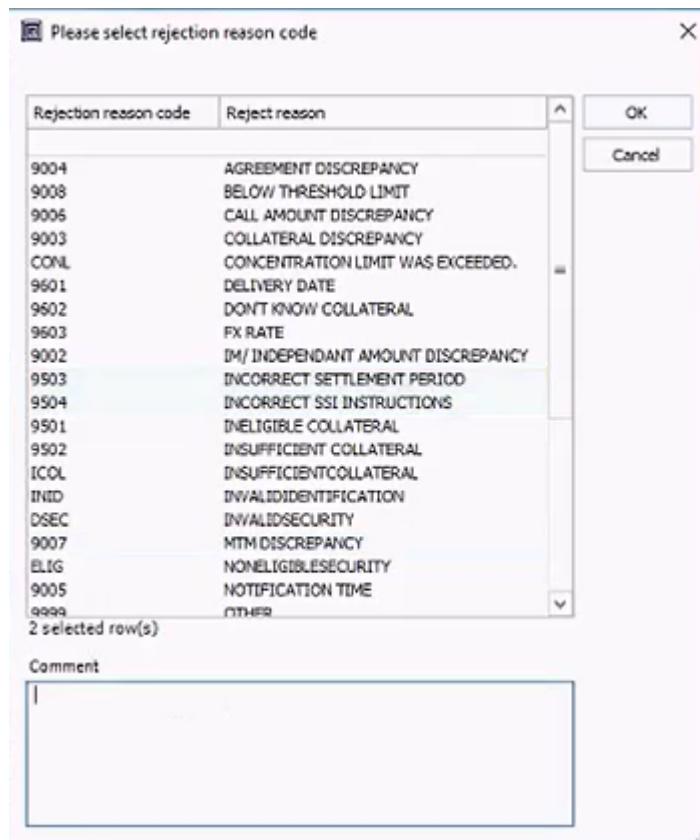
- A reject pledge message (pledge flow)
- A dispute, partial dispute, or cancel margin call message (margin call flow)

To send a reject comment, follow these steps:

1. Open the **Margin Call Tracker**.
2. Select an incoming pledge message from Margin Sphere.

| Pool - Communication media | Agreement | Currency | Margin call action | Collateral requirements - Margin call action | Suggested margin | Counterparties' suggested margin |
|----------------------------|------------|----------|--------------------|--|------------------|----------------------------------|
| Margin Sphere | MMV CP1 IM | EUR | Return | Return | -95.000,00 | |
| Margin Sphere | MMV CP1 VM | EUR | Receive | Receive | 350.000,00 | |

3. Select one of the following margin call actions:
 - Dispute Margin Call
 - Partial Dispute Margin Call
 - Cancel Margin Call
 - Reject Pledge Message
4. Select a rejection reason code and enter a comment in the **Comment** field in the **Please select rejection reason code** dialog box.



5. Click **OK** to send the message.

3.1.12 Add a party group to a collateral rule group

As of version 6.4, you can add a party group when you assign a rule in the **Collateral Rule Groups** window. This allows you to create a single rule and make it applicable for several counterparties. Previously, you had to assign a collateral rule for each counterparty.

To configure a collateral rule for a party group, follow these steps:

1. Open the **Collateral Rule Groups** window.
2. Select the party group in the **Party Group** field. You can only select either a **Counterparty** or a **Party Group** for each record.

3. Ensure that your collateral pool is assigned to both the counterparty and the party group.

3.1.13 Increase existing position for securities lending trades

You can now increase an existing securities lending position, instead of having two different securities lending trades. Previously, if you created a securities lending trade, and had a setup in the **Maximal Nominal Amounts** window that included your security, the position was split if the amount in the **Split trade** field was exceeded.

To allow SimCorp Dimension to increase an existing position, select the new **Increase existing position for collateral lending** check box, in the **Transaction Options > Collateral** window. If you select this check box, SimCorp Dimension will increase one of the positions created during the split, instead of creating a new position if the maximum trade volume is exceeded.

3.1.14 Deliver/recall collateral that exceeds maximum trade volume

For collateral lending transactions in the **Securities Lending** window, you can now allocate collateral according to the amount in the **Split trade** field when you create transactions in the following windows:

- **Collateral Manager** (both when you split trades manually and when you use auto-allocation or auto-substitution)
- **Margin Manager**
- **Collateral Transactions Upload**

The trade will be split according to the amount entered in the **Split trade** field in the **Maximal Nominal Amounts** window. Previously, this only applied to transactions entered in the **Dealer Securities Lending** window.

There are some limitations when you use auto-allocation or auto-substitution. If you add segments in the **Maximal Nominal Amounts** window, SimCorp Dimension will only search for information concerning holding fields. This is because the auto allocation engine cannot search for transaction data. There are limitations when you use of the following:

- Segments
- **Counterparty** field
- **Broker** field

The functionality is fully implemented for the **Party free codes** fields in the transaction segment.

3.1.15 Formulas in Margin Call Tracker

| | |
|--|---|
| Client segment | Clients managing margin calls in house |
| Target audience | Collateral operations users |
| Subscription based licensing | Collateral Manager |
| Sales Modules and sales module dependencies | Margin Manager Collateral - OTC Collateral - Repo and Lending |

Collateral operations users need to easily identify relative and absolute discrepancies in margin calls between **Collateral Manager** calculations and imported counterparty values.

In the **Margin Manager**, the **Margin Calls** section in the **Margin Call Tracker** applet has been enhanced with the ability to add mathematical and logical formulas to individual margin calls to facilitate quick comparisons of key margin call data.

3.2 Corporate Actions

3.2.1 Improved corporate action information for Corporate Actions Manager and Corporate Action Elections [6.1-IMPL] [6.2-IMPL] [6.3-IMPL] [6.3.1-IMPL]

Enhancements were made to ensure valid election choices and improve transparency in the **Corporate Actions Manager** and the **Corporate Action Elections** window.

Ensure that only relevant election options are available for elections

Note

This functionality applies only when you use the **Corporate Actions Data Manager** for data scrubbing and the import of golden records into the **Corporate Action Manager**.

When scrubbing the incoming notifications from custodians and vendors, the golden record will include all available election options, even if all election options might not be available for all positions. To ensure that only valid election options are electable in the **Corporate Actions Manager** and the **Corporate Action Elections** window, SimCorp Dimension will cross-check the options from the golden record with the options in the silver records; options that are not included in the silver record will be closed for input for those positions. When no custodian message is received, all options are open for that position.

To activate this functionality, go to the **Interface Options** window. On the **Corporate Action Elections** tab, go to the **Elections** section, and select the new **Close fields for irrelevant golden record options for a holding on each row** check box.

Specify a portfolio manager as an election decision maker

Those working with corporate action elections need to know which portfolio manager is the decision maker for elections. Now, when you view the election information in either the **Corporate Actions Manager** or the **Corporate Action Elections** window, you can see which model portfolio manager is the decision maker for that election.

To activate this functionality, go the **Model Portfolios** window > **Model Portfolio Managers** sub-window and select the new **Corporate action manager** check box for the appropriate manager. Only one manager per model portfolio can be selected as a corporate action manager.

3.2.2 Support for QCAS code from SWIFT SR 2017 for corporate actions [6.0-IMPL] [6.1-IMPL] [6.2-IMPL] [6.3-IMPL][6.3.1-IMPL]

In SWIFT SR 2017, a new code, QCAS, was added to qualifier OPTF in field 22F in sequence E of MT 564. Now, when the **Corporate Actions Manager** receives a SWIFT MT564 message that contains QCAS, QCAS is displayed as **Instruct Cash Amount** in the **Option features indicator** field on the **Options** sub-tab.

You can also see this information in the **Corporate Action Elections** window after static data has been generated in the **Corporate Actions Manager**.

3.2.3 Automatic calculation of amount of rights to be exercised [6.1-IMPL] [6.2-IMPL][6.3-IMPL]

As of version 6.4, the **Corporate Actions Manager** automatically calculates the number of rights to be exercised and the number of surplus rights to be retained. The remaining rights are moved to the **Unused** field. This applies to rights issue and call on rights corporate action events. The number of rights that will be exercised is calculated according to the ratio in the SWIFT message.

You can see the distribution of the rights in the following fields on the **Elections** tab in the **Corporate Actions Manager** and in the **Corporate Action Elections** window:

- **Exercised:** The number of exercised rights.
- **Used:** The sum of the nominal allocated to different options for the event.
- **Unused:** The number of rights not allocated to any election decision.

To initiate calculations, select **Apply Option To All Rows** or **Apply Option To Marked Rows** from the right-click menu, or click the **Apply Default Option** button. Figures will not be recalculated if you enter changes manually.

Calculation example

If you have a nominal of 50,000 with a ratio of 7 to 3, SimCorp Dimension will calculate the number of exercised rights as follows:

$$50,000 / 7 = 7,142.857$$

$$7,142 \times 7 = 49,994$$

The difference is $50,000 - 49,994 = 6$ (which appears in the **Unused** field).

The resulting number of securities: $7,142 \times 3 = 21,426$.

3.2.4 Import SWIFT MT565 messages to Corporate Actions Manager and Corporate Action Elections [6.3-IMPL]

You can now import a SWIFT MT565 message into the **Corporate Actions Manager**. You can view information from the message on the **Messages** tab and on the following sub-tabs:

- Options
- Linkages
- Account Information
- Raw Message
- Incoming Elections

The new **Incoming Elections** tab shows details from the incoming SWIFT MT565 message including the balance and the option code.

Connecting SWIFT MT565 messages with SWIFT MT564 messages

The SWIFT MT565 message requires a SWIFT MT564 message already in SimCorp Dimension. On the **Incoming Elections** tab, you can view the internal event reference number for the MT564 message in the **Corporate action notification reference** field for the MT565 message.

Updating election information from the SWIFT MT565 message

From the **Corporate Actions Manager**, you can update the election information from the SWIFT MT565 message in the **Corporate Actions Elections** window, as well as on the **Elections** tab of the **Corporate Actions Manager**.

To perform an update of the elections based on MT565, you must configure your installation as follows:

- Specify which message queue service to use when updating the options. On the **Corporate Actions Manager > Settings tab > Misc.** sub-tab, enter the name in the new **Message queue** field.
- Create a **Filter Definition - Import** setup for corporate action election imports that will be used for updating the necessary election option based on MT565 and MT564.
- Specify the name of the filter to be used in the **Filter definition - Import** field in the row with the selected MT565 message connected to MT564; the field is on the **Messages tab** in the **Corporate Actions Manager**.
- Ensure that the selected MT565 message is connected to the relevant MT564 message. The custody account in the MT565 (for example, :97A::SAFE//121345) must reflect an external account defined in SimCorp Dimension. The MT565 message contains the reference ID of the corporate action event from the MT564 (for example, :20C::CORP//).

To update election information on an incoming SWIFT MT565 message, right-click on the message in the grid on the **Messages** tab and select the new menu item **Update Event with Elections**. This menu item is only available for MT565 messages, and you can only update one message at a time.

Filter definition imports retrieve the quantity from the MT565 message to be added to the corporate action elections.

You can see the status of the options update in the **General processing status** field in the grid of the **Messages** tab. The following table lists the different statuses.

| Message status | Explanation |
|-------------------------------------|--|
| No action | Not yet processed. |
| Elections updated | The MT565 message parsed correctly and the elections from MT565 updated correctly. The updated election value is visible in rows with SWIFT messages (MT564 and MT565) on the Elections tab in the Corporate Actions Manager and in the Corporate Actions Elections window. |
| Error in updating elections | For more information about the error, check the Error Message and Transfer to MQ error message fields on the Messages tab of the Corporate Actions Manager . |
| Transferred to message queue | The parsed data of the MT565, by means of the Filter Definition - Import during the election update, is being processed in the messages queue. |

| Message status | Explanation |
|----------------------------|---|
| Transferred to file | A .txt file has been generated for the selected row with the SWIFT MT565 message. |

3.2.5 Portfolio segment for taxable corporate actions

As of version 6.4, you can add a portfolio segment in the **Taxation** section of the **Corporate Actions** window. This segment allows you to define the taxable transactions that are linked to the portfolio. For example, transactions can be taxable when they belong to specific tax jurisdictions or account types. Previously, you could only select whether the entire corporate action event was taxable.

If you add a portfolio segment to the static data for your corporate action event, only transactions included in the portfolio segment are registered as taxable.

To add a portfolio segment for taxable corporate actions, follow these steps:

1. Open the **Corporate Actions** window.
2. Select the **Taxable** check box.
3. Enter a segment in the **Portfolio segment** field.

If you do not add a portfolio segment, and you select the **Taxable** check box, all transactions will become taxable. This is based on the setting in the **Tax market value** field in the **Financial Accounting Methods** window.

Transactions in a portfolio segment are only taxable if you have selected this in the **Tax market value** field in the **Financial Accounting Methods** window.

3.2.6 Use batch job to update election information

As of version 6.4, you can use a batch job to automatically update election information based on incoming corporate action events.

The batch job enables you to update election options for several holdings at the same time based on MT565 messages. Previously, you had to right click on each holding and select the **Update Event With Election** menu item.

To configure a batch job:

1. Open the **Batch Jobs** window and enter a name in the **ID/Name** field.
2. Select **Corporate Actions Manager - Update Event With Elections** in the **Batch task** field.

3. Select a setup from the **Corporate Action Manager** in the **Corporate action manager setup** field.
4. View the updated election information on the **Elections** tab in the **Corporate Action Manager** and in the **Corporate Action Elections** window.

3.3 Fund events

3.3.1 Update multiple fund event calendar dates at once

As of version 6.4, you can update multiple fund event calendar dates at once. This makes the maintenance of event calendars much easier. Previously, each event in the **Edit Fund Calendar** window required an update of its own, either manually or by using an **Update calendar** event.

This enhancement also changes the default behaviour of the **Update calendar** event. As of version 6.4, the event only updates the fund in question. Previously, the event updated all entities which used the same calculation definition.

To configure the update of multiple fund event calendar dates at once, create an **Extended Fund Events** setup of type **Update calendar** as normal, but leave the **Update extended event** field empty.

To update multiple calendar dates at once, execute an **Extended Fund Events** setup, either as part of your fund STP workflow, by using a batch job, or manually by executing a setup in the **Update Fund Business Calendar**.

3.3.2 Patched from 19.01

3.3.2.1 Added reference date to fund Service Cost Charge Setups [6.3] [6.31] [6.4] [6.41]

As of version 19.01, the **Base date** field in the **Service Cost Charge Setups** window accepts not just fixed dates, but also reference dates.

If you use a reference date, the date is not compared to today, but to the event date in the **Fund Administration Manager**.

Note

Ensure that you have a charge date before the **From date** of the **Fund Service Cost Setup** window.

3.4 General Reconciliation

3.4.1 Distribute bulk cash across several securities

As of version 6.4, you can distribute bulk cash across several securities during payment reconciliation in **Reconciliation Manager**.

Starting with a total **Bank Payment** amount, you distribute part of the sum across securities with different payment types, such as principal, interest, and different costs. SimCorp Dimension then breaks down the distribution amounts pro rata to the bank accounts of different positions of the securities in different portfolios.

To enable the cash distribution to cost payments:

- Ensure that the appropriate costs have been set up as normal in the **Costs/Tax Definitions** window. Then map the costs in **Map Costs to Windows** window by setting the **Window** field to **General Cost** so they appear in the **Reconciliation Manager** applet.
- Ensure that the external data has been configured to distinguish matching groups by paying agents:
 - The **General Reconciliation** setup includes the **Paying agent** field
 - The **General Reconciliation Lines** setup includes a row which links to a **General Reconciliation Rules** setup where:
 - The **Type** field is set to **Identification rule**.
 - In the **Fields** section, a row entry has the **Reconciliation field** set to **Paying agent** and the **Field type** set to **Identification field**.

Note

To distribute bulk cash, you must be authorised to access the **Allocate Exceptions** icon and applet.

To distribute bulk cash in **Reconciliation Manager**:

1. Load a payment reconciliation in the **Results Monitor** applet with cash to distribute, that is, where the **Reconciliation type** field is set to **Payment**.
2. You can distribute cash for all non-matching or deviating records with the same **Matching index** value: Group the results in the **Results Monitor** by **Matching index** and select one of the **Matching index** rows.
3. Or you can distribute cash for manually selected records: Select records where:
 - The **Reconciliation status** field is set to **No match or Deviation**.
 - The **Matching index** value and the **Reconciliation date** are the same.

4. Click the **Allocate Exceptions** icon on the **Results Monitor** ribbon. The **Allocate Exceptions** applet opens:
 - The top row shows distributed amounts:
 - The **Bank Payment** field shows the total amount to be distributed as retrieved from the external file.
 - The **Balance** field shows the outstanding amount that is left to be distributed.
 - The **Covered** field shows the amount that is covered by internal records.
 - The top left corner of the applet shows static data:
 - The **Acc. framework** setting and the **Finally booked** status as configured in the **General Reconciliation Lines** setup.
 - The **Date** and the **Paying agent** ID as retrieved from the external file.
 - The top grid shows all eligible securities, that is, securities available on the relevant date where the **Functions > Paying Agent** sub-window contains the same agent ID as the external file.
 - The grid below shows the positions in all eligible portfolios with **Percentage**, **Coupon**, and **Redemption** amounts per security distributed pro rata according to the **Balance nominal number** amounts.
 - Clearing the **Results Monitor** applet or changing the reconciliation setup in the **Setup** applet clears the **Allocate Exceptions** applet. You can also clear the applet by clicking the **Clear** icon on the **Allocate Exceptions** ribbon or by pressing CTRL+R in the applet.
5. In the top grid, enter the desired distribution per **Security ID** as absolute amounts in the **Coupon**, **Redemption**, and cost fields.
6. In the bottom grid, you can fine-tune the distribution which updates the top grid and the **Balance** field amount accordingly, for example:
 - Enter the desired distribution per **Portfolio** ID as percentage amounts in the **Percentage** field. Ensure that the shown percentage per security adds up to 100.
 - Modify any absolute amount in a field.
7. To create cash transactions as configured, click the **Create Transactions** icon on the **Allocate Exceptions** ribbon.

3.4.2 Suspend incoming payments during reconciliation

As of version 6.4, you can suspend an incoming payment during the reconciliation in the **Reconciliation Manager**. Use this when the payment cannot be recognised or you need further details before you can create a transaction from it. By suspending the payment, you can park the money in a suspense account which is typically linked to a regular bank account. This

enhances the **Reconciliation Manager** with the suspense account payment functionality that was previously only available in the **PAYMENT RECONCILIATION** module.

This functionality uses the message queue service to create payment transactions which fill the suspense account.

To enable suspense accounts in **Reconciliation Manager**, verify that the corresponding options have been configured: Open the **Transactions Options** window on the **Pmt. Reconcil.** tab and ensure that the **Message queue used for suspense messages** and the **Data Format Setup used for suspense payment messages** fields contain appropriate setups.

You can suspend payments for reconciliation results of external records in the **Results Monitor** applet of the **Reconciliation Manager** where:

- **Reconciliation status** is set to **No match**
- **Open amount SC (PayRec)** is filled
- **Bank account (PayRec)** is filled

To suspend a payment:

1. Select an eligible reconciliation result and click **Suspense Payments** on the **Results Monitor** ribbon in the **Reconciliation Payments** group. The **Suspense Payments** dialog box is displayed:
 - A. The result's open amount is displayed in the **External amount** field.
 - B. The **Payment** grid includes:
 - The amount to be suspended in the **Open amount SC (PayRec)** field
 - The payment's currency in the **Currency** field
 - The actual account ID in the **Real bank account** field
 - C. The **Trans. code** field is set depending on the sign of the payment:
 - Positive amounts are set to **Withdraw**.
 - Negative amounts are set to **Deposit**.
2. Select a specific **Bank account** ID which maps to the actual bank account.
3. Optionally, select a **Classification** ID for information about the suspended payment. This requires that you have previously configured classifications (). If you create several payments for the same reconciliation result, they must all have the same **Classification** value.
4. To add payments to additional bank accounts, right-click in the **Bank account** field, select **Insert Row**, and select one or more eligible **Bank account** IDs. The required number of rows are added to the grid. Repeat the previous steps to fill in the additional rows.

5. Click **OK** to close the dialog box. An error message notifies you if the sum of all **Open amount SC (PayRec)** amounts does not equal the **External amount**.
6. The **Results Monitor** applet displays the result with the suspended payment:
 - A. The **Suspense Payments** check box is selected.
 - B. The **Pending Change** check box is selected until you save the suspended payment.
 - C. The **Classification - ID**, if selected, is shown. You can edit the value if the suspended payment has not been saved.
 - D. The **Suspense Payments** icon is greyed out. To modify the suspended payment, use the **Undo** and **Redo** options.
7. To save the suspended payment and proceed, click the **Save Results** icon.

As a result, SimCorp Dimension adds one new message per payment transaction to the message queue which in turn creates the payment transaction for the suspended payment. You can find the messages in the **View Message Queue** window and the transactions in the **View Transactions** window.

3.4.3 Redistribute remaining force-close amounts across selected transactions

As of version 6.4, you can redistribute remaining amounts across adjustments of selected transactions in **Reconciliation Manager** when force-closing payments. This gives you more flexibility when force-closing payments and removes the need for workarounds. Previously, a forced close created adjustments with no possibility of changing the adjustment amount.

As before, updating the **Reconcile amount** value prompts SimCorp Dimension to recalculate the total **Remaining amount** value and the values in the **Reconcile amount** and **Redistributed remaining amount** fields.

To group and classify the distribution of the remaining amount, create a setup in the **General Reconciliation Classifications** window where **Type** is set to **Adjustment**. The active classifications of such setups are available during the force-close workflow.

To redistribute remaining amounts across adjustments of selected transactions during a force-close workflow:

1. In the **Force Close** dialog box, select **Redistribute remaining amount across accounts**, which is available when there are several transactions across which an amount can be distributed. The **Remaining amount**

column opens.

2. The grid shows:
 - A. The total transaction amount in the **Open amount** field
 - B. The amount that can be reconciled in the **Reconcile amount** field
 - C. The adjustment amount in the **Redistributed remaining amount** field—initially, this amount is distributed according to the setting in the **Transaction Options** window on the **Pmt. Reconcil.** tab in the **Amounts difference distribution method** field. For example, **Pro rata**; rounding error offsets are included in the adjustment amount of the transaction with the largest absolute open amount.
3. Optionally, select an appropriate **Classification** setup. Only classifications where **Type** is set to **Adjustment** are eligible.
4. Redistribute the remaining amount across transactions by changing the value in a **Redistributed remaining amount** field. The **Reconcile amount** value for the edited transaction is then recalculated to correspond to the **Open amount** value, so it equals the sum of reconcile amounts and remaining amounts. The sum of all **Redistributed remaining amount** values must equal the total **Remaining amount** value.
5. Click **OK**.

As a result, the force-close completes by distributing the amounts with **Reconciliation status** set to **Manual match**.

You can find the distributed amounts in the **Payment Reconciliation - Redemptions** sub-window in the **Reconciliation payments** section with **Pmt. type** set to **Adjustment**.

3.4.4 Funnel reconciliation excludes previous ID matches

As of version 6.4, you can enable a reconciliation funnel which tries to match securities by a sequence of identification fields and excludes securities once they can be matched exactly. This can improve matching for records with unpredictable data, as with security matching, and it avoids issues with double matches.

The enhancement applies for general reconciliation of internal against external data and internal against internal data. It does not work when reconciling data from two external sources or for **Reconciliation line** setups where **Reconciliation type** is set to **Imported data**.

For example, consider a security which has an ISIN as its primary ID and a CUSIP as an additional ID. If that security can be matched by ISIN to a record in a custodian's file, then the security is excluded from further matching attempts by rules with the same **Reconciliation type** setting. Only previously unmatched securities in the funnel go on to matching by CUSIP.

This enhancement streamlines matching in the reconciliation process: It removes duplicate entries in the **Reconciliation Manager** and in the **General Reconciliation Results** window where the example security would appear once as an **Automatic match** or **Deviation** (when matched by ISIN) and again as **No match** (when matched by CUSIP). It also increases transparency about the securities that are still eligible for matching.

To enable funnel reconciliation to exclude previous exact matches by ID:

1. Open the **General Reconciliation > Settings** dialog box and select the **Matches not eligible for subsequent matching** check box. This opens the **Priority** column for internal data and makes that field mandatory. (This means that you cannot click the **Import Internal Data** button or the **Execute** button until after you fill in the **Priority** field.) Click **OK** to close the dialog box.
2. Fill in the **Priority** fields for all rows in the **Data** grid in the **Internal data** section of the **General Reconciliation** window for input: Enter **1** for the **Reconciliation line** setup for which matching will be attempted first, then enter **2** and further consecutive numbers for the lines which will be attempted next.

To exclude previous exact matches, execute the **General Reconciliation** as usual.

As a result, the **Reconciliation Manager** and the **General Reconciliation Results** window list every matched security only once and exclude further matching attempts by lines with the same **Reconciliation type** setting which otherwise could lead to duplicate result lines.

3.4.5 Reconciliation Manager avoids duplicate matching index values for manual matches

As of version 6.4, **Reconciliation Manager** avoids duplicate **Matching index** values when manually matching results that have been generated by Portfolio STP or Fund STP from event setups which have more than one portfolio associated with it. Previously, manually matching or matching older breaks in the results of such STP events created duplicate **Matching index** values which was confusing and led to faulty displays in dashboards.

3.4.6 Reconciliation can proceed when external file is missing

As of version 6.4, general reconciliation no longer fails if the file containing external data is missing. Previously, reconciliation could be configured to proceed if the file was empty, but would always fail if it was missing.

While general reconciliation usually requires an external file, a missing file no longer makes a re-execution or an unattended batch job fail. This enhancement enables you to make the reconciliation process more resilient in scenarios where missing files are acceptable.

This enhancement also works if the **Reference file** assigned in the **External**

data section is configured with the **Opening mode** field set to **Read only/Scan for files**.

To set up general reconciliation to accept a missing external file, ensure that the **Accept empty data** check box is selected in the **General Reconciliation > Settings** dialog box.

As a result, executing general reconciliation no longer fails if the external file is missing. It simply passes without any matched or deviating records.

3.4.7 Use sub-layouts in the Results Monitor applet of Reconciliation Manager

As of version 6.4, you can create multiple views, referred to as **Sub Layouts**, and access them from the **Results Monitor** ribbon. Ribbon functions enable you to swap **Sub Layouts** without having to reload any layouts. **Sub Layouts** provide a specific view of the currently loaded layout, and enable you to load different views more quickly rather than creating and loading a new layout. (This is the same functionality that has been available in SimCorp Dimension Asset Manager since version 6.1.)

Every **Sub Layout** can be customized and saved. You can use the **Results Monitor** applet with multiple views to see new fields or different sorting or grouping.

To manage sub layouts, use the **Sub Layouts** group in the **Results Monitor** applet:

1. To create a new **Sub Layout**:
 - A. Click the **New** button to display the **Create new view** window.
 - B. Enter a name for the new **Sub Layout** and click **OK**.
 - C. Arrange the view as required and click **Save** in the **Sub Layouts** ribbon section. If the current layout has the **Always ask** option enabled, you must also save the layout, or the **Sub Layout** will be lost.
2. To load a different **Sub Layout**, click on the drop-down list in the **Sub Layouts** group and select a layout from the displayed list.
3. To delete a **Sub Layout**, load the layout that you want to delete, click the **Delete** button in the **Sub Layouts** group, and click **OK** to confirm deletion.

For more information, see the eLearning lesson: Using sub-layouts.

3.5 Portfolio Calculation

3.5.1 Enabled four eyes approval for static data and price changes in portfolio calculations

As of version 6.4, you can configure SimCorp Dimension to check if there

are securities with unapproved static data changes, or unapproved price changes, in the portfolio calculation holdings.

The four eyes approval check is available for:

- Security static data
- Today's prices in the database related to the Security IDs

This enhancement improves the support for the Four Eyes Principle functionality in SimCorp Dimension.

For more information about the Four Eyes Principle, see the ***Audit Trail and Four Eyes Principle*** user manual.

Before you set up four eyes approval for static data and price changes in portfolio calculations, ensure that your SimCorp Dimension installation is enabled for four eyes approval. To check, open the **Show System Configuration** window > **Audit/Four Eyes/Archiving** tab and ensure that the **Enable four eyes** check box is selected.

Enable four eyes approval in portfolio calculations

When you enable the four eyes approval for changes to the static data or prices in portfolio calculations, SimCorp Dimension monitors if there are pending four eyes approval of the security static data or prices for portfolio calculation holdings.

To enable:

1. Open the **Portfolio Calculation** window and select a setup.
2. Select **Options > Settings**.
3. In the **Settings** sub-window, select the **Pending four eyes approval** check box.
4. Click **Close** and then save the portfolio calculation setup.

View pending four eyes approvals in portfolio calculation list

If there are pending four eyes approvals in the portfolio calculation holding, the portfolio calculation error log contains an entry with **Warning** as the error level and **Pending four eyes approval** as the error category.

You can use the error screening functionality in SimCorp Dimension to change a **Warning** into an **Error**.

To see whether there are pending four eyes approvals:

1. Open the **Portfolio Calculation** window and select a setup.
2. Select **Functions > List Calculation**.

3. In the **Portfolio Calculation List** sub-window, see whether there are pending four eyes approvals in the **Pending four eyes approval** check box.

The following image shows an example where some of the holdings have pending four eyes approvals.

| | Calculation type | Pending four eyes approval | Portfolio | Security ID | Security ID component | Comp. no. | Purpose | To date |
|----|------------------|-------------------------------------|-----------|----------------|-----------------------|-----------|---------|------------|
| 27 | Period | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | SRJ DIV | SRJ EQU | | 0 | | 01-05-2016 |
| 28 | Balance | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | SRJ EOP | SRJ EQUITY | | 0 | | 01-01-2016 |
| 29 | Period | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | SRJ EOP | SRJ EQUITY | | 0 | | 01-03-2016 |
| 30 | Period | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | SRJ EOP | SRJ EQUITY | | 0 | | 01-05-2016 |
| 31 | Balance | <input type="checkbox"/> | SRJ TRS 1 | SRJ TRS | | 0 | | 01-01-2016 |
| 32 | Balance | <input type="checkbox"/> | SRJ TRS 1 | SRJ TRS | | 0 | | 01-01-2016 |
| 33 | Period | <input type="checkbox"/> | SRJ TRS 1 | SRJ TRS | | 0 | | 01-03-2016 |
| 34 | Period | <input type="checkbox"/> | SRJ TRS 1 | SRJ TRS | | 0 | | 01-03-2016 |
| 35 | Period | <input type="checkbox"/> | SRJ TRS 1 | SRJ TRS | | 0 | | 01-05-2016 |
| 36 | Period | <input type="checkbox"/> | SRJ TRS 1 | SRJ TRS | | 0 | | 01-05-2016 |
| 37 | Balance | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | SRJ TRS 1 | SRJ TRS BASKET | | 0 | | 01-01-2016 |
| 38 | Balance | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | SRJ TRS 1 | SRJ TRS BASKET | | 0 | | 01-01-2016 |
| 39 | Balance | <input type="checkbox"/> | SRJ TRS 1 | SRJ TRS BASKET | NKK EQ4 PFC | 1 | | 01-01-2016 |
| 40 | Balance | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | SRJ TRS 1 | SRJ TRS BASKET | NKK EQ 1 | 2 | | 01-01-2016 |
| 41 | Balance | <input type="checkbox"/> | SRJ TRS 1 | SRJ TRS BASKET | NKK ADR | 3 | | 01-01-2016 |
| 42 | Period | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | SRJ TRS 1 | SRJ TRS BASKET | | 0 | | 01-03-2016 |
| 43 | Period | <input type="checkbox"/> | SRJ TRS 1 | SRJ TRS BASKET | NKK FO4 PFC | 1 | | 01-03-2016 |

To view and maintain the pending four eyes approvals, open the **Four Eyes Approval** window.

3.5.2 Enabled payment reconciliation fields for cash buckets

As of version 6.4, the Payment (Pmt.) reconciliation open/made payments fields are available in a portfolio calculation for Cash Buckets.

This enhancement lets you view the correct open/made payments balances for cash buckets when cash management is linked to payment reconciliation.

Ensure that you have selected the **Cash buckets** check box in the **Portfolio Calculation** window.

3.6 Portfolio events

3.6.1 Update multiple portfolio event calendar dates at once

As of version 6.4, you can update multiple portfolio event calendar dates at once. This makes the maintenance of event calendars much easier. Previously, each event in the **Edit Portfolio Calendar** window required an update of its own, either manually or by using an **Update calendar** event.

This enhancement also changes the default behaviour of the **Update calendar** event. As of version 6.4, the event only updates the portfolio, portfolio group, or calculation segment in question. Previously, the event updated all entities which used the same calculation definition.

To configure the update of multiple portfolio event calendar dates at once, create an **Extended Portfolio Events** setup of type **Update calendar** as normal, but leave the **Update extended event** field empty.

To update multiple calendar dates at once, execute an **Extended Portfolio Events** setup, either as part of your portfolio STP workflow, by using a batch job, or manually by executing a setup in the **Update Portfolio Business Calendar**, **Update Portfolio Group Business Calendar**, or **Update Calculation Segment Business Calendar** window.

3.6.2 Patched from 19.01

3.6.2.1 Added reference date to portfolio Service Cost Charge Setups [6.3] [6.31] [6.4] [6.41]

As of version 19.01, the **Base date** field in the **Service Cost Charge Setups** window accepts not just fixed dates, but also reference dates.

If you use a reference date, the date is not compared to today, but to the event date in the **Portfolio Administration Manager**.

4 Connectivity

4.1 Communication Server

4.1.1 Execute Testbench test cases via batch job

As of version 6.4, you can execute **Testbench** test cases via batch job. This allows you to schedule the automatic execution of test cases in Communication Service solutions instead of starting them manually in the **Mediator** client.

To set up a **Testbench** batch job, create a batch job as usual:

1. Set **Batch task** to **Communication Service Testbench - Execute**.
2. Specify the **Testbench** scenario by assigning one of the following:
 - A communication parameter setup in the **Parameter set** field
 - A **Communication Service** setup in the **Communication service setup** field
3. Define the reference file output in the **Result file** field.

As a result, the batch job will execute all test cases that are defined on the assigned parameter set or **Communication Service** setup. SimCorp Dimension stores the results of the executed test cases in the defined reference file in XML.

The batch job adds feedback from the test cases to the batch log. The batch job fails if:

- At least one of the test cases fails; see the batch log for a list of all failed test cases, together with error messages from the Testbench
- All test cases in the **Testbench** scenario taken together take more than 20 minutes to execute

4.1.2 General improvements of the Communication Server solution [6.3]

In version 6.4 we have made the following improvement in the Communication server solution.

- Protected File Directories (PFDs) are now written to the Configuration parameters file and can be addressed by @confparam. This lets you use the PFD, even when it is in Edit mode (and PFD folder name suffixed with .edit).

Imagine you have a Protected File Directory named TESTXY, which is in edit mode (**Status = Edit**). The physical folder name will then be TESTXY.edit. If you address TESTXY literally, the solution will fail. Now instead you can reference the PFD folder TESTXY by using @confparam. For example @confparam(Directory, PFD_

`GENERAL\TESTXY)\example.xslt`, which will work no matter what the PFD status is.

4.2 Trade Repository Pool

4.2.1 Added Index CDS seniority data for ESMA reporting

As of version 6.4, it is easier to include seniority data of Index CDS instruments in ESMA reporting, as required.

To include Index CDS seniority data, open the **Reporting Pool Data Fields** window and select the SECURITIES.SECURITY -> CREDIT DEFAULT SWAP CREDIT EVENTS.TIER -> TIERS.TIER field:

1. Set **Table to Securities**.
2. In the **Possible fields** section:
 - A. Select **Credit Default Swap Credit Events** and click **Expand**.
 - B. Select **Tier** and click **Expand**.
 - C. Select **Tier** and add it to the **Selected fields** by clicking the right arrow button.

5 Controlling

5.1 Compliance Manager

5.1.1 Apply responsible groups across your compliance rule sets

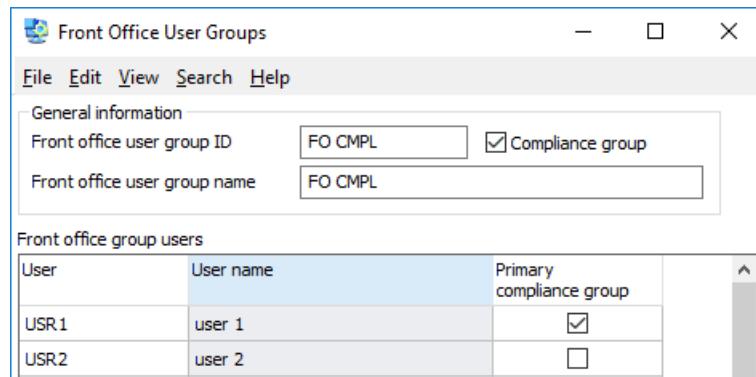
| | |
|--|---|
| Client segment | All |
| Target audience | Investment Controller |
| Subscription-based licensing | Compliance Manager |
| Sales Modules and sales module dependencies | Compliance Manager – Base, Compliance Manager – Multiple Branches |

As of this release version, you can set up groups of Compliance Manager users and assign them to specific rule sets for which they are responsible. The groupings of users and rules are called responsible groups and allow you to configure different groups of users to access and manage only those groups of rules they work with every day. For one portfolio, for example, you can have one group managing their legal rules and another one managing the portfolio's exposure limits. You can assign one responsible group to all your managed rules, and not assign a group for those rules for which not one group is responsible.

You can set up responsible groups by using the existing Front Office User Group functionality. For further information, see the **Create front office user groups** section in the **Front Office Implementation Guide**. An additional **Compliance group** check box has been added to the **Front Office User Groups** window to indicate its use in Compliance Manager. In addition, a new **Responsible group** field has been added to the **Rule Definition** window.

Set up a responsible group

You create a responsible group in the first instance as a front office user group by using the **Front Office User Groups** window and then you must select the **Compliance group** check box to indicate its use for Compliance Manager.



Typically a Compliance Manager user will belong only to one group, but where you belong to more than one group then you must select the **Primary compliance group** check box to indicate which group is your primary group. You can only have one primary group per user.

Assign responsible groups to rules

Once you belong to a responsible group, you can assign that group to a rule by using the **Responsible group** field in the **Rule Definition** section of the **Rule Entry** applet.

The screenshot shows the 'Rule Definition' applet interface. It has two main sections: 'General information' and 'Properties'. In the 'General information' section, there is a field labeled 'Responsible group' containing the value 'FO-ENG'. This field is highlighted with a red rectangle. Below it are fields for 'Investment type.2' and 'Rule origin', each with a '...' button. In the 'Properties' section, there is a field labeled 'Priority' with a dropdown menu showing 'S' selected. The entire 'General information' section is also highlighted with a red rectangle.

You can only select the groups here to which you belong. This field will be mandatory where responsible groups have been configured for your compliance branch and optional where they have not been configured.

View responsible groups in Compliance Manager

A **Responsible group** field can be added to all the major Compliance Manager applets, so you can see who is responsible for specific rules when reviewing alerts, pre-trade compliance results, and so on.

Migrate and configure responsible groups

To help you apply your pre-defined responsible groups across all your required rule sets, migration assistance is available. Your SimCorp Consultant can help you set up and run a conversion tool for this purpose, which need only be run once or twice to complete the migration.

When you are ready to implement responsible groups to your compliance branch, you can enable them all by selecting a new setting called **Enforce group responsibilities** in the **General** section of the **Compliance Configuration** window.

Once the responsible group functionality has been enforced, you cannot create and save a rule without assigning a responsible group to it; that is, the **Responsible Group** field will then become mandatory. You can, however, turn off the responsible group functionality for your compliance branch by clearing the **Enforce group responsibilities** check box, and then any previously assigned groups can be viewed for information purposes.

Import rules

You can import rules into Compliance Manager by using either the Rule Library **Import** right-click option, or by using the **Paste** right-click option in a **Rule Definition** window. When the responsible groups functionality has been enforced, your primary compliance group will be used as the default responsible group for a rule. When responsible groups have not been enforced, then you can import rules without responsible groups.

Benefits

- Enhances rule permission granularity.
- Improves audit control and transparency.
- Promotes a flexible configuration and workflow.

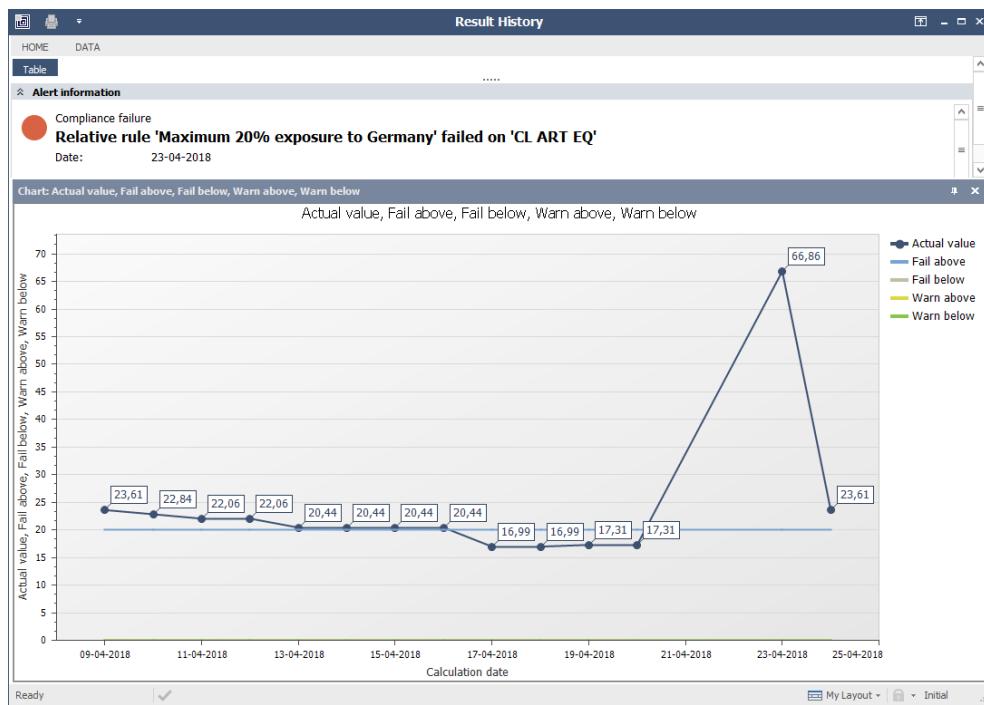
5.1.2 Display charts and pivot tables based on Result History

| | |
|--|---|
| Client segment | All |
| Target audience | Investment Controller |
| Subscription-based licensing | Compliance Manager |
| Sales Modules and sales module dependencies | Compliance Manager – Base, Compliance Manager |

In version 6.3 of Compliance Manager, a new **Result History** applet was made available to enable you to quickly access an overview of the complete chronological history or utilization of a post-trade result. In addition to displaying the chronological utilization of the rule result itself, the **Result History** applet also embedded a grid showing any alert audit trail activity associated with the corresponding rule result.

As of version 6.4, you can create charts and pivot tables from the data you have displayed for a rule in the **Results History** applet. This will allow you to quickly see, in a visual way, how the results for a specific compliance rule have evolved over time, and whether a limit was hit due to a sudden jump in value or due to a slow drift.

The data to plot is drawn directly from the **Result History** details and a typical data series that you might want to plot in a line chart might include actual value (Y axis) over time (x axis).



Similarly, you can present the same data series in a pivot table with the option to add a third dimension so you can analyse the same chart data but by, for example country, sector or security type groupings.

The available chart and pivot table functionality is standard across SimCorp Dimension so you can change the chart type, legend, colour of plots and text size as you can in other applications such as Asset Manager. In addition, you can dock the chart or pivot table with the Results History window, and pin the frame as required. Any later customizations you make to the chart or pivot table are saved in the layout. As you change the period of interest in the Results History from say 1 Month to 6 Months, the chart and the pivot table data are also updated automatically; they are also updated with any new calculated results.

Display result history details in a chart

To display result history details in a chart, do the following:

1. In the **Post-Trade Monitor** applet, select a calculation date from the calendar to display the assignment units calculated on this date.
2. Select an assignment unit to display the associated rules and their result detail.
3. Right-click on the required rule in the **Rule Details** section and select **Rule History**.
4. In the displayed table, select a result row, and from the **Show Applets** menu on the **Home** tab, select **New Chart**.
5. Select a chart type and click **OK**.

6. Complete the **Chart Editor** window by supplying the required data series to be plotted, such as the **Actual Value** and **Calculation Date**.
7. Click **Apply** to create the chart, and dock it next to your **Result History** window.

Display result history details in a pivot table

To display result history details in pivot table, do the following:

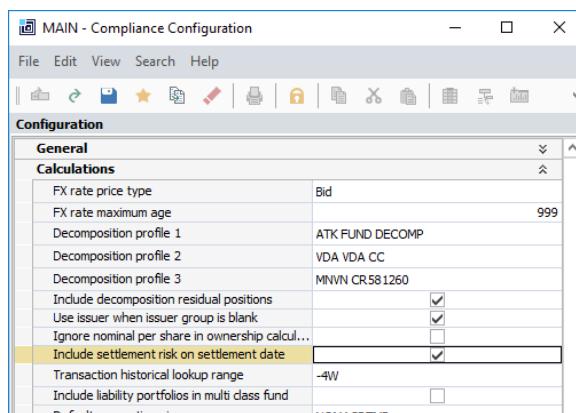
1. Using the Post Trade Monitor, display the required rule result details in the Rule History window.
2. In the displayed table, select a result row, and from the **Show Applets** menu on the **Home** tab, select **New Pivot**.
3. Add the fields to the Data fields section that you will use to analysis at the lowest level of granularity, for example **Actual value**, **Fail above**, **Fail below**, and so on.
4. Add the second dimension of the pivot table, such as the **Calculation date**, to the **Column fields** section.
5. Add the third dimension of the pivot table, such as the **Status**, to the **Row fields** section.
6. Close the **Select Fields** window and dock the **Pivot** tab next to your **Result History** window.

Benefits

- Streamlines the post trade result investigation process.
- Enhances overall rule result transparency.

5.1.3 Include settlement risk up to the settlement date [6.3-IMPL]

As of this release version, you can now determine whether settlement risk should be calculated from the trade date up to and including the settlement date. A new check box has been added to the **Calculations** section of the **Compliance Configuration** window called **Include settlement risk on settlement date** for this purpose.



- Selected—Settlement risk is also included on the settlement date in credit risk rules and other compliance rules by using a rule type basis of **Party exposure**.
- Cleared (default)—Settlement risk is only included from the agreement date and to the day before the settlement date.

This setting applies to pre-trade, post-trade, and online compliance calculations.

5.1.4 Handle not rated securities and issuers in rating measures [6.3-IMPL]

As of this release version, you can exclude ratings for securities and issuers that are not rated from average weighting calculations used in Asset Manager and Compliance Manager validation rules. Previously, securities or issuers defined in the **Rating Measures** or **Rating Agency** windows as **Not Rated**, were included in average weighting calculations, which could result in unrealistic average ratings where a group of securities are being evaluated.

To mitigate this issue, two new check boxes have been added to the **Rating Measures** window, which you can use for your not rated securities and issuers:

- **Exclude 'not rated'**—The not-rated rating has no impact on the average weighted rating as the affected holding is included in the calculations as a zero weight.
- **Show 'not rated' as blank (AM)**—Displays a blank for the not rated assets in Asset Manager portfolio sheets rather than the default value associated with the not-rated rating in the **Rating Agencies** window. You can select this check box only after you select the **Exclude 'not rated'** check box.

| Rating measure | Rating age... | Netting rule | Weighting ... | Missing ratings | Rounding r... | CDS rating... | Rating c... |
|-------------------------|---------------|----------------|-----------------|---------------------|---------------------|---------------|-------------|
| 2/SP-MO-FI | Second bes... | Positive only | Dirty value ... | Rank as "not rated" | Step down | | Security |
| S&P ST | Standard &... | Net (+/-) | Dirty value ... | Rank as "not rated" | Nearest | | Security |
| Composite | COMP S&P... | CE Composit... | Net (+/-) | Dirty value ... | Nearest | | Security |
| Risk avg rating example | MOODY'S LT | Moody's In... | Net (+/-) | Exposure/D... | Rank as "not rated" | Interval | Security |
| S&P Long-term rating | S&P LT | Standard &... | Net (+/-) | Exposure/D... | Rank as "not rated" | Step down | Security |
| Moody's LT | MOODY'S LT | Moody's In... | Net (+/-) | Exposure/D... | Rank as "not rated" | Step down | Security |
| cmrat issuer | S&P LT | Standard &... | Net (+/-) | Dirty value | Rank as "not rated" | Nearest | |
| cmrat cpty | S&P LT | Standard &... | Positive only | Dirty value | Rank as "not rated" | Nearest | |
| cmrat risk issuer | S&P LT | Standard &... | Net (+/-) | Dirty value | Rank as "not rated" | Nearest | |
| cmrat risk party | S&P LT | Standard &... | Net (+/-) | Dirty value | Rank as "not rated" | Nearest | |
| COMP MOODY+FITCH | ICE MDY+FITC | CE Composit... | Net (+/-) | Exposure/D... | Rank as "not rated" | Step down | Security |

In addition, the options for the **Missing ratings** field in **Rating Measures** window, which is used to define how missing ratings must be handled, have been relabelled with more user friendly titles. Their functionality is the same as before which is:

- **Rank as 'not rated'**—Use the rating specified as the “not rated” step of the rating agency.
- **Weight as zero**—Continue but use zero as weight for the holding.
- **Weight as zero and report**—Continue but use zero as weight for the holding and report an error or data exception.

5.1.5 Front office API enhancements

As of this release version, specific enhancements have been made to the front office API for the recording and tracking of alerts related to data incidents. For example, you can use the front office API to raise alerts for missing reference data in the compliance workflow. The following specific enhancements have been made:

- New API commands for recording and tracking data incidents.
- A new alert type called **Data Incident** and an alert filter.
- Integration with the **BUSINESS RULES MANAGER** module.

These enhancements mean that you can manage your data incidents remotely by using your own calling applications, thereby reducing the need to send emails, make phone calls, and so on.

New API commands for recording and tracking data incidents

A set of API commands are now available for you to register a data incident in Compliance Manager, add a comment to it, look up its status, and close it. When you create a data incident, you supply an entity type and the security ID that relates to the data incident where the entity type is Securities, and you get back a unique Alert ID. Once you have created the alert remotely through the API, other users can add standard actions to the alert, such as snoozing the alert.

The following new commands are passed in single, synchronous API calls.

- `RegisterIncidentArgument`
- `AddCommentToIncidentsArgument`
- `LookupIncidentsArgument`
- `CloseIncidentsArgument`

The command set uses the alert IDs to link a set of API calls together.

You are free to choose how best to utilise these commands in your own processes and workflows. For example, how will a data incident be acknowledged in the calling application when the incident details are returned, such as saving and tracking the Alert IDs.

New alert type and alter filter

When you create a data incident alert through the API, you can see the alert in the **Alerts Inbox** by clicking the new **Data incident** alerts filter. This alert will have an **Alert type** of **Data incident** and you can add the following new fields to the data grid to further identify the incident.

- **Entity field**
- **Entity ID**
- **Entity type**

The screenshot shows the 'Alerts Inbox' tab selected in the top navigation bar. On the left, there's a sidebar with various filters like 'Standard filters', 'All (7700)', 'Unassigned (7677)', etc. The main area displays a table with columns: Entity field, Entity ID, Entity type, Alert ID, Alert group, Alert type, Latest comment, and Sub status. Three rows are visible, each with a yellow circular icon next to 'Data incident'. Below this table, a specific alert is expanded: 'Data incident Securities/SeID 'IAS EQ2''. It shows the date '05-01-2018 16:14:25'. A detailed log table below lists actions such as 'Assigned to user CRR', 'Mail sent to IAS', 'Assigned to user IAS1', 'Exported', and 'Due Date Added', each with a timestamp and user information.

Integration with the Business Rules Manager module

The **Data incident** alert type has now been integrated into the **Business Rules Manager** module, which you can use to create alert rules for data incidents. The business rule types that you can use for the new **Data incident** alert rule are the same as for your Compliance alert rule; namely:

- Assign
- Due Date
- Email
- Export Alert

5.1.6 Support for alternative security ID systems

As of this release version, you can use your own alternative security ID systems, such as SEDOL, ISIN, Bloomberg for securities held in SimCorp Dimension, when requesting order creation using the front office API. Although, SEDOL, ISIN, and Bloomberg security codes were previously supported in SimCorp Dimension, you can now access each security's alternative IDs grid by using the front office API.

Provided that the security static data definitions held in SimCorp Dimension have been set up with alternative security IDs in the **Alternative Security Identifications** window, you can use your preferred ID system and codes in your API commands. Two new parameters are now available to pass the ID details in your order rows for the **CreateOrders**,

`CreateSimulatedOrders`, and `ValidateSimulatedOrders` API commands:

- `AlternativeSecuritySystem`
- `AlternativeSecurityCode`

You can use these two parameters to pass, for example, all your Bloomberg codes for securities instead of sending the SimCorp Dimension-specific Security IDs. If you send multiple alternative IDs, such as an ISIN, a CUSIP, and a Bloomberg code, all IDs must match the same security defined in the SimCorp Dimension security static data.

5.1.7 Create rules based on external lists

As of this release version, you can create black lists or white lists of constituents, such as parties or securities, based on attribute values which may or may not exist in SimCorp Dimension. You can create these lists by importing external files into SimCorp Dimension, and then set an effective date against them by which their attribute values will be included, for example, in compliance rules. As such, these lists are referred to and maintained as external lists, and you can reimport later versions of the same list with updated attribute values, which can be effective from a more recent date.

Two new windows called **External List Definitions** and **External Lists** are available from the **Data > Tools** category of the SimCorp Dimension portal. You use these windows to create a single external list definition and associate it with a set of separate external lists, such as a set of different blacklisted ISINs effective from a specific date. When you want to update an external list, you reimport the updated file with a new effective date.

In SimCorp Dimension modules, other than Compliance Manager, you will typically use the **inexternallist** formula to verify a string against a list on a specific date.

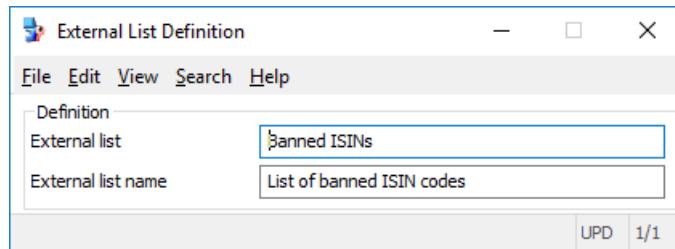
These lists are not updated using the **Import** option in the Compliance Manager **Lists** window, but you maintain them only through the **External List** window, for which you will need specific authorised access.

Set up lists outside of Compliance Manager

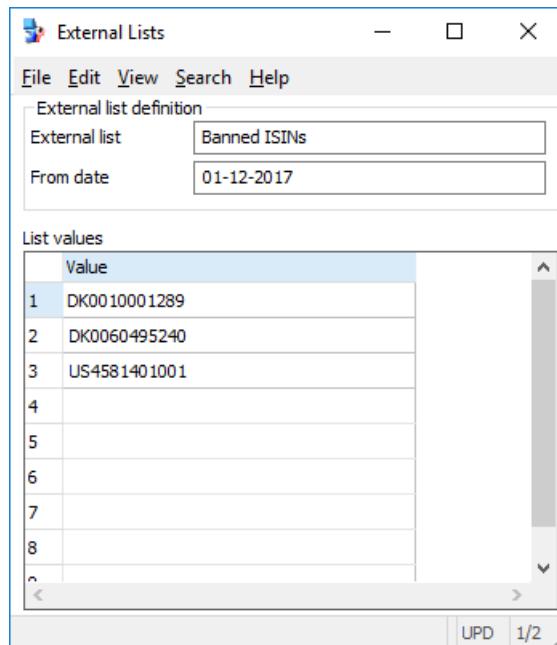
To set up an external list, do the following:

1. Open the **External List Definitions** window from the SimCorp Dimension portal.

2. Select **New** from the **File** menu and enter a short ID and a long name for the external list.



3. Save the external list definition.
4. Open the **External List** window from the SimCorp Dimension portal.
5. Select **New** from the **File** menu.
6. Select your external list definition for the **External list** field.
7. Enter the effective date for the list in the **From date** field.
8. Enter your attribute value in the **Value** field.



9. Repeat steps 5 to 8 for each additional list you want to associate with your external list definition.

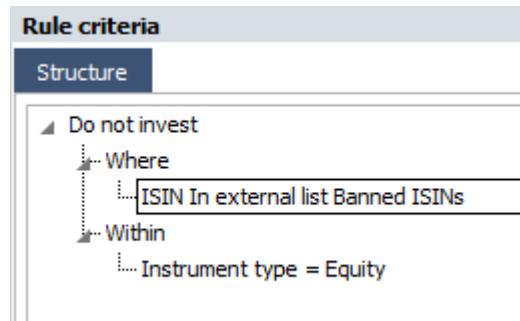
Note

You cannot delete an external list once it has been included in a compliance rule.

Use external lists in Compliance Manager

From a Compliance Manager perspective, a new rule operator called **In External List** is now available, which you can use in compliance rules to quote specific external lists.

To add the external list definition to your compliance rule, you can for example create a **Do not invest** rule, add a string attribute such as ISIN, add the **In external list** operator in a **Where** condition, and then select your external list definition as the property of the operator.



The ISINs in the external lists example here will be excluded from investment, but only from the from date specified in the external lists.

The external list selected for a rule can be made available as a field which you can add to your **Compliance Details** applet. When you set up such a field, the field name can share the same name as the string attribute and external list included in a rule. You can use this field to show whether individual securities are matched against the external list included in the rule.

| Category | Instrument type | Balance n/n | ISIN | ISIN in Banned ISINs | Security name | Currency |
|------------------|------------------|------------------|--------------|-------------------------------------|--|----------|
| 2 failures | | | | <input type="checkbox"/> | | |
| SIMCORP | Equity | 200.110.0000 | DK0060495240 | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | SIMCORP A/S | DKK |
| SIMCORP | Equity | 20.000.0000 | DK0060495240 | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | SIMCORP A/S | EUR |
| 3 passes | | | | <input type="checkbox"/> | | |
| DK0010001528 | Equity | 100.0000 | DK0010001528 | <input type="checkbox"/> | Midbank | DKK |
| INTEL | Equity | 100.000.0000 | US4581401001 | <input type="checkbox"/> | Intel | USD |
| NOVO | Equity | -600.0000 | DK0010280817 | <input type="checkbox"/> | Novo Nordisk B | DKK |
| Excluded | | | | <input type="checkbox"/> | | |
| 211.S.S | Bond | 60.000.000.0000 | 0932736 | <input type="checkbox"/> | 10.00% BRF 211.s.522 | DKK |
| 211.S.S | Bond | 100.000.000.0000 | 0932736 | <input type="checkbox"/> | 10.00% BRF 211.s.522 | DKK |
| COMPL SIMPLE DEC | Fund certificate | 10.000.0000 | NOISIN | <input type="checkbox"/> | Simple external fund example for decomposition | DKK |
| DAX FUTURE KAGG | Future | -10.000.000.0000 | | <input type="checkbox"/> | DAX Future for KAGG limite | EUR |
| DK0002000850 | Bond | 50.000.000.0000 | DK0002000850 | <input type="checkbox"/> | UNIK ser. 26æ | DKK |
| DK0006317367 | Bond | 90.000.000.0000 | DK0006317367 | <input type="checkbox"/> | 45.s.A | DKK |
| DK0006800289 | Bond | 100.000.000.0000 | DK0006800289 | <input type="checkbox"/> | 5. | DKK |

View external lists used for a compliance rule

From the **Post-Trade Monitor** applet and for rule details that include external lists, you can navigate directly to the rule and open the associated external list. You can view the latest list of constituents that were used for a rule on or before the calculation date.

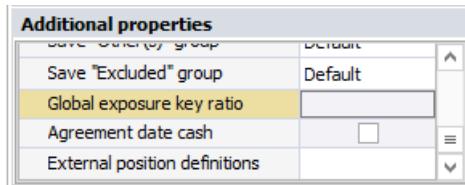
To navigate to an external list from the result details, do the following:

1. In the **Post-Trade Monitor** applet, select a calendar date and assignment unit to display its result details.

2. In the **Result Details** section, right-click a rule with an external list and select **Rule** to display the **Compliance Rule Entry** window.
3. Right-click the **In external list** operator and select **Open external list** to open the **External Lists** window.

5.1.8 Define global exposure rules with custom initial exposure calculation [6.3-IMPL]

As of this release version, you can now adjust the calculation method used to calculate the initial exposure for your new or existing Global Exposure rules, depending upon the requirement of the legislation you are validating against. Previously, the exposure calculation was 'hard-coded' by default and while it was, and still is, appropriate for UCITS legislation, it was not appropriate for BVV2 legislation which requires a different initial exposure calculation. Now, you can add a user-defined key ratio, such as an existing credit risk measure, to the rule properties using the **Global exposure key ratio** field in your rule's **Additional Properties** section.

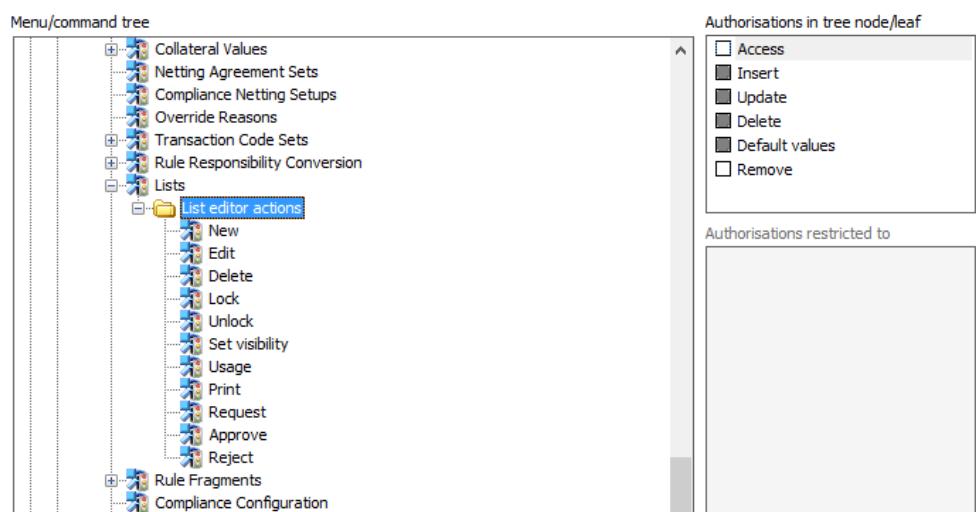


Existing global exposure rules will continue to be calculated as before, just that now you can add an additional initial exposure calculation for those positions that are the exception to the rule.

5.1.9 Set read-only user access to Lists

As of version 6.4, you can now limit a user's authorisation access to the **Lists** window in Compliance Manager to be 'read only'. This is particularly useful for roles such as auditors, who need full access to Compliance Manager but without the ability to change anything.

For this purpose, a new node called **List editor actions** has been added to the **Compliance Manager > Compliance Settings > Lists** path in the **User Authorisation - Tasks and Commands** window.



Using these access rights, you can disable all editing functions per user and enable read-only access to the **Lists Editor** window.

Note

Clients should note that this new access feature requires you to set the 'access' to **Lists** in the **Tasks and Commands** window, after the upgrade, in order for you to your lists as before.

5.1.10 Export pre and post-trade compliance results to Excel

As of version 6.4, you can cut-and-paste full compliance result details for pre and post-trade results directly into MS Excel with a single click. A new option called **Export to Excel** is now available from the **Edit** menu of the **Compliance Results** applet. This option can also be added as a button to the **Compliance Results** toolbar.

The screenshot shows a software interface for Compliance Results. At the top, it displays a title bar with the text "CL MAR EQ - Maximum 30% by Market Value in any single Currency - 1 Failure: USD 37,91% (Max 27,00'". Below the title bar is a menu bar with "File", "Edit", "View", and "Help". A toolbar follows, containing various icons. The main area is a table with columns for "Category", "In...", "Cu...", "Dirty value QC", "Dirty value USD", "Dirty ...", and "S...". The table data is as follows:

| Category | In... | Cu... | Dirty value QC | Dirty value USD | Dirty ... | S... |
|--------------------------------|-------|---------------|----------------|-----------------|-----------|------|
| 1 failures | | | | | | |
| USD 37,91% (Max 27,00% / ...) | USD | 89.276.497,36 | 89.276.497,36 | 37,91 | | |
| 4 passes | | | | | | |
| CAD 5,40% (Max 27,00% / 30...) | CAD | 17.302.977,28 | 12.721.841,98 | 5,40 | | |
| CHF 8,42% (Max 27,00% / 30...) | CHF | 19.402.878,83 | 19.823.129,18 | 8,42 | | |
| DKK 5,30% (Max 27,00% / 30...) | DKK | 83.127.261,08 | 12.472.020,09 | 5,30 | | |
| GBP 7,74% (Max 27,00% / 30...) | GBP | 14.063.154,46 | 18.238.505,00 | 7,74 | | |
| Σ Total | | | 235.502.936,37 | 100,00 | | |
| Other(s) | | | | | | |

When you click the **Export to Excel** button, a confirmation dialog is displayed. When you click **Save** on this dialog, MS Excel is launched automatically with the complete compliance results details available in one worksheet.

The pasted data includes all headers and categories as displayed in the **Compliance Results** window, including the order in which the positions, by Category, were reported.

5.1.11 Support for compliance override using the Front Office API [6.3-IMPL]

As of this release version, you can now override compliance failures in Asset Manager remotely by using a new Front Office API command. Specifically, these are orders in the Asset Manager **Order Outbox** applet that have a **Validation Status** of **Failure**, but a **Can Release** status of **Request override**. Issuing the new command will set the **Override status (bundle)** field in Compliance Manager to **Requested** for a bundle of orders, upon which a Compliance Officer can take action (that is, they can Accept or Reject the request).

There are two new API commands that are used jointly to request an override:

- **Checkoverridestatus**—You can use this command to check on the override status of a compliance bundle for the **Can Release** status. Note that all orders that you submit with the **RequestOverride** command must all have a **Can Release** status of **Request override**. You can use this command to establish which orders in the compliance bundle have this status. You can issue this command in a single synchronous call, which passes a Validation ID and gets back a collection of orders and

their compliance validation results.

- **RequestOverride**—You can use this command to submit a bundle of orders that have been validated which all have the a **Can Release** status of **Request override**. You can issue this command in a single synchronous call, which passes the validation bundle an gets back a collection of order IDs as confirmation.

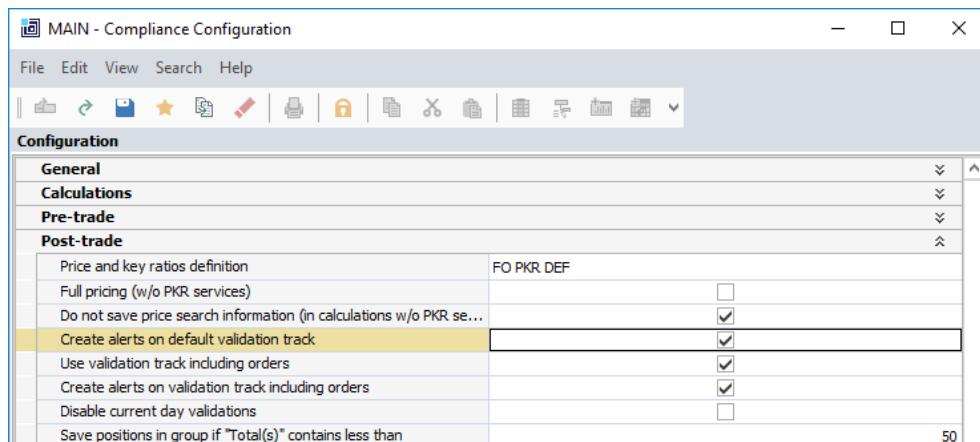
For further details on how to construct the arguments for these commands and their responses, see the **Front Office API** reference manual.

5.1.12 Reduce the amount of data that Compliance Manager stores

As of version 6.4, several configuration options have been added to the **Compliance Configuration** and **Front Office Options** windows which you can use to help reduce the amount of data being stored with your compliance results. These options affect the saving of alerts, saving of intermediate results, and the population of helper tables. These new options, when in use, are intended to reduce the need for regular data clean-ups.

Saving of alerts on compliance results

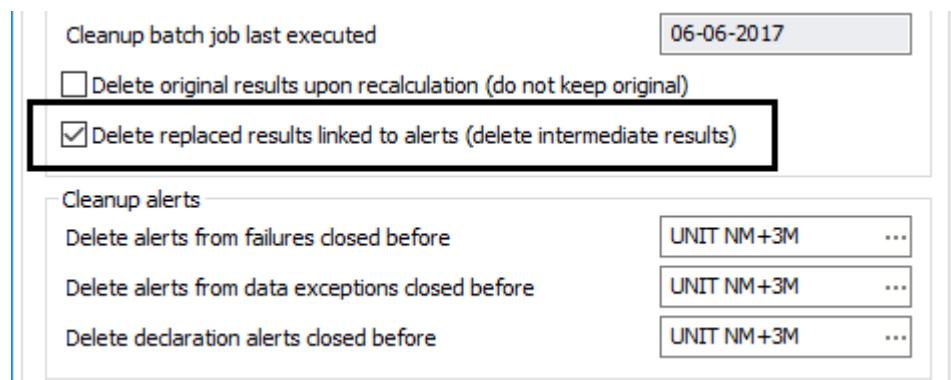
A new check box called **Create alerts on default validation track** has been added to the **Post-Trade** section of the **Compliance Configuration** window. This is intended for use with new implementation projects where you can turn off the auto-generation of alerts related to rule failures, until you are ready to go live with your compliance rules that have been tested and approved.



Saving of intermediate compliance results

You can now save only the first and last compliance results associated with alerts and automatically remove all the intermediate results each day, helping you to save only those results that are important to you. A new option called **Delete replaced results linked to alerts (delete)**

intermediate results) has been added to the **Compliance - 3** tab of the **Front Office Options** window.



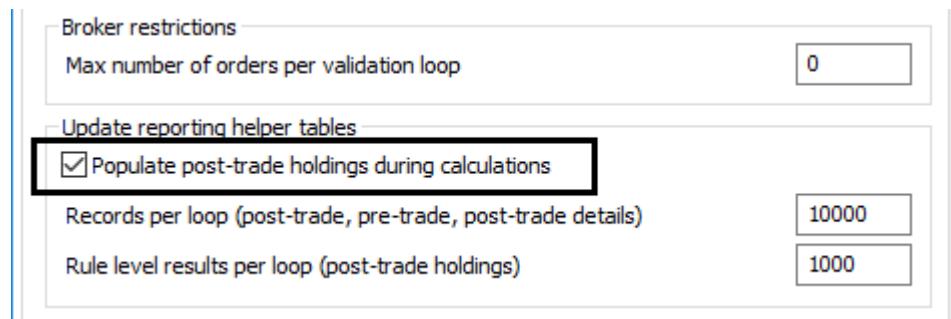
The option is effective immediately at the point you select it.

Note

This check box works in combination with the **Delete original results upon recalculation (do not keep original)** check box which was originally labelled as **Do not keep audit data for recalculated results** in previous releases.

Populate reporting helper tables

Helper tables were introduced in version 5.8 to help you create customised compliance reports, and these tables were filled by running the **Compliance Update Reporting Helper Tables** batch job. In this version, a new check box called Populate post-trade holdings during calculations has been added to the **Compliance - 2** tab of the **Front Office Options** window, which you can use to determine whether the helper tables should be populated or not.



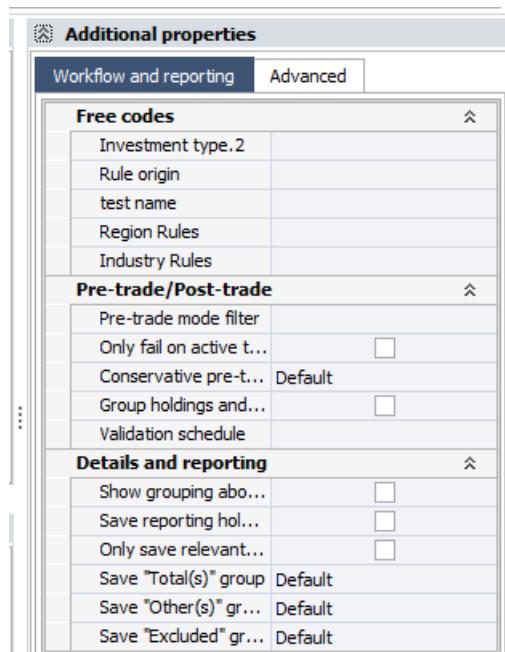
If you select this check box, the helper tables will be populated with post-trade holdings data but only as far back as the To date specified on the **Compliance Update Reporting Helper Tables** batch job.

5.1.13 Improved user interface features in the Rule Entry applet

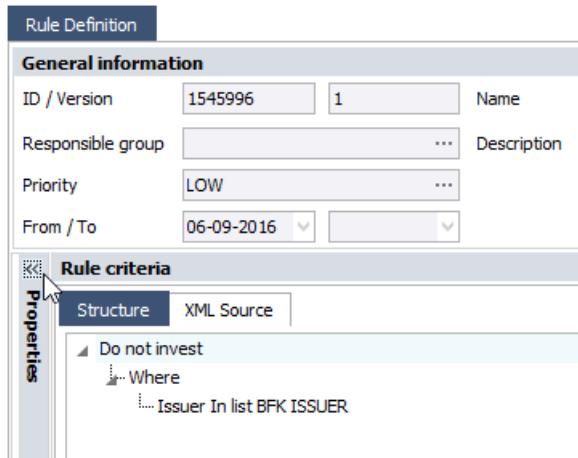
As of version 6.4, a number of improvements have been made to the user interface of the **Rule Entry** applet to make it easier and hence faster to

enter rules.

- Additional Properties displayed in their own tabbed section—This section is now always available for entry without the need to scroll and visible regardless of monitor resolution. Previously, the **Additional Properties** section had to be scrolled down to before fields could be entered. The properties have been grouped into two themed tabs called **Workflow and Reporting**, and **Advanced** to avoid the need to scroll in these lists of properties.



- Moveable panels—The panels for the **Properties**, **Additional Properties** and **Summary** sections can now be collapsed and expanded individually to provide more space for work in the **Rule criteria** section or space for selecting the required rule properties.



The expanded and collapsed state of these panels are saved to the layout so the **Rule Entry** applet will appear the same when you next edit the same rule or another rule.

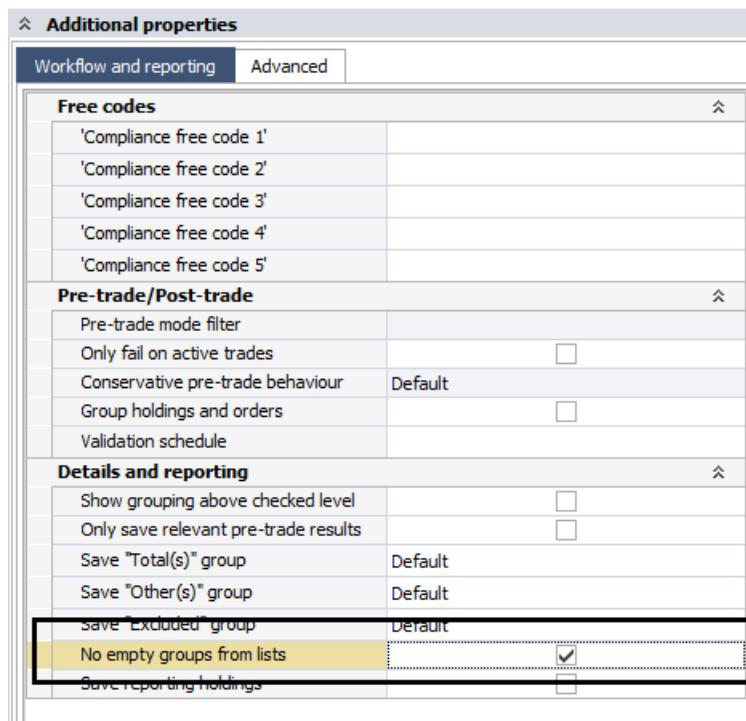
- Rule name field—This field has now been lengthened and can now take up to 250 characters. This was previously available in version 6.31.

5.1.14 Patched from 6.41

5.1.14.1 Remove empty groups from list-based rules [6.3] [6.4]

As of version 6.41, you can use a new additional rule property to remove empty report results where the attributes you define in your lists are not relevant to the underlying rule definition which use groupings. For example, you have a country list which defines an exposure limit for DKK as 10%, however you have no DKK holdings in your portfolio so the DKK grouping in the results will be empty. You can now automatically remove these results.

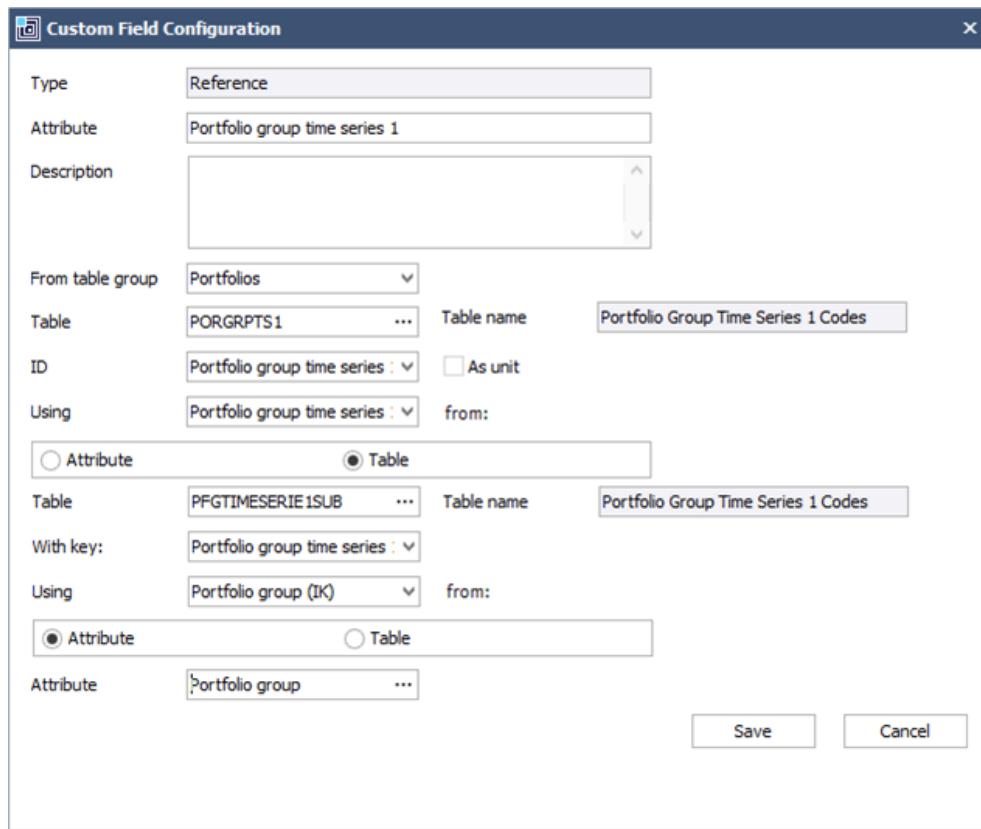
A new check box called **No empty groups from lists** is located on the **Workflow and reporting** tab of the **Additional properties** section in the **Compliance Rule Entry** applet.



When you select this check box for a rule that evaluates attributes for each constituent in an associated list, the **Compliance Results** applet will show results only for those groups that have result values. This feature helps to improve viewing performance and readability of the compliance results. The underlying rule logic involving lists has not changed.

5.1.14.2 Support for time series fields in custom attributes [6.3] [6.31] [6.4]

As of version 6.41, you can now use selected time series fields in the definition of your custom fields using the **Custom Field Configuration** window. You can now create a custom field, for example **Portfolio group time series 1**, pick a field in a table for the free codes you want to use, choose another table of time series values that you want to use for the free codes, and then link this data to the attribute you want to use in your rules, such as **Portfolio group**.



Note that only the following time series are supported. Custom fields based on any other time series will not work and will provide wrong results.

| SimCorp Dimension Portal Path | Fields |
|--------------------------------------|--|
| Securities > Free Codes, Time Series | Country, Regions, Business, Time Series 1 to 25 |
| Portfolio Groups > Time Series | Time Series 1, Time Series 2, Time Series 3 EUSD Tax |
| Portfolios > Time Series | Time Series 1 to 20 |
| Equities > Key Figures | Equity key figure 1 to 10 |

When you use a custom field that is based on a time series for an attribute on a rule, the correct value according to the calculation date will be used in the rule evaluation.

5.1.15 Patched from 19.01

5.1.15.1 Validate aggregate rules based on Assignment Unit usage [6.31][6.4]

As of this release version, a small change has been made to the current way compliance rules which have a **Scope** value of **Aggregate** are applied

to the assignment units that are selected in the **Usage** window. When you create an aggregate rule and select only those assignment units that are relevant from the **Usage** window, now only the holdings of the selected assignment units are loaded and included in the aggregation calculations. The holdings for all other assignment units are excluded (that is, not loaded) before the aggregation calculation is performed.

5.1.15.2 Support for client-specific benchmark rules on model portfolio folders [IMPL-6.31][IMPL-6.4][IMPL-6.41]

As of version 19.01 of Compliance Manager, compliance rules that use client-specific benchmarks, and that are assigned to a model portfolio node in the hierarchy, only use the benchmark from that model portfolio.

5.1.15.3 Exclude portfolios in aggregate rules [6.31][6.4][6.41]

As of version 19.01 of Compliance Manager, the behaviour of the **Usage** window has changed to provide you with a better experience. You can now exclude portfolios in any aggregate rules you specify. Holdings from excluded portfolios no longer appear in any pre- or post-trade validations.

5.2 Middle Office

5.2.1 Enhanced logic for risk mitigation handling when calculating Solvency II analytics for multi-legged instruments

As of version 6.4, the logic for risk mitigation handling, when calculating Solvency II analytics for multi-legged instruments, has been enhanced.

The risk mitigation applies for:

- Positions in the Risk mitigation segment (specified in the **Solvency 2 Settings** window).
- Positions where **Time to maturity** is less than 1 year.
- Positions where **Solvency 2 dirty value QC > Solvency 2 unshocked dirty value QC**

When applying the risk mitigation for multi-legged instruments, the following logic is used:

1. Check if the risk mitigation should be applied for each leg separately according to the rule above (if the legs have the same quotation currencies).
2. If the risk mitigation rule applies for at least one of the legs, then net the shocked dirty value and unshocked dirty value for the leg(s).
3. Compare if **Netted dirty value > Netted unshocked dirty value**.
4. Apply the risk mitigation adjustment according to the following formula:

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Solvency II dirty value (adjusted for risk mitigation)} \\ = \text{Solvency II unshocked dirty value} + (\text{Solvency II dirty value} - \text{Solvency II unshocked dirty value}) \times \text{Time to maturity} \end{aligned}$$

5. If the risk mitigation rule from step 1 doesn't apply for any of the legs separately, then no adjustment takes place.
6. If the instrument's legs have different quotation currencies, the dirty values, in the reporting currency specified in the **Position Calculation Definition**, which is listed first in the alphabetical order, will be used to identify if the risk mitigation is relevant to apply. The adjustment itself will take place for QC values per each leg.
7. If legs have different **Time to maturity**, then the shortest Time to maturity is used for all legs during the adjustment.
8. When converting the values from QC to RC, to identify if netting is required for cases with different quotation currencies, the unshocked FX rate is used (even if FX shock is set up and applied as part of the solvency 2 key ratios calculation).

5.2.2 View Position Results for several days

As of version 6.4, you can view results in the **Position Results** applet for the **Middle Office Calculation Manager** for multiple days.

To view position calculation results (including possible error messages) in the **Middle Office Calculation Manager**:

1. Open the **Position Results** applet by clicking the **Results** icon.
2. Select a period for the calculation results by entering dates in the **From** and **To** fields.
3. Specify search criteria in the grid to limit the amount of data shown. This is mandatory if the **From** and **To** fields define a period that is longer than one day.
4. Click the **Load** icon to calculate results.

5.3 Risk Monitoring

5.3.1 MSCI RiskMetrics interface solution enhancements

| | |
|-------------------------------|--|
| Client segment | All client types using the MSCI RiskMetrics interface solution |
| Target audience | Middle office, risk manager and portfolio manager |
| Role-based licensing | Risk Analysis Manager and add-ons |
| Module-based licensing | Risk Reporting RiskMetrics Adaptor |

There are several useful enhancements to the MSCI RiskMetrics interface solution:

- As an alternative to the RiskMetrics Equity model you can now cover Fund Certificates with the RiskMetrics Bond Fund Model. This model is based on risk factors and sensitivities that are specified in SimCorp Dimension, which makes it a transparent and audit proof coverage.
- Several additional instrument tags of the MSCI RiskMetrics Generic Bond model have been added to enhance the coverage of multiple interest types, Brazilian bonds and bonds with embedded options.
- The Trade Manager Equity Forwards are now covered by the MSCI RiskMetrics Equity Future model.
- The Trade Manager Cross Currency Fixed/Fixed Swaps are now covered by the MSCI RiskMetrics Swaps model.
- The Trade Manager Swaptions are now covered by the MSCI RiskMetrics Swaptions model.
- You can now make a 'Privilege' indication on the portfolios (Position Group) which on the MSCI RiskMetrics side can be used to ensure confidentiality.

5.3.1.1 **Added MSCI Bond Fund model**

As of version 6.4, you can cover fund certificates by the Bond Fund model in the MSCI RiskMetrics interface in SCD.

To describe a fund certificate by the Bond Fund model, follow these steps:

1. On the **Model Override** tab of the **MSCI Override** window, specify the **Bond Fund** model in the **Descriptive model override** field for the **Fund certificate Instrument type**.
2. On the **MSCI Override Mapping** tab of the **Mapping Definition** window, specify the **MSCI Override ID** created in the previous step per **Segment** and/or **Security ID** to indicate the fund certificates that you want to cover by the Bond Fund model.
3. Set up the **MSCI Risk Factors and Sensitivities Definitions** window to define the risk factors that will be used to cover the fund certificate.
4. Save the first and/or second order sensitivities in the **MSCI Risk Factors and Sensitivities Values** window for the risk factors created on the previous step.
5. On the **MSCI Market Data Mapping** tab of the **Mapping Definition** window:
 - A. Assign the **MSCI Risk Factors and Sensitivities Definition ID** per **Security ID** and/or **Segment** to identify which risk factors will be included for positions in the position file sent to MSCI. Use **RiskFactorsAndSensitivities MSCI market data name**.

6. Optionally, assign **EquityName** for the fund certificates. If not specified, the **Equity Name** will be taken from the **MSCI Proxy Table** tab or from the static data based on the priorities set in the **Risk Options**.
7. Optionally, specify the market identifier on the **MSCI Proxy Table** tab of the **Mapping Definition** window and select the **Descriptive** check box. If not specified, the **Equity name** will be taken from the **MSCI Market Data Mapping** tab or from the instrument's static data. If you do not select the **Descriptive** check box, the position will be covered by the Exchange Traded model ignoring the other override rules setup.

Within the **Bond Fund** model, the amount, that is, the holding information part, is sent as the **Balance nominal/number** value of the fund certificate.

5.3.1.2 TM Equity Forward instrument coverage

As of version 6.4, the **Equity forward** instrument type (traded via the Trade Manager) is covered by the existing **Equity Future** MSCI RiskMetrics model.

For more information, see "MSCI RiskMetrics instrument modelling rules" and "Equity Future model", in the **MSCI RiskMetrics Integration** user manual.

5.3.1.3 TM Cross Currency, fixed/fixed swap instrument coverage

As of version 6.4, the **Cross Currency, fixed/fixed swap** instrument type (traded via the Trade Manager) is covered by the existing **Generic bond** MSCI RiskMetrics model.

For more information, see "MSCI RiskMetrics instrument modelling rules" and "Generic bond model - IRS", in the **MSCI RiskMetrics Integration** user manual.

5.3.1.4 Assign privilege rights for position groups and security entities

As of version 6.4, you can assign privilege rights for specific position groups and security entities in the meta file. This allows you to indicate how different position groups are treated with respect to confidentiality on the MSCI side.

Adding privilege information to the meta file and sending it over to MSCI does not influence the availability and access rights to the exported/imported information inside SimCorp Dimension. Create a setup in the **MSCI Privilege Holders** window to set up permissions for position groups and security entities that have been set up within the MSCI RiskMetrics framework (on the MSCI side).

To create a privilege rights setup, open the **MSCI Privilege Holders** window:

1. Assign an **ID** and, optionally, a **Name** for the setup.
2. In the **Position group value** field, specify the list of holding groups from the position file to indicate the ones for which you want to set specific permissions.
3. In the **Security entity** field, specify the security entities, which are typically group level entities, to which you grant privileges that have been set up within the MSCI RiskMetrics framework.
4. Select the **Ignore inherited groups** check box if you do not want the privileges to be inherited by all related entities. If you want the permissions to be inherited by all related entities, leave the check box unselected.
5. Select the permissions you want to grant for specific position groups and security entities by selecting the **List**, **Read**, **Write**, **Delete**, **Insert**, and **Admin** check boxes as applicable.

Then reference the **MSCI Privilege Holders** window ID in the **Risk Measurement** window on the **Models > MSCI RiskMetrics > Settings** tab in the **Privilege holders** field.

5.3.2 Patched from 6.4

5.3.2.1 Improved fixed income coverage with MSCI RiskMetrics [6.31] [6.4]

As of version 6.41, you can assign additional optional tags for the MSCI Generic Bond model in SimCorp Dimension. This improves the coverage of the wide variety of fixed income instruments in the MSCI RiskMetrics solution.

To assign optional tags, use the **MSCI Override** window as usual: Load or create a setup where the **MSCI descriptive model** field on the **Descriptive Model** tab is set to **Generic bond**.

These additional tags have been added:

floatCoupons > referenceTenor

The value for this tag is taken from the **Term length** and **Term unit** fields on the **Bonds > FRN > Reference Rates Definitions** sub-window. For example, if **Term length** is set to **1** and **Term unit** is set to **Months**, the **referenceTenor** tag is set to **1M**.

floatCoupons > staticCapFloor

Add this tag with **XML tag name** set to **floatCoupons/staticCapFloor** and select the **Empty-element tag** check box.

pricingModelType > hullWhiteOneFactor > volatilitySeries

The value for this tag is taken from the **Mapping Definition** window on the **MSCI Market Data Mapping** tab, this looks for the entry where the **MSCI market data name** field is set to **VolatilitySeriesHullwhiteOneFactor** and uses the **MSCI market data value**, for example, EU.EUR.ISC.

callProvisions > isDiscreteStrike

Add this tag with **XML tag name** set to

callProvisions/isDiscreteStrike and select the **Empty-element tag** check box.

callProvisions > daysNotice and putProvisions > daysNotice

This tag is populated for bonds where the **Day count** field on the **Bonds > Put/Calls** sub-window is set to **Business days** or **Calendar days**.

The value for this tag is taken from the **Number of days** field on the **Bonds > Put/Calls** sub-window for the date that is nearest to the analysis date.

For example, if **Number of days** is set to **66**, the **daysNotice** tag is set to:

- **66** for bonds where **Day count** is set to **Calendar days**
- **66B** for bonds where **Day count** is set to **Business days**

assumedRedemptionDate

Add this tag with **XML tag name** set to **assumedRedemptionDate** and set **Value** to one of the schema values for this tag, for example, **automatic**, **explicitDate**, or **nextCallDate**.

useBondSpreadCurveModel

Add this tag with **XML tag name** set to **useBondSpreadCurveModel** and select the **Empty-element tag** check box.

sinkingFundProvisions > prepaySpeed > byWeightedAverageLife > calibrateCPR

Add this tag with **XML tag name** set to **sinkingFundProvisions/prepaySpeed/byweightedAverageLife/calibrateCPR** and select the **Empty-element tag** check box.

This previously existing tag has been enhanced:

sinkingFundProvisions > prepaySpeed > byWeightedAverageLife > prepayStartDate

The value for this tag is now the analysis date taken from the **Analysis date** field on the **Risk Measurement > View MSCI Audit** sub-window. Previously, this was taken from the **Pool Factors - Bonds** sub-window from the **Date** field of the most recent **Pool factor** value before the analysis date.

5.3.2.2 Prioritize MSCI reports in batch jobs [6.31] [6.4]

As of version 6.41, you can prioritize urgent MSCI reports in a Risk Measurement execution to be completed in a first batch job and leave less urgent reports to subsequent batch jobs. Previously, you requested all

reports at once and only got them back after they were all done. This led to unwanted delays of urgent reports due to additional, possibly slower reports. This enhancement can improve the performance of scheduled MSCI reports. It does not affect the process or performance of ad-hoc MSCI reports.

The enhancement adds a MSCI execution type that controls primary and secondary execution of the MSCI batch jobs. All reports with primary execution are executed in a first batch job and returned when they are finished. The position details file is included in primary execution which means that all downstream reporting functionality is available at this time. The secondary batch jobs are executed and returned subsequently.

Note that this does not reduce the complete time for all reports to be created; it merely gives you the opportunity to prioritize some of the reports and have them returned before the others get executed.

A default standard execution type which does not use the added execution type remains available for setups without prioritization. No conversion is necessary for existing setups.

To set up the priority for MSCI reports in batch jobs:

1. In the **MSCI Templates Definition** window:
 - A. Load the appropriate setup.
 - B. Enter the desired priority per report in the **MSCI execution group** field. For example, enter **1** for primary reports and **2** and **3** for secondary reports. You can only have one primary group, so give all primary reports the same group value.
2. In the **Batch Jobs** window, create one batch job setup for each **MSCI execution group** number and schedule them for primary or secondary execution:
 - A. Set the **Batch task** field to **Risk Measurement - Execute**.
 - B. Set the **MSCI execution type** parameter:
 - For primary execution, including the position details file, select **MSCI Primary Execution**.
 - For secondary execution of subsequent groups, select **MSCI Secondary Execution**.
 - C. Set the **MSCI execution group** parameter to the number of the desired execution group.
 - D. Fill in the remaining fields as usual.
3. In the **Batch Jobs** window, you can optionally create a batch job with **Batch task** set to **Risk Measurement - MSCI File Exchange**.
4. In the **Batch Job Groups** window, create a setup which first executes the primary batch job and then all the secondary batch jobs. If configured, include the file exchange batch job where appropriate.

As a result, you can show the report data in the **Risk Measurement > View MSCI Audit** sub-window and in the **Risk Analysis Manager** on the **MSCI key ratios** tab, as usual.

5.3.3 Patched from 19.01

5.3.3.1 Enhanced instrument coverage in MSCI reporting [6.4] [6.41]

As of version 19.01, you get better instrument coverage in MSCI reporting, thanks to enhancements to various MSCI reporting models.

In the Generic Bond model

1. The last strikable date from the **Puts/Calls - Bonds** sub-window has been added. This is the latest date in either the **To date** column or the **Date** column, whichever is later.

For example, if the latest date in the **To date** column is **22-07-2026** and there is no later date in the **Date** column, the date is included inside the **<callProvisions>** date as

```
<lastStrikableDate>
<explicitDate>20260722</explicitDate>
</lastStrikableDate>
```

2. SimCorp Dimension automatically now generates a discount curve name for all of these instruments when traded in the **Trade Manager**:
 - Interest rate swaps, basis
 - Interest rate swaps, fixed/float
 - Cross currency swaps, basis
 - Cross currency swaps, fixed/fixed
 - Cross currency swaps, fixed/float

The name consists of the abbreviated currency of the leg + the word "Swap".

For example, a swap with a EUR leg includes the curve name

```
<discountCurve>EUR Swap</discountCurve>
```

If the **Mapping Definition** setup, on the **MSCI Market Data Mapping** tab, has an entry where the **MSCI market data name** field is set to **DiscountCurve**, this value will override the automatic name.

3. The Generic Bond model now covers interest rate swaps and cross-currency swaps with float/float legs as you can capture them in Trade Manager.

In the Bond Future model

1. The conversion factor for bond forwards has been added. This is the factor to convert the clean price of the underlying bond to the price of the future. It is a positive number. If omitted or blank, it defaults to 1.

For example, it is included as

```
<conversionFactor>65</conversionFactor>
```

To add the field value to the position, add the value to an applicable setup in the **MSCI Override** window.

2. The discount curve spread for bond forwards has been added. This is the parallel shift that is applied to the discount curve for discounting purposes in basis points. A positive value means raising the discount curve, a negative number lowers it.

For example, it is included as

```
<discountCurveSpread>10</discountCurveSpread>
```

To add the field value to the position, add the value to an applicable setup in the **MSCI Override** window.

In the Equity Swap model

The value of the **Reset frequency** field in the **Funding leg** section of the **Trade Manager** has been added. The value is retrieved from the **Term unit** and **Term length** values in the **Reference Rates Definitions** setup that is assigned to the **Floating Rate Index Tenors** setup which is referenced in the **Funding leg** section.

For example, a 1-year reset frequency is included inside the **<InterestRateLeg>** tag as

```
<referenceFrequency>annual</referenceFrequency>
<referenceTerm>1Y</referenceTerm>
```

In the Swaption model

SimCorp Dimension automatically generates a reference curve name for swaptions. The name consists of the abbreviated QC of the underlying swap + the word "Swap".

For example, a swaption with a swap in EUR includes the curve name

```
<referenceCurve>EUR_Swap</referenceCurve>
```

If the **Mapping Definition** setup, on the **MSCI Market Data Mapping** tab, has an entry where the **MSCI market data name** field is set to **ReferenceCurve**, this value will override the automatic name.

In the Credit Swap Default model

- The **CDS Index Data** for CDS Index and Index Credit Default Swaps has been added.
- The **Par Coupon Yield Curve** to calculate the par coupon, if necessary, has been added.

To cover CDS Index (traded via the **Trade Manager**) and Index Credit Default Swaps with the Credit Default Swap model, open the **Mapping Definition** window on the **MSCI Proxy table** tab and set the **Assigned MSCI model** field to **Descriptive** for the selected Index CDS instruments. Without this setting, Index CDSs will be covered by the primary Credit Default Swap+ model.

5.3.3.2 Enhanced instrument coverage with MSCI Security Master Files [6.4] [6.41]

As of version 19.01, a new MSCI Security Master file enhances the coverage of previously unsupported instruments, such as XpressInstruments.

You can model positions of previously unsupported instruments with descriptions and tags in a Security Master file. A separate Master Definition setup ensures that the unsupported instruments get a unique **Priced security name** field value as part of the MSCI workflow.

To set up and create an MSCI Security Master file:

1. Manually configure the Security Master file:
 - A. Create the Security Master file which contains the fully modelled positions, based on MSCI specifications.
 - B. Save the file as an XML file in a folder which SimCorp Dimension can access.
2. Create a Security Master definition in the **MSCI Security Master Definition** window:
 - A. Create a new setup by filling in the **ID** and **Name** fields.
 - B. In the **Security selection** grid, enter the **Security ID** values for all instruments for which you want to provide information via the Security Master file.
 - C. Save the setup. This prompts SimCorp Dimension to create a unique **Priced security name** value per security. These names link the positions in the Position and Security Master files.
3. Update the Security Master file by adding the unique **Priced security name** values from the **MSCI Security Master Definition** setup to the corresponding **<pricedSecurityName>** tag in the XML file.

4. Upload the Security Master file to MSCI for processing in one of two ways:
 - A. For an automatic upload, ensure that the **Communication Server** is running and let it execute a batch job setup which is part of the MSCI interface installation package. This batch job will prompt the **Communication Server** to upload the Security Master position file and the corresponding control and metadata files to the MSCI FTP folder or a file port from where you can pass it on to MSCI. After processing, MSCI sends an output file for confirmation.

The **Communication Server** will queue the task to execute a corresponding **Risk Measurement** setup until it has received the matching MSCI output file and then start the execution automatically.

For more information, see the ***MSCI Interface Implementation Guide*** that is part of the MSCI interface package.
 - B. For a manual upload, transfer the Security Master position file and the corresponding control and metadata files manually to the MSCI FTP folder. After processing by MSCI, you receive an output file. You can then proceed with the Risk Measurement.

5. Assign the Security Master definition setup in the **Risk Measurement** window:
 - A. Load the setup for which you want to use an MSCI Security Master file.
 - B. Open the **Models > MSCI RiskMetrics > Settings** sub-tab, and assign the Master Definition setup you have just created in the **Security master definition** field.

As a result, the Risk Measurement file with .positions extension is updated. For each security in the Master Definition, this file contains a **holdingGroupList > holdingGroup > holdingList > holdings > pricedSecurityName** tag with the **Priced security name** value that has been generated in the Master Definition setup.

5.3.3.3 **Added fund decomposition path [6.4] [6.41]**

As of version 19.01, you can include and show the complete decomposition path to add transparency for multi-layered fund structures during a fund decomposition. This enhancement is available in two workflows:

- As part of the MSCI fund lookthrough
- As part of the fund decomposition in Risk Measurement

The decomposition path consists of the fund IDs from top to bottom, separated by a backslash character \ as delimiter. For example, suppose a portfolio contains FundA and you decompose that portfolio to at least three

levels. SimCorp Dimension would then show the decomposition path value for a third-level FundC as **FundA\FundB\FundC**.

This enhancement shows the nested fund structure that decomposed securities are part of, so you can assess and mitigate the counterparty and liquidity risks on each fund level. It also helps to comply with internal and external regulations which require reporting on fund and constituent levels. The previously available **Decomposed from** field shows only the top-level fund, but not the layered ownership structure.

To configure the inclusion of the decomposition path:

1. Ensure that the fund decomposition is set up properly in one of two ways:
 - A. Either set it up as part of the MSCI fund lookthrough. For instructions, see the "Set up Models > MSCI RiskMetrics > Settings tab" section of the **MSCI RiskMetrics Integration** user manual.
 - B. Or set it up as part of the fund decomposition on the **Risk Measurement > Positions** tab and ensure that your fund decomposition uses a **Decomposition Profiles** setup where **Split on decomposition path** check box is selected. For more instructions, see the **Risk Monitoring - Market Risk Setup** user manual.
2. As part of the MSCI fund lookthrough, create or edit an **MSCI Tags Definition** setup where a row in the **Tags selection** grid is configured as follows:
 - A. Assign a decomposition path label in the **Tag name** field.
 - B. Set the **Take value from** field to **Decomposition path**.
 - C. Set the **Level** field to **Holding**. Other level settings are not supported.

As a result after executing Risk Measurement, SimCorp Dimension includes decomposition path:

- In the **Decomposition path** field
 - In the **Risk Analysis Manager** on the **Holdings** tab
 - In the **Risk Measurement Holdings** window
 - In the **MSCI Audit** window, if MSCI reporting is active
- In an MSCI tag as a **CustomBucketValue** text string per holding under an assigned tag name, if MSCI reporting is active

The decomposition path is consistent with the results in the **Portfolio Calculation List** sub-window when you use the `getdecomppathtext()` formula function.

5.3.3.4 **Added Index Options and Warrants to MSCI Option+ model [6.4] [6.41]**

As of version 19.01, Options on Index and Covered Warrants with Index as underlying are available under the MSCI Option+ model in SimCorp Dimension. That means that the instrument is identified by the descriptive data, but the underlying instrument is described by the market identifier. Previously, these two instrument types required full modelling by the Equity Option model.

For more information, see the "Option+ model" section in the ***MSCI RiskMetrics Integration*** user manual.

6 Data

6.1 Alternative Investments

6.1.1 Allow entry-level alternative investments transactions

As of version 6.4, you can allow alternative investments transactions on non-booked **Entry** status level, so they do not yet impact holding balances. You can then raise the status level as for other transactions in SimCorp Dimension. Previously, you could enter position-based alternative investment transactions, such as capital payments, only on booked level.

To allow entry of position-based alternative investments transactions on non-booked status level, open the **Transaction Options** window on the **Options 5** tab and select the **Allow position based alternative investments transactions on low status** check box.

To enter a draft transaction, proceed as usual:

- In the **Administration > Alternative Investments > Capital Payments** window
- In the **Administration > Alternative Investments > Income and Expenses** window

6.1.2 Multi-GAAP accounting for flexible values [6.3-IMPL]

As of version 6.4, you can configure flexible values that impact cost or fees through different P/L frameworks. This allows you to use multi-GAAP accounting for amounts created for a flexible value. You can, for example, use this to include an amount as a cost in one GAAP, and as P/L in another GAAP.

To apply flexible values based on cost/tax, follow these steps:

1. Open the **Cost/Tax Definitions** window.
 - A. Enter a definition and select **Flexible value** in the **Type of cost** field.

2. To map the flexible value to a window, open **Map Costs to Windows**.

- A. Select a window where you will map the flexible values in the **Window** field. For alternative investments, you can select the following windows:

- **Alternative Investments - Capital Payments**
- **Alternative Investments - Buy/Sell Commitments**
- **Alternative Investments - Call/Return Capital**
- **Income and Expenses**

- B. Select your cost/tax definition in the **Cost** field.

Flexible value is automatically selected in the **Type of cost** field.

- C. Select **No default** in the **Cost default type** field.

3. Open the **Flexible Event** window.

- A. Enter a definition and select **Alternative Investments** in the **Instrument types** field.

- B. Select one or more flexible values in the **Flexible value** field.

- C. Select the cost/tax definition in the **Cost Multi-GAAP** field.

4. When you enter a transaction, for example, in the **Capital Payments** window, you can see the cost for the flexible value in the **Amount** field in the grid section. As you can see in the following example, the costs are also available in the **Costs and Taxes** sub-window:

The screenshot shows the 'Alternative Investments - Capital Payments' window. In the main grid, there is a transaction entry with fields like Security ID/No., Asset name, Position, Portfolio group/ID, Trans. type/subtype, Trade/Pmt.date, Capital, Settlement information, Quotation and portfolio values, and Main status. In the 'Costs and Taxes' sub-grid, two entries are listed: FLEXVALCOST01 and FLEXVALCOST02, each with columns for Value, Amount EC, Amount QC, and Amount PC.

| Cost | Cost name | Amount cost currency | FX rate cost/cy/QC | Currency | Amount quotation currency | Amount portfolio currency |
|--------------|------------------------|----------------------|--------------------|----------|---------------------------|---------------------------|
| 1 FLEX COST1 | Flexible Value link... | 168,00 | 1,000000 | DKK | 168,00 | 168,00 |
| 2 FLEX COST2 | Flexible Value link... | 84,00 | 1,000000 | DKK | 84,00 | 84,00 |
| 3 | | | | | | |
| 4 | | | | | | |
| 5 | | | | | | |
| 6 | | | | | | |
| 7 | | | | | | |
| 8 | | | | | | |
| 9 | | | | | | |

5. To view profit and loss amounts, open the **Profit/Loss** sub-window as shown in the following example. Use the arrows to view figures for other accounting frameworks.

The screenshot shows the 'Profit/Loss - Alternative Investments - Capital Payments' window. At the top, there are fields for Security ID/No. (CLL COST TAX 01), Leg No. (0), CLL COST TAX 01, Trans. No. (20180104000123), Fin. booked, Trans. flag, and Active status. Below this, Business Trans. is set to CapitalCall, and Elem. Trans. is CapCall. The Sign is Normal. The window displays 'Signed transaction values' including Nominal/Basis (15.000.000), Accrued interest QC/PC (0,00), Interest/dividend QC/PC (0,00), Accrued princ. reval. QC/PC (0,00), Principal revaluation QC/PC (0,00), and Payment QC/PC/SC (-123,00). Under 'Accounting framework and status dependent data', Accounting framework is set to MAIN, and Booking portfolio is CLL ALTINV. The table below lists signed amounts for various financial items:

| Field name | Amount quotation Ccy (DK) portfolio Ccy (DK) | Amount quotation Ccy (DK) portfolio Ccy (DK) | Signed amount quotation Ccy (DK) portfolio Ccy (DK) | Signed amount quotation Ccy (DK) portfolio Ccy (DK) | Bal. P/L |
|---------------------------|--|--|---|---|----------|
| 1 Booked current value | 375,00 | 375,00 | 375,00 | 375,00 | Bal |
| 2 Cost value | 375,00 | 375,00 | 375,00 | 375,00 | Bal |
| 3 Book value | 375,00 | 375,00 | 375,00 | 375,00 | Bal |
| 4 Amortised cost | 375,00 | 375,00 | 375,00 | 375,00 | Bal |
| 5 Book value unp. commit. | | 123,00 | | 123,00 | Bal |
| 6 | | | | | |
| 7 | | | | | |

6.1.3 Easier configuration of analytics

As of version 6.4, it is easier to configure the analytics that you can view in the **Alternative Investments Manager**. To configure analytics, select a **Position Calculation** and a **Reporting currency** in the **Alternative Investments - Calculation Engine Setup** window.

Previously, you had to configure analytics in the **Risk and Performance Analytics Configuration** window.

For more information, see the **Alternative Investments Manager** user manual.

Note

If you upgrade from version 6.3, your setups in the **Risk and Performance Analytics Configuration** window must be modified. You need to select between the new automatically exposed analytics that are available from Inception to date or

Year to date.

6.1.4 View figures from multiple accounting frameworks in the same widget

As of version 6.4, you can analyse accounting figures from several accounting frameworks (Local GAAP, IFRS9) in the same **Calculation Engine Analysis** widget in the **Alternative Investment Manager**.

To calculate analytics for multiple accounting frameworks, follow these steps:

1. Open the **Middle Office Calculation Manager**.
2. To open the **Position Calculation Definition** window, right click on **Open** in the **Position Calculation** applet.
3. Select the following check boxes on the **Analytics** tab:
 - Select the **Performance and alternative investments analytics** check box to calculate different alternative investment balances, multiples, and performance figures.
 - Select the **Accounting analytics** check box to calculate accounting figures.Select one or more frameworks in the **Additional Accounting Frameworks** field to calculate accounting figures for one or more frameworks.

Note

Only accounting figures are calculated in several frameworks. Other analytics (such as ownership % and cash flows) are based on the **Nominal framework** on the **Settings** tab in the **Position Calculation Definition** window. Therefore, it is recommended to select **NOMINALAGR** in the **Nominal frameworks** field and to add additional P/L frameworks in the **Additional accounting frameworks** field on the **Analytics** tab.

6.1.5 View total paid-in and total distributed standard balances

As of version 6.4, you can view the following new standard balances in the **Alternative Investments Manager**. They are available in Inception to Date (ITD) and Year to Date (YTD) formats:

- **Total paid-in:** The total amount paid into the investment (including fees and expenses inside the commitment, as well as contributions from previous owners from secondary sales).

$$\sum_{t=r}^T \text{Total paid-in capital}_t \times X_t + \sum_{t=r}^T \text{Flexible event amounts that affect Total paid-in capital}_t \times X_t$$

- **Total distributed:** The total amount earned by the investment (including coupons, interest, and amounts paid from the alternative investment fund) and any return of capital.

$$\sum_{t=r}^T \text{Return of capital}_t \times X_t + \sum_{t=r}^T \text{Proceeds} \times X_t + \sum_{t=r}^T \text{Flexible event amounts that affect total distributed}_t \times X_t$$

Both figures are calculated based on existing standard balances, which can be adjusted by using flexible events. This allows you to include, for example, contributions from previous owners during secondary sales.

To view the new analytics, you need to recalculate your positions, in the **Position Calculation - Middle Office Calculation Manager**, since inception of the first holding.

6.1.6 View additional multiples to measure investment performance

New standard multiples for alternative investments (together with IRR and other performance figures) allow you to get a realistic insight into the performance of your investments.

As of version 6.4, you can view the following new multiples in the **Alternative Investments Manager**:

- **Investment multiple:** Reflects the total performance of the investment. This shows the total value of the investment compared to the amount paid. It is calculated as the sum of unrealised and realised cash divided by the cash paid since inception.

$$\text{Investment multiple}_T = \frac{\text{Dirty total value}_T \times X_T + \sum_{t=0}^T (\text{Cash received}_t \times X_t)}{\sum_{t=0}^T (\text{Cash paid}_t \times X_t)}$$

- **Realised multiple:** Reflects the performance of the investment. This shows the amount of cash that was received compared to the amount of cash that was paid. This shows how successful an investment has been in paying back money to the investors. It is calculated as the cash received divided by the cash paid since inception.

$$\text{Realised multiple}_T = \frac{\sum_{t=0}^T (\text{Cash received}_t \times X_t)}{\sum_{t=0}^T (\text{Cash paid}_t \times X_t)}$$

- **Unrealised multiple:** Reflects the performance of the investment. This shows the amount of cash that was paid compared to the unrealised value. It is calculated as the current unrealised capital divided by the cash paid since inception.

$$\text{Unrealised multiple}_T = \frac{\text{Dirty value total}_T \times X_T}{\sum_{t=0}^T (\text{Cash paid}_t \times X_t)}$$

To view the new analytics, you need to recalculate your positions in the **Position Calculation - Middle Office Calculation Manager** since inception of the first holding.

6.1.7 View additional multiples to measure fund performance

New standard multiples for fund investments allow you to measure how a fund is performing. It is mandatory to disclose this performance multiple in regular reports according to CFA Institute's Global Investment Performance Standards (GIPS). This is reported in the currency of the fund.

As of version 6.4, you can view the following new multiples in the **Alternative Investments Manager**:

- **Total value to paid-in (TVPI):** The sum of all paid-in capital to the fund. The ratio is calculated as the sum of the realised and unrealised returns, divided by the amount invested since inception.

$$TVPI_T = DPI_T + RVPI_T = \frac{\sum_{t=0}^T (\text{Total distributed}_t \times X_t) + \text{Dirty value total}_T \times X_T}{\sum_{t=0}^T (\text{Total paid-in capital}_t \times X_t)}$$

- **Residual value to paid-in (RVPI):** The ratio between the current unrealised returns for the fund investment and the amount paid in since inception. This is also called the unrealised multiple.

$$RVPI_T = \frac{\text{Dirty value total}_T \times X_T}{\sum_{t=0}^T (\text{Total paid-in capital}_t \times X_t)}$$

- **Distributed to paid-in (DPI):** Shows how much of the total paid-in capital for the fund investment that has been returned to the investors. This is also called the realised multiple. This is calculated as distributions divided by paid-in capital since inception.

$$DPI_T = \frac{\sum_{t=0}^T (\text{Total distributed}_t \times X_t)}{\sum_{t=0}^T (\text{Total paid-in capital}_t \times X_t)}$$

- **Paid-in to commitment (PIC):** Measures the degree of investment into an asset. This is the general investment rate, which shows you how close the fund is to having called all of the committed amount. It is calculated as the total paid-in capital since inception divided by the commitment. This is also called paid-in capital to commitment (PICC).

$$\text{PIC}_{0,T}^i = \frac{\sum_{t=0,T}^N \text{Total paid-in capital}_t^i}{\text{Commitment}_t^i}$$

6.1.8 Calculate custom multiples

As of version 6.4, you can configure your own custom multiples in the **Alternative Investment Manager**.

In the new **Analytics Editor** window, you can configure custom multiples of type:

- **Gross realised multiple**
- **Gross unrealised multiple**
- **Gross investment multiple**

Via custom analytics you can specify which amounts (such as costs, taxes, and fees) to include or exclude in the calculation of the custom multiple.

For more information, see the **Alternative Investments Manager** user manual.

6.1.9 View position calculation results

As of version 6.4, you can access position calculation results from the **Calculation Engine Analysis** widget in the **Alternative Investment Manager**.

To view position calculation results, follow these steps:

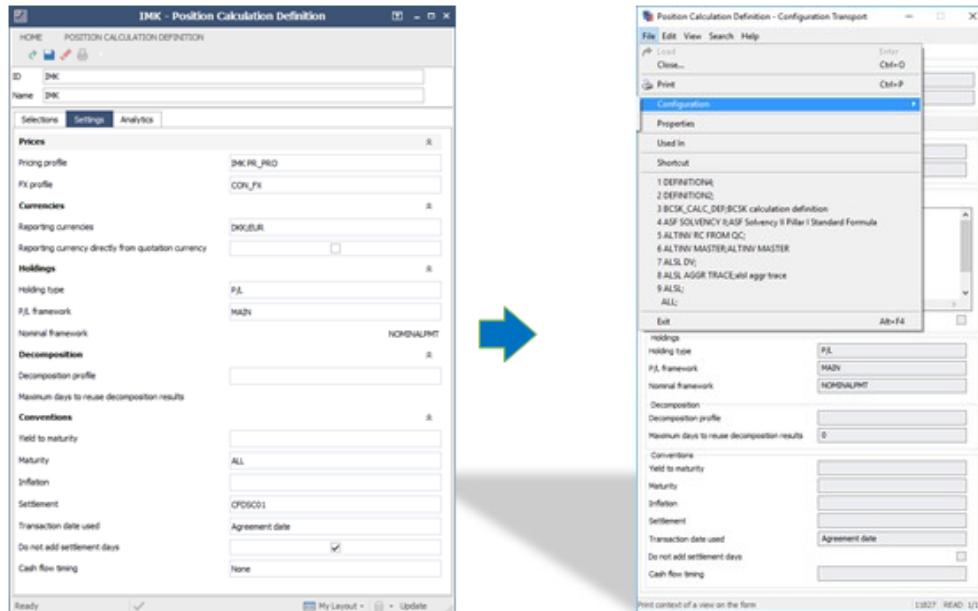
1. Open the **Calculation Engine Analysis** widget from a landing page in the **Alternative Investments Manager**.
2. Right-click on an amount field and select **View position results**.
3. SimCorp Dimension will drill down to the figures calculated by the **Position Calculation** for the relevant position.

6.1.10 Configuration transport for middle office configurations

As of version 6.4, you can export/import configurations for the **Position Calculation Definition** and the **Middle Office Analytics Definition** window. For that purpose, you can use two new windows for the export/import configuration:

- **Position Calculation Definition - Configuration Transport**
- **Middle Office Analytics Definition - Configuration Transport**

These windows can be used to mass export or import configurations. This makes it easier to deploy data to several environments.



6.2 FX

6.2.1 Support for FX NDF in static data [6.3.1-IMPL]

As of version 6.4, support has been improved for FX NDF (non-deliverable forward) in SimCorp Dimension. You can now clearly identify an FX forward instrument as an FX NDF when working with static data or transactions.

When entering static data or creating templates, select the new **FX NDF** check box in the **FX Spots, Forwards, and Swaps** static data window or the **Templates - FX Spots, Forwards, and Swaps** window. You can only select the **FX NDF** check box for an FX forward. The check box is closed for input for FX spots and FX swaps.

You can select or clear the **FX NDF** check box on both securities and templates, but only for securities with no transactions.

You can clearly see when you are creating a transaction for an FX NDF security in the **Dealer FX Forwards** window; the **FX NDF** check box is available here, too. When creating a transaction for an FX NDF security, you must

- Provide a last fixing date in the **Last fixing date** field.
- Select either **Base currency** or **Price currency** in the **Exp.** field (the expected FX settlement method).

The FX NDF check box is also visible in the following windows, but only as information to clearly identify the security as an FX NDF:

- **Prolong FX Forwards**
- **Partial Maturity FX Outrights**
- **Maturity FX Outrights**
- **View Transactions**
- **Transaction Status**
- **Create FX Transactions**

For more information about creating FX NDF orders in either the **Portfolio Orders** window or the **Simulations** applet in Asset Manager, see [Distinguish between FX forward and FX NDF orders](#).

6.2.2 Simplified calculation of the quotation portfolio FX rate

As of version 6.4, SimCorp Dimension retrieves the quotation portfolio FX rates (referred to as FX rate QP) directly from the FX rates table. This simplifies the functionality used in earlier versions where FX rate QP was calculated as a combination of the rate between quotation currency and price currency and the rate between price currency and portfolio currency.

If you want to use the earlier functionality, open the **Transaction Options** window and go to the **Price Types and FX** tab. Select the new **FX options - calculated FX rate QP via price currency** check box.

If you want to use the new, simplified functionality, you do not have to take any action. The check box is cleared by default.

6.2.3 Added OTC ISIN and CFI codes to FX trades (MiFID II) [6.3-IMPL] [6.31-IMPL]

OTC ISIN and CFI codes are classifications that are a part of the allocation message for FX instruments from Order Manager or an external order management system. As part of the support for MiFID II, you can now view this information on the **Trade Identifiers** tab of **Additional Data** sub-windows on the dealer windows for FX forwards, FX swaps, and FX spots. The **OTC ISIN** and **CFI code** fields are available in the new **Classifications and codes** section on that tab. If those fields contain data prior to receiving allocation messages, they are not overwritten with the new data.

6.2.4 Use yield curves from the pricing definition for theoretical pricing of legs on FX options or forwards [6.2-IMPL] [6.3-IMPL] [6.3.1-IMPL]

You can now use yield curves from the pricing definitions or from the static data when performing theoretical pricing of the legs on FX options or forwards. Previously, you could only use the yield curves from the static data.

Multilegged instruments like FX forwards and options are priced by leg because the legs are in different positions and might require different pricing profiles, and so on. This is why pricing calculations have previously depended on the yield curves from the static data for the legs.

- If you specify yield curves in your yield curve mapping, those curves will be used in the pricing. Yield curves specified in the yield curve mapping always have priority over those in the static data.
- If you do not specify yield curves in the yield curve mapping – intentionally or otherwise, the yield curves from the static data are used.

6.3 Market Data

6.3.1 Enhanced smoothness for monotone convex interpolation [6.3-IMPL]

You can now define the smoothness parameter for monotone convex interpolation methods.

You can define a smoothness parameter in a range from 0 to 1 with a limit of seven decimal points. If you use a smoothness parameter of 0, that means that no smoothness is applied. The default parameter is 0.2 in SimCorp Dimension. This is the recommended setting for monotone convex interpolation as described in the Hagan and West article [Interpolation Methods for Curve Construction](#) (external link) (Applied Mathematical Finance, Vol. 13, No. 2, 89-129, June 2006).

You define the smoothness parameter in the **Smoothness** field in the **Monotone convex interpolation** section of the **Yield Curve Manager** window. This field is only open for input when the **Interpolation** field is set to either **Monotone convex** or **Monotone convex, pos. forw.** methods, which were added in SimCorp Dimension version 6.3.

For more information about using the monotone convex interpolation method, see the eLearning lessons available in the SimCorp eLearning Portal. For more information about the eLearning Portal, see your SimCorp representative.

6.3.2 Valuation and analytics for loan facilities

As of version 6.4, SimCorp Dimension supports theoretical valuation using bond-like valuation models for all Private Debt instrument types. The valuation is done at the instrument level, that is, at the loan facility level.

Theoretical pricing is discounting the cashflow, that is, the redemption amount plus coupon amount to get the net present value as explained in the following equation:

$$\text{clean price} = \text{qf} \times \left(\frac{\text{npv}}{\text{global commitment}} + \frac{\text{unfunded-acr}}{\text{nominal}} \right)$$

Where

- qf is the quote factor
- npv is the net present value
- acr is the accrued interest QC

To support the yield to maturity (YTM) key ratios, the **YTM convention** field was added to the **Market Conventions** sub-window on the **Loan Facilities** static data window.

The **Explain Calculation** functionality was also implemented for these key ratios. You enable the functionality in the **Portfolio Calculation** window. Then, when you right-click on a position in the **Portfolio Calculation List** sub-window and select **Explain Calculation**, you can see the calculation details explained in a detailed spreadsheet.

The new key ratios supported for valuation and analytics of loan facilities are described in the following table:

| Key ratio | Description |
|------------------------------|---|
| Dollar Duration YC | Dollar duration is the sensitivity of the instrument price to a shift of the discounting yield curve, fixing yield curve, or repo yield. In SimCorp Dimension, it is the amount of spot position to trade in to hedge the position, in portfolio/quotation/reporting currency. |
| Modified Dollar Duration YC | Measure of the relative change in the instrument price, caused by a 1% absolute shock (parallel shift) to the discounting yield curve, fixing yield curve, or repo yield, used for instrument pricing. |
| Dollar Duration YTM | Sensitivity of the instrument price to a shift of the flat yield-to-maturity (YTM) curve. In SimCorp Dimension, it is shown as the amount of spot position to trade in to hedge the position, in portfolio/quotation/reporting currency. |
| Modified Dollar Duration YTM | Measure of the relative change in the instrument price, caused by a 1% absolute shock to YTM yield of the instrument. |
| Duration YTM | The effective maturity of the bond, given in the terms of average life of the present values of all future cash flows. In sensitivity terms, it is a measure of the relative change in the instrument price, caused by a 1% relative shock to YTM yield of the instrument. |
| YTM yield | Constant yield-to-maturity that fixes the dirty price to the present value of all future cash flows. |

| Key ratio | Description |
|-------------------------------|--|
| Dollar Convexity YTM | Sensitivity of the instrument's yield in response to a change in price. It is calculated from a second-order central approximation that is constructed using a Taylor expansion of a feasible order. In SimCorp Dimension, it is shown as the sensitivity of the instrument's yield in response to a change in price in portfolio/quotation/reporting currency. |
| Modified Dollar Convexity YTM | Measure of a relative change in instrument's yield caused by a 1% absolute shock to YTM yield of the instrument. |
| Dollar Convexity YC | Sensitivity of the instrument's yield in response to a change in price. It is calculated from a second-order central approximation that is constructed using a Taylor expansion of a feasible order. In SimCorp Dimension, it is shown as the sensitivity of the instrument's yield in response to a change in price in portfolio/quotation/reporting currency. |
| Modified Convexity YC | Measure of a relative change in an instrument's yield caused by a 1% absolute shock (parallel shift) to the discounting yield curve. |
| Delta vector | A delta vector displays the relative change on a position due to a shift of a specified number of basis points. |
| Modified delta vector | A delta vector modified by exposure. |
| WAL | Weighted average life |
| YTM | Yield to maturity |
| YTM_SEC | Second YTM |
| Convexity YTM | Convexity based on the YTM. |
| Delta interest rate YC | Delta interest rate based on the yield curve in portfolio/quotation currency. |
| Delta interest rate YTM | Delta interest rate based on yield to maturity in portfolio/quotation currency. |

| Key ratio | Description |
|-----------------------------|--|
| Price value of yield change | The change in price when the yield changes one percent point. Both positive and negative values are permitted. |
| Yield value of price change | The change in yield when the price changes one percent point. |
| Theta (all) | The sensitivity of the price with respect to a change in time to maturity. The shock size is 1 day (adjusted for business days). |

6.3.3 Added support for the MTM (mark-to-market) variant of CCS trades

As of version 6.4, the **Theoretical pricing, CTD collateral** price method handles MTM (mark-to-market) variants for cross-currency swaps (CCS). The instruments affected by this enhancement are:

- Cross-currency swap, float/float, including MTM resets
- Cross-currency swaps, fixed/float, including MTM resets

This enhancement also enables the pricing of IR swap, basis, and other types of floating swaps in SimCorp Dimension.

This enhancement is available only for collateralised OTC swap agreements because the calculation is based on the eligible currencies attached to the collateral pool of the position. The price method finds the cheapest-to-deliver (CTD) collateral currency, and the yield curve data (discount or fixing) associated with the currency is used in the theoretical pricing.

The discounting yield curve is taken from the **Collateral Discount Curve Mapping** window. A fixing yield curve is needed for determining the cash flow for the floating part of a swap. This fixing yield curve can be specified in either the **Fixing yield curve** or the **Yield curve surface** fields in the **Yield Curve Mapping** window. The yield curve, which is used for forecasting future FX rates as well as discounting the cash flows, is taken from the **Collateral Discount Curve Mapping** window. When no fixing data is available, the discounting yield curve is used.

When retrieving the FX rate for cross-currency swaps, the second leg is always considered the reset leg. When forecasting future FX rates while using MTM, you take the discounting yield curve from the opposite leg (not the reset leg) into account. The rate is taken from the FX rates table on the analysis date and is only retrieved for the MTM variant of the CCS instruments.

You specify a cross-currency trade as an MTM cross-currency trade in the **Trade Manager** by selecting the **Intermediate exchange (MTM)** field in the **Trade Information** section.

The pricing results are available as usual in the **Explain Price** window on the portfolio calculation and on the **CTD Calculation** tab of the **Explain Calculation** spreadsheet. Due to this enhancement, you can see the calculations of futures FX rates on the **CTD Calculation** sheet.

Previously, this price method only supported IR swaps, fixed/float in the **Trade Manager**. IR swaps, fixed/fixed are not supported.

6.3.4 Patched from 19.01

6.3.4.1 Support for stochastic local volatility models [6.3] [6.31] [6.4] [6.41]

As of version 19.01, there are three new pricing models based on stochastic local volatility (SLV) for handling FX and equity products:

- Heston Equity local volatility - Monte Carlo
- Heston FX local volatility - Monte Carlo
- Heston - local volatility - FX/equity multi-underlying

You use these models in the **XpressInstrument Pricing Model Manager** window.

Heston Equity local volatility - Monte Carlo and Heston FX local volatility - Monte Carlo

These two new pricing models are identical to the Heston - Monte Carlo pricing model except for the leverage volatility surface, that is, the local volatility element.

A new parameter for both the **Heston Equity local volatility - Monte Carlo** model and the **Heston FX local volatility - Monte Carlo** model is the mixing fraction weight in percent.

- At 0%, the mixing fraction is pure local volatility.
- At 100%, the mixing fraction is pure Heston.

You need to adjust the mixing fraction manually as needed.

A new collaboration parameter for both pricing models on the **Calibration** tab is **Leverage surface**. The leverage surface lists the calibrated volatilities across strikes across multiple dates.

With the cursor in the field for the leverage surface, you can press CTRL + F2 to show the data for the entire surface. Alternatively, you can select the **Explain calibration** check box on the **Calibration** tab so that you get all the results in a spreadsheet. The spreadsheet contains all the details for the calibrated leverage surface, the calibrated instruments, calibration results, and input parameters in a format that can easily be used for reporting.

Heston - local volatility - FX/equity multi-underlying

This pricing model is designed for use with multiple FX or equity underlyings. This pricing model enables correct pricing, sensitivities, and risk values for variance swap variants with multiple underlyings, such as corridor variance swaps and basket variance swaps. This pricing model also lets you price complex structures, where, for example, a corridor is based on an FX rate observable, but the primary observable is an equity price.

To handle multiple underlyings with different definitions, the new **XpressInstrument Pricing Model Mapping** window was created. When you create a definition with the new **Heston - local volatility - FX/equity multi-underlying** pricing model, you map the definition to the ID of the group of multiple underlyings in the **XpressInstrument Pricing Model Mapping** window instead. You map the definition in the new **Model mapping** field on the **Definition** tab of the **XpressInstrument Pricing Model Manager** window.

The grids for calibration instruments on the **XpressInstrument Pricing Model Manager** window are empty and you do not perform calibrations on the **Calibration** tab when you use the **Heston - local volatility - FX/equity multi-underlying** pricing model. Each of the underlyings that are mapped to your definition have their own pricing model definition.

To complete the configuration for this pricing model for multiple underlyings, you must define the correlation between the direct observables and the indirect observables in the **Market Observables** window and the **Observable Correlations** window. The correlations between the different underlyings are market data, and not model parameters.

6.4 Reference Data

6.4.1 Added a new portfolio segment for structuring authorisations according to status codes [6.31-IMPL]

To improve authorisation security and eliminate operational risk, you can now use a new portfolio segment to group combinations of portfolios that have the same status code group identifier. The new segment is a status code group. You create status code groups in the new **Status Code Groups** window and then use those segments via the new **Status code group** field in the five existing status code group windows:

- **Transaction Status Code Groups**
- **Dealer Order Status Code Groups**
- **Direct Order Status Code Groups**
- **Portfolio Order Status Code Groups**
- **Program Trade Status Code Groups**

Previously, you could define and restrict status-level setting authorisations only at the portfolio, portfolio group, and fund levels.

Note

This functionality is primarily for use where you have only one portfolio master. The portfolios cannot be in different portfolio masters.

When you create configurations in one of the five status code group windows, you must decide whether to specify a status code group or portfolio-related information in your setup. You can only select one of the following two options for a given setup ID:

- Fill in the **Status code group** field, and the portfolio-related fields—the **Portfolio group** field, the **Fund** field, and the **Portfolio** field—are closed for input.
- Fill in one or more of the portfolio-related fields—the **Portfolio group** field, the **Fund** field, and the **Portfolio** field—, and the **Status code group** field is closed for input.

After you define a setup ID that uses the **Status code group** field, you can specify this information on a portfolio.

1. Open the **Portfolios > Extra Information** sub-window, and click on the **Info2** tab.
2. In the **Portfolio authorisation group** section, select a status code group in the **Status code group** field.
3. This portfolio will now have the status access as defined in the status code group window.

6.4.2 New batch task for cleaning up external fund decompositions [6.3.1-IMPL]

You can now clean up external fund decompositions with a new **Cleanup Old Fund Decomposition Components** batch task.

The new batch task cleans up external fund decomposition components that you see in the **Fund Decomposition Components** window.

When setting up this new batch task in the **Batch Jobs** window, the only parameter you need to provide is a date. All the records for dates before the date you provide in the **Delete older than** field are deleted.

The batch task called **Generic Decomposition - Delete old components** deletes technical records generated by SimCorp Dimension, whereas this new batch task deletes imported or manually entered market data.

6.5 **Securities**

6.5.1 **Improved the modify and delete workflow for internal trades**

As of version 6.4, an improved modify and delete workflow adds transparency to P/L transactions in internal trades. In SimCorp Dimension, you can have an internal trade that introduces deferred profit/loss realisation transactions. These deferred P/L realisation transactions are identified by the transaction code **ReaDPL**.

- If you delete that internal trade before the deferred P/L transaction lifecycle ends, SimCorp Dimension will list all of the transactions with the transaction code **ReaDPL** that are related to the affected internal trade and then delete them. This applies to both manual deletions and deletions in the **Transaction Status** window.
- If you modify such an internal trade and save your work, SimCorp Dimension will provide a message listing all the affected transactions and then delete them. You can then recreate those deferred P/L transactions by running a procedure in the **Create Deferred Profit/Loss Realisation Transactions** window.

6.5.2 **Enhanced functionality in External Client Trades and Deal Allocation [6.3.1-IMPL]**

As of version 6.4, the enhanced **External Client Trades** and **Deal Allocation** windows synchronise their functionality with other dealer windows.

- The **Transaction Events** icon was added to the toolbar of both the **Deal Allocation** window and the **External Client Trades** window. The icon is a shortcut to the **Transaction Events** dialog box where you can see a list of any transaction events along with their related comments. The source of this information is the **Transaction events** section on the **Workflow** tab of the **Additional Data** sub-window.
- The **Underlying and Conversion** sub-window (the **Index Certificate Values** menu item) was added to both the **Deal Allocation** window and the **External Client Trades** window.
- The **Actual Settlement** sub-window was added to the **External Client Trades** window.

6.5.3 **Changed the maturity date for perpetual bonds to synchronise with Bloomberg and WM**

As of version 6.4, SimCorp Dimension uses a new maturity date of 31 December 2199 for perpetual bonds. This applies regardless of whether dates are available in the **1st coupon payment** or the **1st coupon from** fields on the **Bonds** static data window. If dates are available in those fields, the day and month is used, but the year is replaced with 2199. This new maturity date is then used in pricing and yield calculations and can be seen in the **Explain Calculation** spreadsheet.

Note

There is no conversion program for perpetual bonds already in your installation prior to version 6.4. New bonds will use this new maturity date. However, if you modify an existing bond after upgrading to version 6.4, the bond will get the new maturity date from 2199 when you save your changes.

This enhancement handles the recent changes to the maturity date made by the data providers Bloomberg and WM Datenservice. Bloomberg now uses a rolling maturity date of 149 years from the settlement date. WM Datenservice uses a fixed maturity date of 2166 for these bonds.

6.5.4 Patched from 6.41

6.5.4.1 Added additional MiFID II information to the Fills window [6.3-IMPL] [6.31-IMPL] [6.4-IMPL]

As of version 6.41, there is enhanced support for MiFID II transaction reporting of trading scenarios so that you can:

- Ensure the unique identification of a fill even if execution IDs are reused over time
- Link the fills that are part of an amend allocation workflow in Order Manager back to the original fills

Ensure unique identification of a fill

Brokers or trading platforms can reuse execution IDs over time so the combination of broker/execution ID on a transaction may not be unique. To ensure a unique identification of the fill, a placement ID was added to the **Fills** window. The placement ID is also included in a validation process to ensure that the combination of data in the following three fill identification fields is unique:

- **Trading platform/broker**
- **Trading platform/broker fill ID**
- **Placement ID** (new field in the **Fills** window)

In dealer windows for instruments where fills are supported, you can see the placement ID on the transactions. The **Placement ID** field is available on the **Order Manager Data** tab on the **Additional Data** sub-window of the dealer windows.

There is no placement ID for any existing fills in SimCorp Dimension prior to this upgrade.

Link the fills that are part of an amend allocation workflow in Order Manager back to the original fills

The original allocation ID and the reporting status were added to the transaction in the **Fills** window. This additional information helps to ensure the correct identification of the original fills of an amended transaction and to prepare, where applicable, for further handling of amendments in the reporting workflows.

The new fields in the **Fills** window related to amendments or allocations are:

- **Original allocation ID** field—The original allocation ID is on the transaction in Order Manager. This information is needed to enable correct MiFID II reporting in the Order Manager amend allocation workflow. If there is an amendment of an allocation in the Order Manager, you can easily identify the fills of the original allocation with this ID.

In dealer windows where fills are supported, you can see the original allocation ID on the transactions. The **Original allocation ID** field is available on the **Order Manager Data** tab on the **Additional Data** sub-window of the dealer windows.

- **Reporting status** field—The reporting status of the fill is also included in the **Fills** window together with the original allocation ID. If the fills are changed or will be changed as a part of an amend allocation process, the reporting status can specify what action could be taken with that transaction information after such a change.

6.5.5 Patched from 19.01

6.5.5.1 Allocate MBS from multiple issuers to the same TBA contract [6.3-IMPL] [6.31-IMPL] [6.4-IMPL] [6.41]

Both TBA and US Pool instruments have a product code, which plays a fundamental role for identification. Historically, the product code had a 1:1 relationship with the issuer of the contract: only pools with the same issuer (product code) could be delivered against a TBA. A new product code that allows multiple issuers (multiple product codes) is coming in the new regulation, Single Security Initiative (SSI), scheduled for Q2 2019. The new product code is called Unified Mortgage-Backed Securities, which is shortened to Uniform MBS or UMBS. Fannie Mae and Freddie Mac, the creators of the SSI, are the two issuers that are assigned to the UMBS product code.

With the one product code, UMBS, the two issuers, Fannie Mae and Freddie Mac, can "unify" their securities under one product code. When a TBA reaches its settlement date, a delivery of US Pools can be a combination of two issuers that all use the product code UMBS.

As of version 19.01, SimCorp Dimension supports the UMBS product code, which means that you can allocate MBS from multiple issuers to the same

TBA contract. The issuer is also related to the agency. You can see the details about the two issuers on the one product code in the **MBS Product Codes** window.

You can see the enhancements for this feature in the **TBA Allocation** window.

- When you select a product code to begin TBA allocation, pressing F4 to display product codes also includes the issuer and agency for each product code now.
- When you click the **Inventory** button in the **Allocation** section, you open the **Pool Inventory** sub-window where you can see the information about issuers and agencies.

The **Issuer** field was added to the pool inventory table for this purpose. At the same time, the **Agency** field was moved from the **Inventory selection** section to the table so you can see the issuer and agency combination for each pool number.

6.5.5.2 Additional enhancements for MiFID II processing for fills [6.3] [6.31] [6.4] [6.41]

As of version 19.01, you can see the status of a given fill in the reporting pool when viewing fill details in the **Fills** window. The status is shown in the new **Fill status for reporting pool** field and is updated when data is extracted to the reporting pool. The reporting status is used in the reporting pool logic to avoid double reporting of fills when multiple transactions are linked to the same fills.

Support for the amend allocation workflow has also been improved. If you make changes in the **Order Manager Amend Allocations** window, the original fills are now marked as deleted in the **Fills** window for the amended allocations. SimCorp Dimension detects allocation amendments in the fill transfer batch job and marks the original fills for deletion. This ensures that the correct fills are reported. You can see which original allocations have their status set to **Deleted** in the **Status** field in the **Fills** window.

6.5.5.3 Enabled changes on the static data for loan facilities - Private Debt [6.3] [6.31] [6.4] [6.41]

As of version 19.01, you can change the static data for a loan facility even after transactions have been created on that loan facility, as long as the existing transactions do not depend on the data that you want to change. This applies to the **General information** and **Facility characteristics** sections of the **Loan Facilities** static data window. Previously, strict data validations by SimCorp Dimension would prevent you from making changes to the static data in these sections. The data validations are now less strict as long as the change has no impact on calculation data.

For example, you might want to change the availability start and end dates because you made a buy trade in the **Trade Manager** after trading in a secondary market.

You can also make changes to contracts in the grid on the **Contracts** tab, but only if there are no transactions on these contracts.

You have the responsibility to re-do the transactions after your changes are saved because the new changes will not update the existing transactions. You will receive a message with this reminder before your changes are actually saved.

6.6 Tools

6.6.1 [New module] Alerts web API

| | |
|-------------------------------------|--|
| Client Segment | All clients |
| Target Audience | All |
| Subscription based licensing | Included in the N/A (New sales module, only available for Pilot clients) subscription package. |
| Module-based Licensing | N/A |

The new Alerts web API allows you to create alerts in external applications and then import these alerts into SimCorp Dimension. In addition to this, you can also programmatically manage the workflow of existing data incident alerts in SimCorp Dimension with the Alerts API. As a result, all areas in SimCorp Dimension where alerts are used, for example compliance and reconciliation, will be dedicated to the new web API, which will be the future place holder for all alert types.

The screenshot shows the 'Alerts Inbox - Compliance Manager' application window. At the top, there's a toolbar with various icons for actions like Acknowledge, Assign, Due Date, Snooze, Close, Change Priority, Send Email, Add Link, Add Comment, and others. Below the toolbar is a navigation bar with tabs: HOME, ALERTS INBOX (which is selected), GRID, and COMMON. The main area contains a grid titled 'Alerts Inbox'. One row in the grid is highlighted, showing an 'Alert ID' of 309578 and an 'Alert group' of 'Data incident'. Below the grid, a detailed view of a specific alert is displayed. The alert is for a 'Data incident' related to 'Securities/ISIN 'ISINO134457''. The date of the incident is 08-03-2018 10:51:35. A table below the alert details shows three actions: 'Due Dat...', 'Assign...', and 'New', each with a timestamp and a user ('SERVER' or 'MSI'). The bottom of the window shows a status bar with 'Ready', a counter '324', and layout options.

At this stage, only Data incident alerts are supported, but more will come.

Benefits

- Enables API access to Alerts inbox
- Allows Front Office API users to raise issues related to wrong or missing data in a standard way integrated with existing SimCorp Dimension workflows.
- Ties users closer to SimCorp Dimension as missing static and reference data workflows can be managed without using email, IM, or phone calls, etc.

6.6.1.1 Added new web API for alerts

As of version 6.4, a new **Alerts** API has been added. This web API allows you to create alerts in external applications and then import these alerts from external applications into SimCorp Dimension. In addition, you can also programmatically manage the workflow of existing alerts in SimCorp Dimension with the **Alerts** API. As a result, all areas in SimCorp Dimension where alerts are used, for example compliance and reconciliation, will be exposed to the new web API, which will be the place holder for all alert types. Currently, data incident alerts are exposed by means of the **Alerts** API.

Previously, in version 6.31, data incident alerts were exposed via the **Front Office** API only. For any previous occurrences of OData entity types and actions related to data incidents, you must replace the **SimCorp.IMS.Compliance** namespace prefix with the **SimCorp.IMS.Alerts** prefix.

Instead of using the **LookUpDataIncidents** function, you must now use the OData query for the **DataIncidents** entity set, or the **DataIncidentsSelect** function via SOAP to retrieve the data.

For more information about authorisation, see [Authorise access to web API commands](#).

6.6.2 Log Gateway - email body and call script

| | |
|-------------------------------------|------------------------|
| Client segment | All clients |
| Target audience | System operation staff |
| Subscription based licensing | Foundations |
| Module-based licensing | Technical Base Module |

The email service based on log events is enhanced to be able to define the email body, including context from the log messages like user, machine

name, etc. This provides you with better options for handling deviations from expected outcomes of execution of services and/or batch jobs.

The screenshot shows the Business Rules Manager interface with a grid of rules and a detailed configuration pane on the right. The rule being edited is named 'SERVICE STARTED' and has the description 'Service started successfully'. It is triggered by a 'Log event' ('21 ... Service started'). The 'Enabled' dropdown is set to 'Simulation'. The configuration pane shows the condition 'And' followed by '[Context: Action] Does not equal Dummy'. The right side of the screen displays the recipient details (To: jwj@simcorp.com, Cc:), email settings (Sender: platform_tf_sof@simcorp.com, Subject: A service has started), and a list of available fields for scripting.

Another possibility is to call scripts and use the context from the log message as input for the scripts. Thereby it is possible to automate the handling of issues based on log event.

This screenshot shows another instance of the Business Rules Manager. The rule is named 'JWJ SCRIPT' with the description 'JWJ Script rule'. It is triggered by a 'Log event' ('21 ... Service started'). The 'Enabled' dropdown is set to 'Simulation'. The configuration pane shows the condition 'And' followed by '[Context: Machine name] Is like %d0%1%1736%' and '[Context: Service type] Equals Service stress test'. The right side of the screen shows the 'Scripts' field containing 'ShowMeJWJ.cmd' and the 'Arguments' field with a note about template field values.

6.6.2.1 Enhanced log gateway rules available in the Business Rules Manager

As of version 6.4, the log gateway functionality in the **Business Rules Manager** has been enhanced by improved functionality for log gateway email rules and a new log gateway rule for scripting.

As a result, you can now:

- Customise the body text of the email notification that will be triggered from the log event when you create log gateway email rules.

This means that you can customise the standard message that will be send out for a specific log event. You can use template fields in the body text where the values are extracted and inserted into the actual email notification. For more information, see the section **Create Log gateway rule for email** in the **Business Rules Manager** user manual.

- Define filters for property bag elements for each log event when you create log gateway email rules.

All filter elements related to property bags are listed as **.Property Bag: <name of property>**. You can specify zero or more property elements for each log event.

Note

The naming of the context elements related to the log messages has similarly been updated. This means that filters related to context elements are listed as **Context: <name of context>**, instead of just **<name of context>**. This makes it easy for you to distinguish between context filters and property bag filters.

- Create log gateway rules for scripting which can be triggered to run scripts related to particular log events.

You can specify, for example, that a specific script must be run when a certain log event occurs. It is possible to set up additional filters for your rule. The script will be run only if your log event matches the filters you have specified for it. For more information, see the section **Create Log gateway scripting rule** in the Business Rules Manager user manual.

6.6.3 Additional filters for Log gateway rules

As of version 6.4, **Message** and **Message type** filters were added for **Log gateway** email rules. These filters allow you to have more flexibility in filter configurations.

6.6.4 Added new option in Formula Editor

As of version 6.4, the **Formula Editor** window has been enhanced so that you can convert null values to zeros to get the correct result in arithmetic operations.

Previously, when you created formulas which included arithmetic operations returning null, you had to write conditional expressions to convert the null values to zero values. Now you need only to select the new **Treat null as zero in arithmetic operations** check box to obtain the same result. This check box is selected by default when you create new formulas, but cleared for existing formulas.

6.6.5 Converting a text string to a number

As of version 6.4, you can apply a new .NET formula function which converts text strings of numbers to the number they represent. This means that you can use the numeric value in calculations.

You can select the new formula function from the **Formulas.Net** window. For more information about using .NET formulas, see the **Formulas.Net** window help (open the window and press F1) and the **Tools** user manual.

New formulation function; ToNumber

| Formula function | Description | Parameters |
|------------------|---|-----------------------------|
| ToNumber | Converts a text string for a number, adhering to the SimCorp Dimension convention (no thousand separator, dot as decimal separator, macron (‐) as negative sign), to a numeric value. | Text value |
| ToNumber | Converts a text string for a number, adhering to the specified culture convention, denoted by a BCP 47 ID, to a numeric value. | Text value, Text culture |

6.6.6 Customise grid layout by grouping and hiding columns

As of version 6.4, you can customise how you want to view grid data in manager applications by grouping and hiding columns in grids.

Previously, you could only customise the grid layout in manager applications by adding or removing fields to the grid. With this enhancement, you can group columns in a grid which you can hide in a similar way to working with columns in, for example, Microsoft Excel.

For this purpose, two new icons are available when selecting fields to be displayed in a grid:

- A group icon that you must click to group selected fields.
- An ungroup icon that you must click to ungroup previously grouped fields.

You can create one or more groups in a grid. Please note the following when working with field groups in grids:

- When a group of fields are hidden in a grid, the fields will not be included in any calculations.
- When you have created a field group, you move all the fields in the group when you drag the column in the grid to another position or use the arrows to move a group field up or down from the **Selected Fields** section.

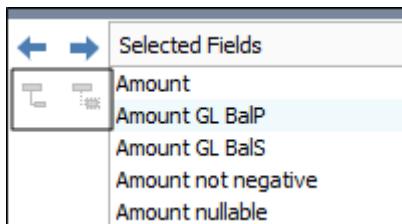
- When you deselect a field from the grid, the field will be removed from the group.

Grouping fields in a grid

To group fields:

- Open an applet with a grid.
- Right-click the column header and select the **Select Fields** menu item.

The group and ungroup icons will be displayed in the user interface when you select which fields to be displayed in the grid.

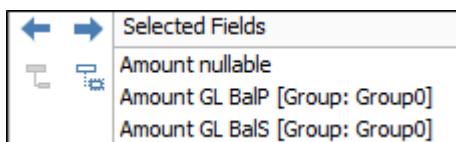


- In the **Selected Fields** section, select two or more fields that you want to group and click the group icon.

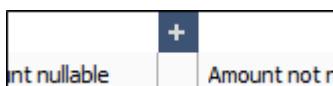
Note

Note that once you select two or more fields, this icon is enabled and displayed with a highlighted background.

The selected columns are now grouped together in the grid. In the **Selected Fields** section, the fields in a group are marked as part of a specific group. In the example below, the fields belong to **Group0**.



- The fields in the group are automatically hidden from a data grid. To expand the group and view the fields in the group, click the plus sign in the column header of the data grid.



- To collapse the group and hide the fields in the group, click the minus sign in the data grid.



Once the layout is saved, your layout changes will be visible when you reopen the applet.

Ungrouping fields in a grid

To ungroup fields:

1. Open an applet with a grid.
2. Right-click the column header and select the **Select Fields** menu item.
3. In the **Selected Fields** section, select the fields from the group that want to ungroup and click the  ungroup icon.

The selected columns are now ungrouped and displayed as such. In the **Selected Fields** section, the fields that are ungrouped are no longer marked as part of a specific group. When you save the layout, your layout changes will be visible when you reopen the applet.

6.6.7

Added filter authorisation in Alerts Inbox

As of version 6.4, you must have authorisation rights to create custom filters and folders in the **Alerts Inbox** applet in an application manager, such as Asset Manager or System Manager.

This ensures that only authorised users can create additional filters in the **Alerts Inbox** applet and prevents superfluous filters from being created. Limiting the number of custom filters improves loading performance of the **Alerts Inbox**.

As with other data authorisation in SimCorp Dimension, the system administrator must set up the filter authorisation of the **Alerts Inbox** applet by using the **Task and Commands** window.

Note

As before, authorisation must be set up for each **Alerts Inbox** applet of the various application managers.

You can view whether a user, user profile, or user role has access and update rights for creating filters and folders in an **Alerts Inbox** applet from the **Show Authorisation** window on the **Common/Create Folder and Filter** sub-node. For more information about setting up and viewing authorisation, see the **System Access** user manual.

For existing folders, you can also specify record-based permission rights from the folders in the **Alerts Inbox** applet. In this way you can specify the access rights for specific users or user profiles of a specific folder. However, you must be defined as the owner, or belong to the specified authorisation profile set as the owner, before you can specify any permission settings. For more information about specifying record-based permissions in dashboards, see the **Dashboard** user manual.

6.6.8 Link related alerts in Alerts Inbox

As of version 6.4, you can specify relations between different alerts in the Alerts Inbox. Creating alert relations makes it more visible that some alerts stem from the same matter. This can occur, for example, when one or more users create manual alerts related to the same rule, for which SimCorp Dimension has already created automatically.

You can create relations from one alert to multiple alerts of any alert type. Alert relations that you create are always symmetrical so that when A is related to B, then B is automatically related to A. Alerts related to the same alert on different relation IDs are not related to each other.

Each related alert is treated separately in the Alerts Inbox. This means that changing or resolving an alert has no impact on the other related alerts. These alerts must be resolved individually.

Note

You can relate alerts that you otherwise have no access to view.

Your system administrator must enable the **Alert Relations** access rights option in the **Task and Commands** window for the required **Alerts Inbox** applet before functionality related to linking alerts is displayed in the user interface.

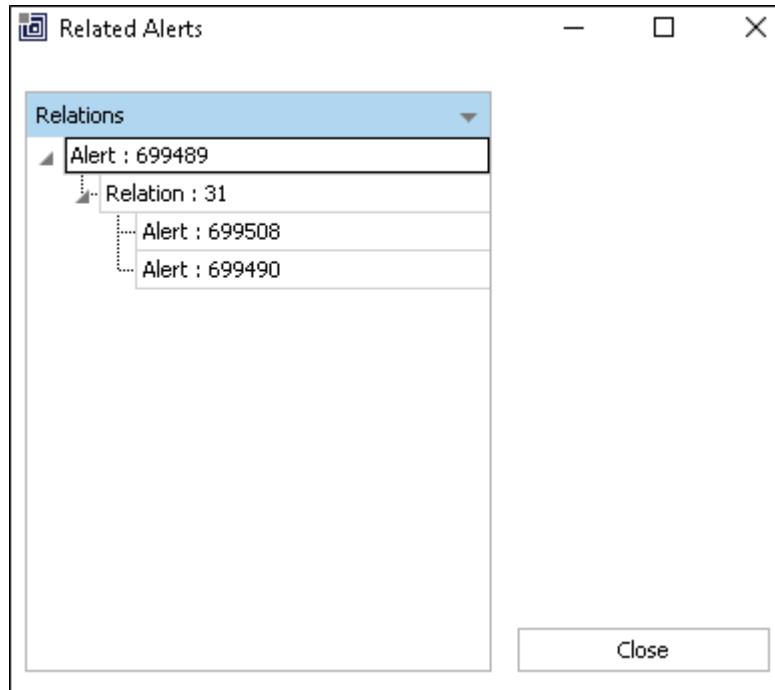
Linking alerts

To view alert relations:

1. Open the **Alert Inbox** applet from an application manager.
2. In the filters pane, select the filter for which you want to view alerts.
3. Select the alert in the overview pane for which you want to view the alert relations. The check box in the **Related alerts** column is selected if any relations have been created for an alert.

4. Select **Relations** from the ribbon and click **View**.

The **Related Alerts** window displays a tree structure where the top-node denotes the selected alert and the relations are displayed as sub-nodes. For each relation you can view the linked alerts.

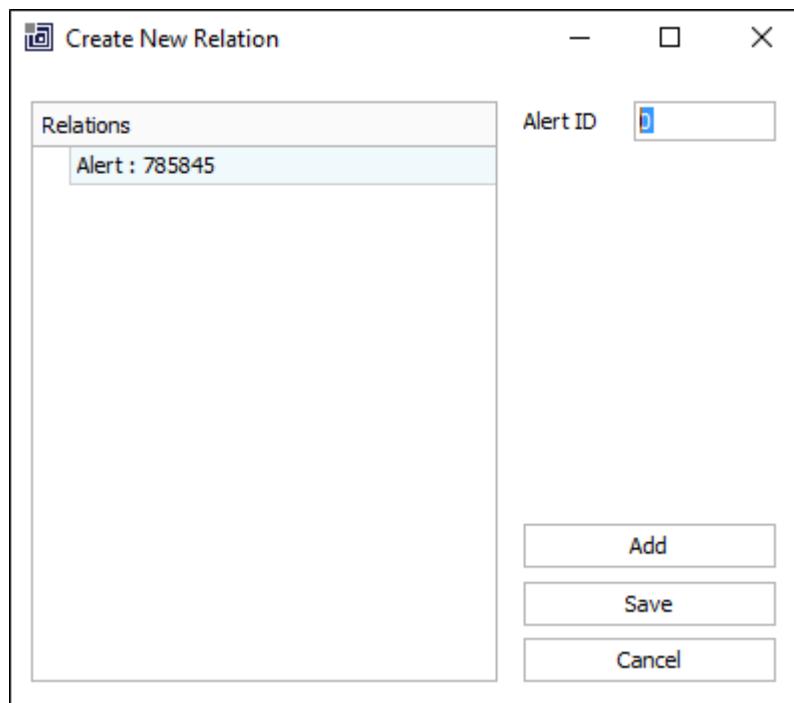


To create relations to alerts:

1. Open the **Alert Inbox** applet from an application manager.
2. In the filters pane, select the filter for which you want to view alerts.
3. Select the alert in the overview pane for which you want to create an alert relation.

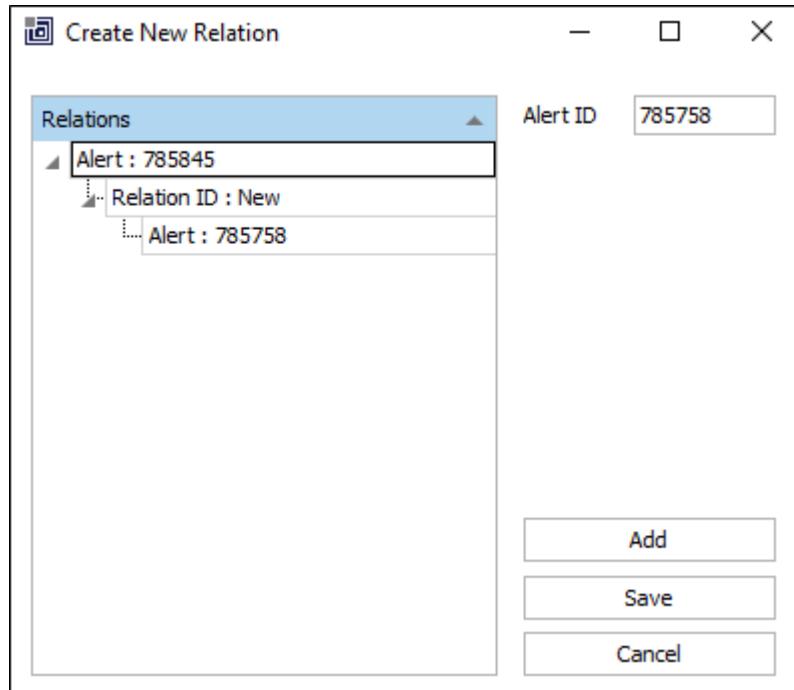
4. Select **Relations** from the ribbon and click **Create**.

This opens the **Create New Relation** window.



5. In the **Alert ID** field, enter the alert ID of the alert to which you want to create a relation and then click **Add**.

The new relation is now displayed in the tree structure in the **Relations** section when you expand the tree nodes.

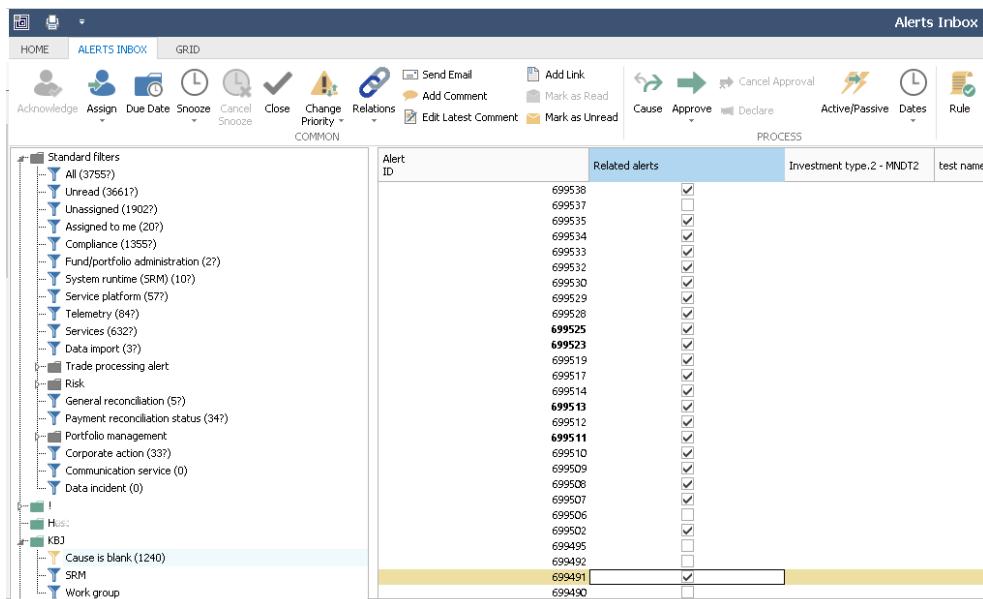


Once you click **Save**, the relation ID of the new relation is generated.

6. Repeat previous step for each new relation you want to create to the alert.

- When you are done, click **Save** to save and close the window.

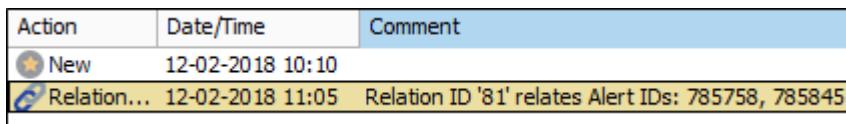
The **Related alerts** column in the overview pane of the **Alerts Inbox** now displays a check mark, which indicates that the alert is linked to other alerts.



The screenshot shows the 'Alerts Inbox' application interface. On the left, there's a sidebar with 'Standard filters' containing various alert categories like 'All', 'Unread', 'Assigned to me', etc. The main area has tabs 'HOME', 'ALERTS INBOX', and 'GRID'. Below these are several action buttons: Acknowledge, Assign, Due Date, Snooze, Close, Change Priority, Relations, Send Email, Add Link, Add Comment, Mark as Read, Edit Latest Comment, and Mark as Unread. To the right of these are Cause, Approve, Decline, Active/Passive, Dates, and Rule buttons. The central grid displays a table with columns: Alert ID, Related alerts, Investment type.2 - MNDT2, and test name. The 'Related alerts' column contains checkmarks for most rows. A specific row for alert ID 699523 is highlighted with a yellow background.

| Alert ID | Related alerts | Investment type.2 - MNDT2 | test name |
|---------------|-------------------------------------|---------------------------|-----------|
| 699538 | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | | |
| 699537 | <input type="checkbox"/> | | |
| 699535 | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | | |
| 699534 | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | | |
| 699533 | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | | |
| 699532 | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | | |
| 699530 | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | | |
| 699529 | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | | |
| 699528 | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | | |
| 699525 | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | | |
| 699523 | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | | |
| 699519 | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | | |
| 699517 | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | | |
| 699514 | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | | |
| 699513 | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | | |
| 699512 | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | | |
| 699511 | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | | |
| 699510 | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | | |
| 699509 | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | | |
| 699508 | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | | |
| 699507 | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | | |
| 699506 | <input type="checkbox"/> | | |
| 699502 | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | | |
| 699495 | <input type="checkbox"/> | | |
| 699492 | <input type="checkbox"/> | | |
| 699491 | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | | |
| 699490 | <input type="checkbox"/> | | |

You can view information about the actions performed in connection with alert relations in the details pane of the **Alert Inbox** applet.



The screenshot shows the 'Details' pane of the 'Alerts Inbox' applet. It lists actions taken on a relation. The first row is a standard action (New), and the second row is a relation action (Relation...). The relation action row includes a comment field with the text 'Relation ID '81' relates Alert IDs: 785758, 785845'.

| Action | Date/Time | Comment |
|-------------|------------------|--|
| New | 12-02-2018 10:10 | |
| Relation... | 12-02-2018 11:05 | Relation ID '81' relates Alert IDs: 785758, 785845 |

To append alerts to existing relations:

- Open the **Alerts Inbox** applet from an application manager.
- In the filters pane, select the filter for which you want to view alerts.
- Select the alert in the overview pane for which you want to append a relation between alerts. The check box in the **Related alerts** column is selected if any relations have been created for an alert.
- Select **Relations** from the ribbon and click **Append**.
- In the **Relation ID** field in the upper-left part of the window of the **Related Alerts** window, enter, or select from the drop-down list, the ID of the alert relation to which you want to append an alert and then click **Add**.

The appended relation is now displayed in the tree structure in the **Relations** section. You can expand the relation node to view the related alerts.

6. When you are done, click **Save** to save and close the window.

The details pane of the **Alerts Inbox** applet displays action information about the appended relation for the selected alert.

To remove alert relations:

1. Open the **Alerts Inbox** applet from an application manager.
2. In the filters pane, select the filter for which you want to view alerts.
3. Select the alert in the overview pane for which you want to remove a relation between alerts.
4. Select **Relations** from the ribbon and click **Remove**.
5. In the **Related Alerts** window, select the relation of the alert that you want to remove and click **Remove**.
6. Click **Save** to save and close the window.

When you remove a single relation from an alert, the check mark is cleared in the **Related alerts** column in the overview pane of the **Alerts Inbox**.

You can export the information about alert relations as part of exporting alerts from the data extractor.

6.6.9 Enhanced filter functionality for dashboard widgets

As of version 6.4, the filter functionality in widgets, released in version 6.3, has been enhanced. You can now add, modify, and remove filters in not only table and pivot widgets, but also for chart widgets.

For more information about using filters in widgets, see the **Dashboard** user manual.

6.6.10 SQL views added to FlexForm Manager [6.3]

As of this release version, FlexForm has been enhanced with new functionality for extracting data from FlexForm widgets for reporting purposes.

As a result, you can now view the SQL views of the FlexForm specifications in the FlexForm Manager which you can use for data extraction.

To view the SQL views of FlexForm specifications:

1. Open the FlexForm Manager and open a FlexForm specification from the **Specification** ribbon.
2. In the **VIEWS** group, click **Show SQL views**.

This opens the **View Specification <name specification>** window. The **View Name** column displays the SQL view names used in the specification and the **Data Source** column displays the related data source.

6.6.11 Copy data import templates in FlexForm Manager [6.3]

As of this release version, FlexForm has been enhanced with new functionality for viewing the available data import templates in a FlexForm specification. You can copy this information for use in XML data import in SimCorp Dimension.

To view and copy data import templates of FlexForm specifications:

1. Open the FlexForm manager and open a FlexForm specification from the **Specification** ribbon.
The **Import templates** section displays the available import templates for the selected FlexForm specification and their data set.
2. Click one of the listed template types to view the corresponding XML for the selected template.
 - **Simple**—The XML reflects a FlexForm widget with simple controls.
 - **Complex**—The XML reflects a more advanced FlexForm widget, such as a grid, chart or pivot display type.
3. In the XML section for the selected template, select and copy the required XML data.

For data import usage, you can copy the XML data to data import rules.

6.6.12 Added filter options for FlexForm widgets [6.3]

As of this release version, you can now configure FlexForms to filter data retrieved from the database in **FlexForm Multiviewer** widgets in the Alternative Investments Manager. This makes it easier to handle large quantities of data within these widget types because you can filter the data.

Filter by scenario

For this purpose, a new **Scenario** field has been added to the FlexForm **Configuration for <widget title>** window. When you fill out the scenario type in the XML file, the value is mapped to the **Scenario** field in the **Configuration** window which you can use for filtering data. This way you can specify which data elements that you want to view in the FlexForm widget.

```
<Control DataSource="Grid Scenario">
<Field MapTo="scenario" Name="SCENARIOTYPE" Title="Scenario Type"
Type="System.String" />
...
</Control>
```

If the field is left empty, all data records are retrieved from the database.

Filter by date

Furthermore, a **Reporting Date** field has been added to a complex control, such as a grid, chart, or pivot table. Before you can use this, you must update the XML specification accordingly, as illustrated in the following.

```
<Control DataSource="Grid Date DateKeyed" DateKeyed="true">  
...  
</Control>
```

You use the **DateKeyed** attribute to specify the use and creation of the **Reporting Date** field in a complex control, such as displayed in the following image.

The screenshot shows a reporting interface with the title "REZ_01_WINFARM_PRODUCTION". Below the title is a table with four columns: "Difference", "Kwh budgeted", "Kwh produced", and "Reporting Date". The "Reporting Date" column displays the value "Hours used on maintenance: 10". The interface includes a header bar with a dropdown menu and a vertical scroll bar on the right side.

By default, you cannot delete the date retrieved in the **Reporting Date** field in the widget so that you can always use the date for filtering. If there is no date to retrieve, the field displays today's date.

You can filter on the reporting date by specifying a date range by using the **From Date** and **To Date** fields in the FlexForm Configuration for <widget title> window.

6.6.13 Patched from 6.41

6.6.13.1 Closed alerts can now be related to in Alerts Inbox [6.4]

As of version 6.41, you can now create alert relations to closed alerts.

For more information, see [Link related alerts](#) in the **Alerts Inbox** Help or contact your SimCorp consultant.

7 General Changes

7.1 General functionality enhancements

7.1.1 New user manuals

As of version 6.4, several new user manuals are available:

1. ***Accounting Analytics in Asset Manager***
2. Settlement Manager > ***Omgeo OASYS Trade Manager***, see the [release note](#)
3. Settlement Manager > ***Transaction Explorer***, see the [release note](#)
4. Strategy Manager > ***Middle Office Calculation Manager***
5. System Operations > Data Administration > ***Data Privacy Management***, see the [release note](#)

7.1.1.1 User manual structure now reflects solutions

As of version 6.4, the Help presents user manuals in an alphabetical structure that is aligned with the various solutions available for SimCorp Dimension.

SimCorp

Contents

User Manuals

- Alternative Investments Manager
- Asset Manager
- Cash and Securities Manager
- Collateral Manager
- Compliance Manager
- Corporate Actions Manager
- Data Management - Connectivity
- Data Management - Reporting
- Data Warehouse Manager
- Front Office
- Fund Administration Manager
- IBOR
- Investment Accounting Manager
- Order Manager
- Performance Manager
- Reconciliation Manager
- Risk Analysis Manager
- Settlement Manager
- Strategy Manager
- System Operations

This makes it easier to find manuals by solutions as you know them from other SimCorp publications.

Additional manuals which are not part of a single solution are available under these headings:

- Data Management - Connectivity
- Data Management - Reporting
- Front Office
- IBOR
- System Operations

Previously, user manuals were organised in a domain structure that has become obsolete. For organisational reasons, the concurrent Release Notes still reflect the domain structure.

7.1.1.2 New user manuals

As of version 6.4, several new user manuals are available:

1. ***Accounting Analytics in Asset Manager***
2. Settlement Manager > ***Omgeo OASYS Trade Manager***, see the [release note](#)
3. Settlement Manager > ***Transaction Explorer***, see the [release note](#)
4. Strategy Manager > ***Middle Office Calculation Manager***
5. System Operations > Data Administration > ***Data Privacy Management***, see the [release note](#)

7.2 SimCorp Dimension Portal

7.2.1 Customise SimCorp Dimension portal background

As of version 6.4, you can customise the SimCorp Dimension portal by adding a background picture, such as your corporate logo, to the portal. This allows you, for example, to display a SimCorp Dimension version aligning with your corporate identity and in this way personalise your SimCorp Dimension installation for all users.

Changing the portal background has no impact on the performance of SimCorp Dimension.

To change the portal background:

1. Save the picture that you want to display as the portal background as an .png file, named **PortalBackground**, in the **Data** folder of your installation directory, such as **<netroot>/Data/PortalBackground.png**. It is recommended to use an image of an 16:9 aspect ratio with a minimum of 1920 (w) x 1200 (h) pixels.

Note

Only system administrators have access to this folder.

2. Ensure that the **Use image as background** check box is selected, in the **Portal Settings** window. You open this window from the SimCorp Dimension portal, for more information, see the section **SimCorp Dimension Portal** in the Help.

When you have saved the image file containing the portal background, the new portal background will be displayed the next time you log on to SimCorp Dimension. Note that the default SimCorp Dimension image is displayed when no image is found in the destination image folder.

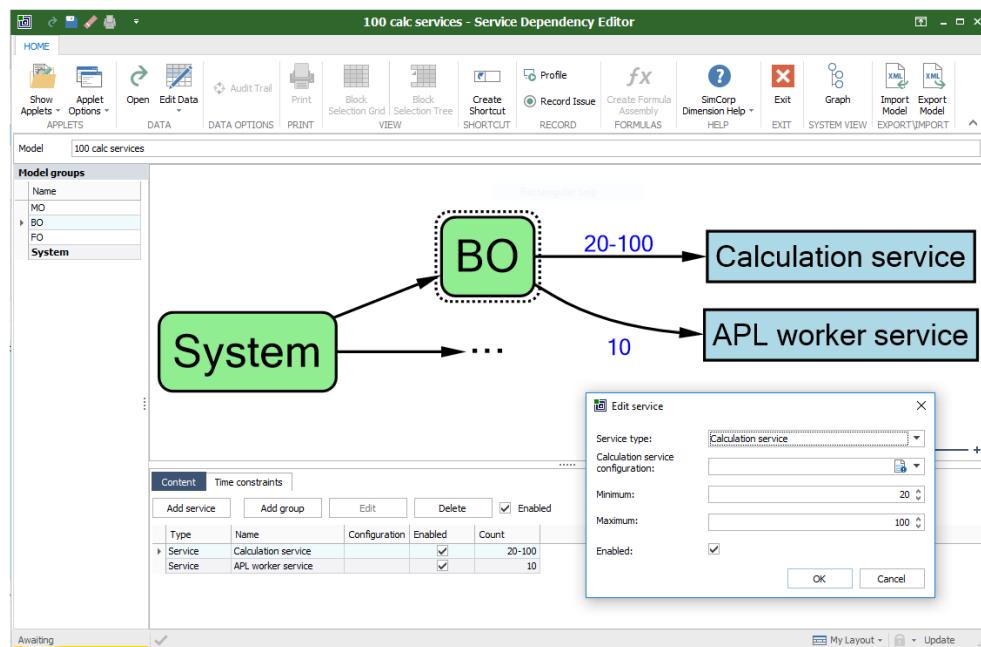
8 Maintenance

8.1 Services

8.1.1 [New module] Elastic Services

| | |
|-------------------------------------|--|
| Client Segment | All clients |
| Target Audience | System Operation, IT Manager |
| Subscription based licensing | Included in the N/A (New sales module, only available for Pilot clients) subscription package. |
| Module-based Licensing | N/A |

You can now define a range of calculation services and let the Service Platform start and stop services depending on the workload. This is only the first step and the roadmap will include more service types in coming versions of SimCorp Dimension.



In the above example, 20 Calculation Services will be running as a minimum. Additional Calculation Services will be started on the Service Platform when there is a need (calculations to be executed) and closed down again when the Calculation is finalized.

Benefits

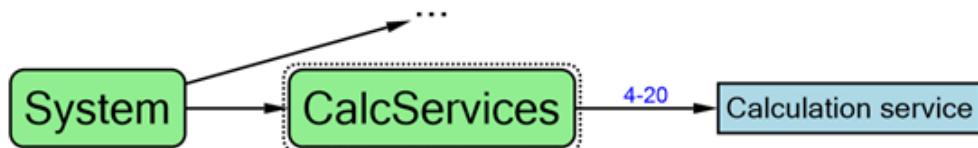
- Better utilization of existing hardware.
- No need to have a lot of Calculation Services started if there is no outstanding workload.

8.1.1.1 Specify scaling in automation service models

To improve elasticity of the Service Platform for hardware scaling, you can now create automation service models which specify a range for the minimum and maximum number of **Calculation service** instances running for this service type. This enables the **Automation service** to distribute the workload efficiently to the required number of service instances within the specified range.

You can, for example, specify a range from 4 to 20 service instances for running the **Calculation service**. When the workload rises above the capacity of the available services, then additional instances will be started until the maximum is reached. When the workload diminishes, then some service instances will be stopped to ensure that the minimum required capacity is maintained.

The specified range is displayed in the **Graph** system view on top of the applicable arrow.



Before you can use this functionality, you must acquire the **ELASTIC SERVICES** sales module.

To specify a scaling range for a **Calculation service**:

1. Open the **Service Dependency Editor** window.
2. Create or open an automation service model with a **Calculation service** without any configuration.

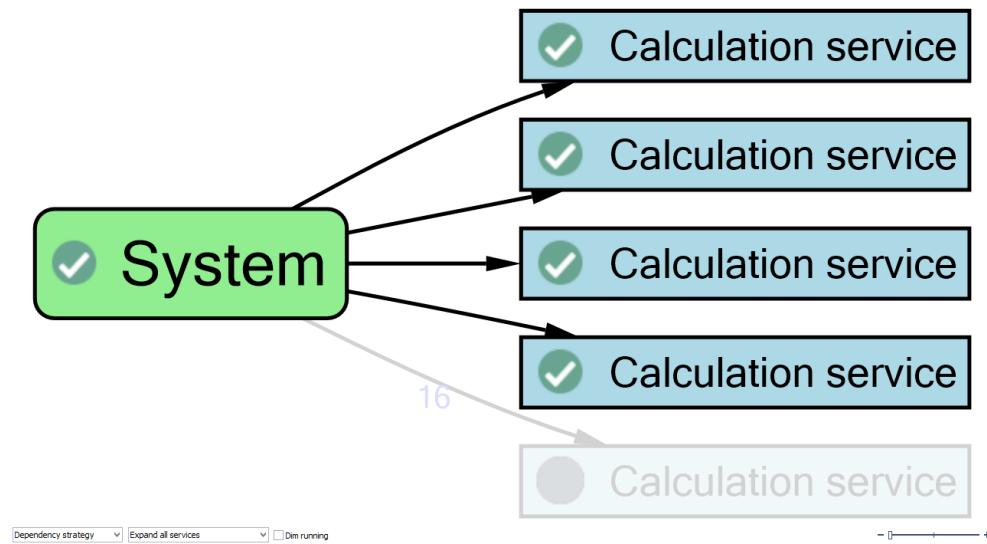
Note

The service is not scalable when a configuration has been specified.

3. Select the **Calculation service** on the **Content** tab, and click **Edit**.
4. In the **Minimum** field, select the minimum number of instances that must be running for this service.
5. In the **Maximum** field, select the maximum number of instances that should be running for this service.
6. Click **OK** to save and close the sub-window.

The **Service Manager** applet will reflect the number of services currently running, according to the specified range. In the **Automation State** view, the unallocated service instances are greyed out with a number indicating the number of allocated service instances, for example 16. This helps you distinguish between the already allocated running service instances and

those not running at the moment.



Note

Selecting the **Dim running** check box, will also dim the unallocated service instances.

8.1.1.2 Configure scaling strategy in the Service Type Configuration window

To improve elasticity of the Service Platform for hardware scaling, system operators can now implement a global scaling strategy for service types in the **Service Type Configuration** window.

From this window you can customise the threshold settings for scaling of the **Calculation service** type (without any configuration) and in this way specify the criteria for when new services can be added or closed automatically on the Service Platform.

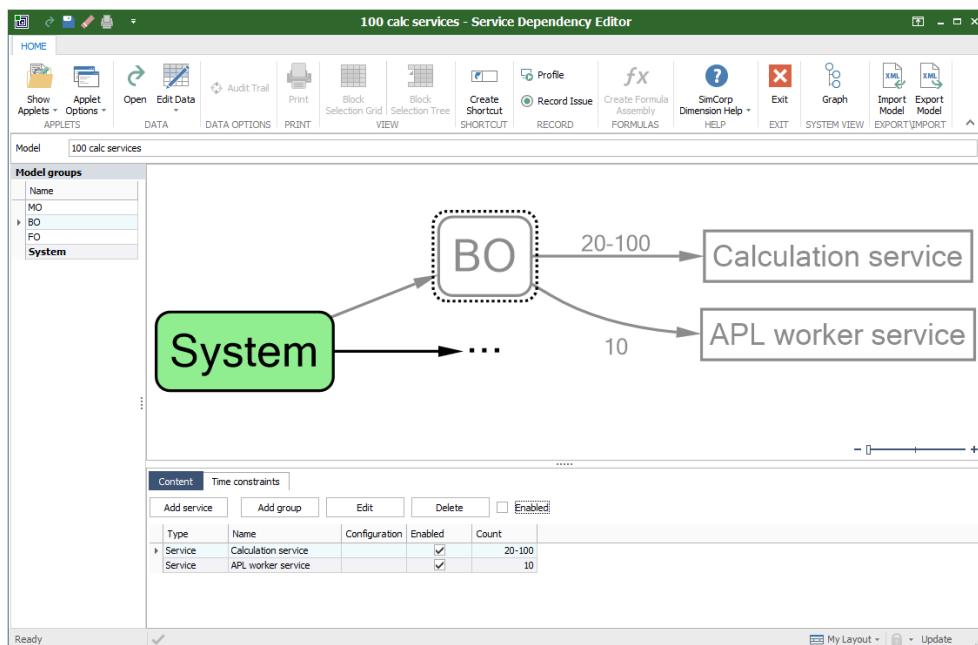
To configure a scaling strategy for the **Calculation service** type.

1. Open the **Service Type Configuration** window.
2. On the **Scaling** tab, specify the threshold settings in the following fields, if required, for the selected service type:
 - **Scale up threshold**—Enter the percentage that you want to set as threshold for when more services can be added. For example, if you enter **80**, more services will only be added when 80 percent or more services of this service type are running and have the service action set as **Executing**. The default value is 100 percent.
 - **Scale down threshold**—Enter the percentage that you want to set as threshold for when services can be closed. For example, if you enter **50**, the services can start to be shut down when 50 percent or less services of this service type are running and have the service action set as **Executing**. The default value is 1 percent.
 - **Scale up factor**—Enter the percentage that you want to set as factor for when more services can be added. This factor is calculated from the number of queued calculation jobs, deducted any idle or starting services. The default value is 0 percent.
 - **Scale down factor**—Enter the percentage that you want to set as factor for when services can be closed. This factor is calculated from the number of queued calculation jobs, deducted any idle or starting services. The default value is 0 percent.
3. Save your changes.

8.1.2 Service Platform - possibility to enable/disable service and/or groups

| | |
|-------------------------------------|------------------------|
| Client segment | All clients |
| Target audience | System operation staff |
| Subscription based licensing | Foundations |
| Module-based licensing | Technical Base Module |

You can now enable/disable either an entire group (incl. sub-groups) or a single service from the **Dependency Model**. The main idea is to be able to take a part of the Service Platform services out of production, without need for changing the entire model.



It is easy to stop a group of services without changing the entire model. When the services are needed again, they can just be enabled.

8.1.2.1 Disable services and service groups in the Service Dependency Editor

As of version 6.4, you can disable specific services or service groups from an automation service model without deleting these items. This allows you to quickly enable the same items in the model when required. When you disable a service group, all subgroups and services in the group are disabled in the model.

To disable a service group in an automation service model:

1. Open the relevant automation service model in the **Service Dependency Editor** window.
2. In the **Model Groups** section, select the service model group that you want to disable.
3. On the **Content** tab, clear the **Enabled** check box.

To disable a service or a submodel service group in an automation service model:

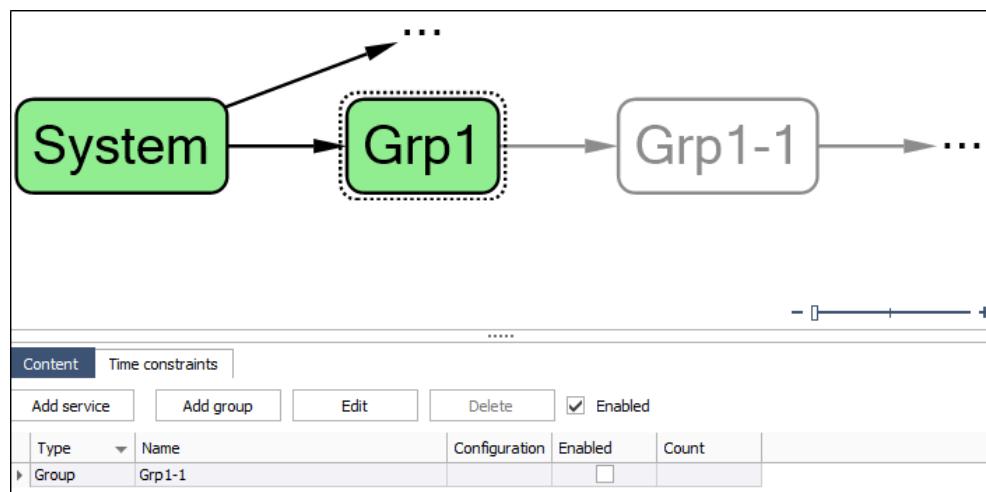
1. Open the relevant automation service model in the **Service Dependency Editor** window.
2. On the **Content** tab, select the service or the model service group that you want to disable.
3. Click **Edit** to open the **Edit service** or the **Edit group relation** sub-

window, respectively.

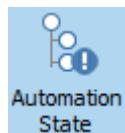
4. Clear the **Enabled** check box.

The service or service group is now disabled and, as a result, the disabled service is greyed out in the graph.

The following image illustrates that the **Grp1-1** service group is disabled in the **Grp1** service group.



In the **Service Manager** applet of the **System Manager**, the disabled services or service groups for the selected model will not be displayed in the automation model graph. However, when you apply a model, which contains disabled services or service groups, a note about disabled services and service groups appears in the window. You can also see an exclamation mark on the **Automation State** command in the **View** ribbon group.



8.1.3 Removed obsolete service functionality

As of version 6.4, functionality related to service management on the deprecated server framework (that is, the Service Host server and the SCD server) has been removed from SimCorp Dimension.

Specifically, this means that the following items are no longer part of the installation.

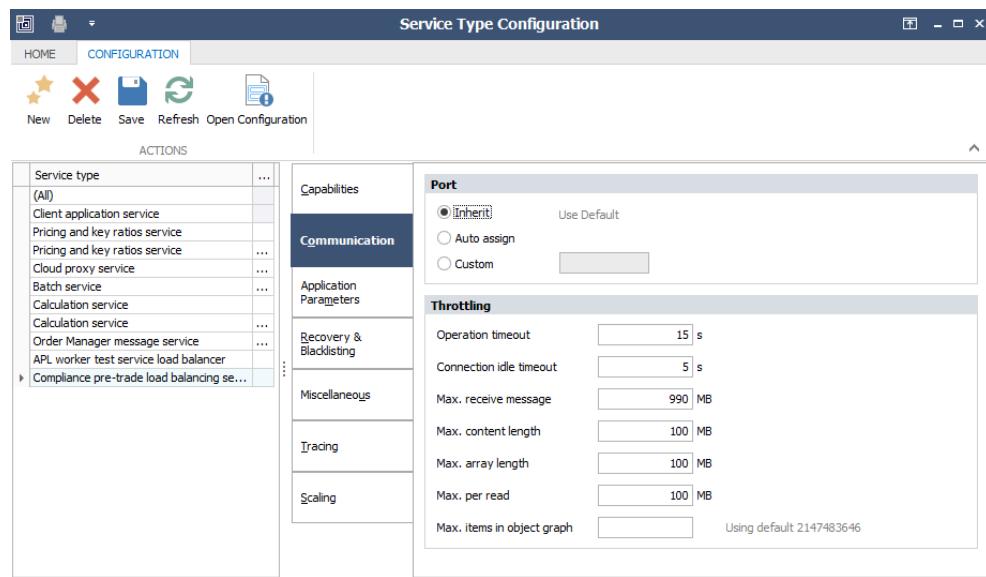
| | | |
|---------------------------------------|--|-----------------------------------|
| Removed windows | Removed .exe files from <netroot>\bin | Removed SCD.exe parameters |
| Server Monitor | srvstat.exe | - DEADRESPONSETIME |
| Server Services Monitor | SimCorp.IMS.Framework.Service.Host.exe | -SERVER |
| Service Administration | | -SERVICE |
| Service Switch Configuration | | -STATUS[EX] |
| Start of Service Authorisation | | |

In addition, the **Include service users** check box has been removed from the **Shutdown users** window and equivalently the **SCD.exe -shutdown** command affects only interactive users and batch jobs.

Since the **Server** and **Server status** columns are now irrelevant for the Message and User Control System (MUCS), these have been removed from here.

8.1.4 Service Type Configuration contains service parameter sets

As of version 6.4, the **Service Parameter Sets** window has been removed from SimCorp Dimension. Instead you can now specify communication parameter settings in the **Service Type Configuration** window on the **Communication** tab.



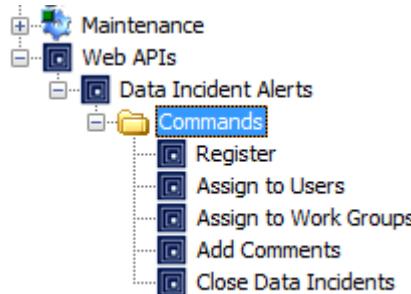
This facilitates configuring service type settings as both the communication parameter settings and other configuration of service types are consolidated into one single window.

8.2 System Access

8.2.1 Authorise access to web API commands

As of version 6.4, you can grant authorisation for web API usage. This means that you can now, as a supervisor, authorise access to specific API commands in the **Tasks and Commands** window for data incident alerts.

You can view the new **Web APIs** node in the menu tree of this windows, as illustrated in the following image.



For more information about the **Alerts** API, see [\[New module\] Alerts web API](#).

8.2.2 Patched from 6.41

8.2.2.1 Added field for Oracle Kerberos authentication [6.3] [6.4]

As of version 6.41, the **Principal name** field in the **Users** window in

SimCorp Dimension is only used for user principal names used for authentication of credentials for Web API usage and for authentication of usage of the Service Control Utility tool.

Previously, this field also included Oracle Kerberos principal names. However, these principal names are now displayed in the new **Kerberos principal name** field. With this change you can easily distinguish between the user principal names and the Kerberos principal names.

For more information about Oracle Kerberos authentication, see the [Configuration guide for Oracle Kerberos Authentication](#).

Note

Using Kerberos authentication to obtain single sign-on to SimCorp Dimension requires the **ACTIVE DIRECTORY AUTHENTICATION** sales module. Please contact your SimCorp Dimension consultant for more details.

8.3 System Maintenance

8.3.1 Enhanced performance evaluation for Trade Processing dashboards [6.3.1-IMPL]

As of version 6.4, you can investigate and evaluate performance issues for Trade Processing dashboards based on the following enhancements:

- Three new performance counters per service type are available in the **Performance Counter Viewer** window:
 - **Number of requests per interval - <service type>** shows the number of requests in each 10-minute interval.
 - **Peak response time - <service type>** shows the query response time and the associated service ID in each 10-minute interval.
 - **Average response time - <service type>** shows the query response time and the associated service ID in each 10-minute interval.
- The service log file now shows the response time, along with the service type and setup ID associated with the request to the dashboard.

Therefore, you can examine your performance counters and then check the service log file for additional details about a particular query.

These enhancements apply to the following trade processing dashboard service types that you can set up in the **Trade Processing Dashboard Service Configuration** window:

- **Trade processing dashboard - CTM**
- **Trade processing dashboard - Match**
- **Trade processing dashboard - Netting**

- **Trade processing dashboard - Oasys**
- **Trade processing dashboard - STP**
- **Trade processing dashboard - SWIFT**
- **Trade processing dashboard - Trade control**
- **Trade processing dashboard - Transactions**

8.3.2 [New module] Data Privacy Management

| | |
|-------------------------------------|---|
| Client Segment | EU clients, any segment |
| Target Audience | Compliance officers, head of operations |
| Subscription based licensing | Included in the Foundations subscription package. |
| Module-based Licensing | |

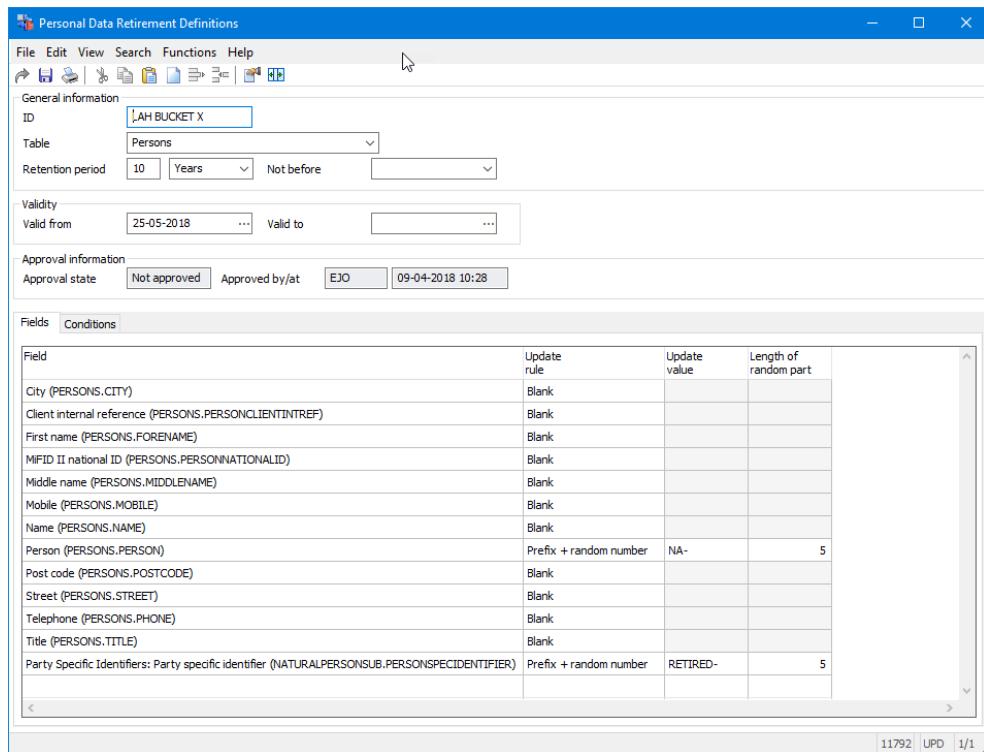
The new European General Data Protection Regulation (GDPR) introduced new rules intended to strengthen and unify data protection for all individuals within the European Union. To comply with this regulation, new functionality is introduced to support data privacy management processes around personal data. It is not only relevant for GDPR but can also benefit clients that have to comply with strict data protection regulations in other jurisdictions, for example. in Australia or Canada.

Customers are now able to consolidate personal data and improve security about it. The new functionality also provides a standard workflow for automation of deletion and anonymisation of personal data, including data stored in the audit trail.

For more information, see the **Data Privacy Management** user manual.

Benefits

- Simplifies and secures personal data management
- Complies with regulatory requirements
- Removes operational risk

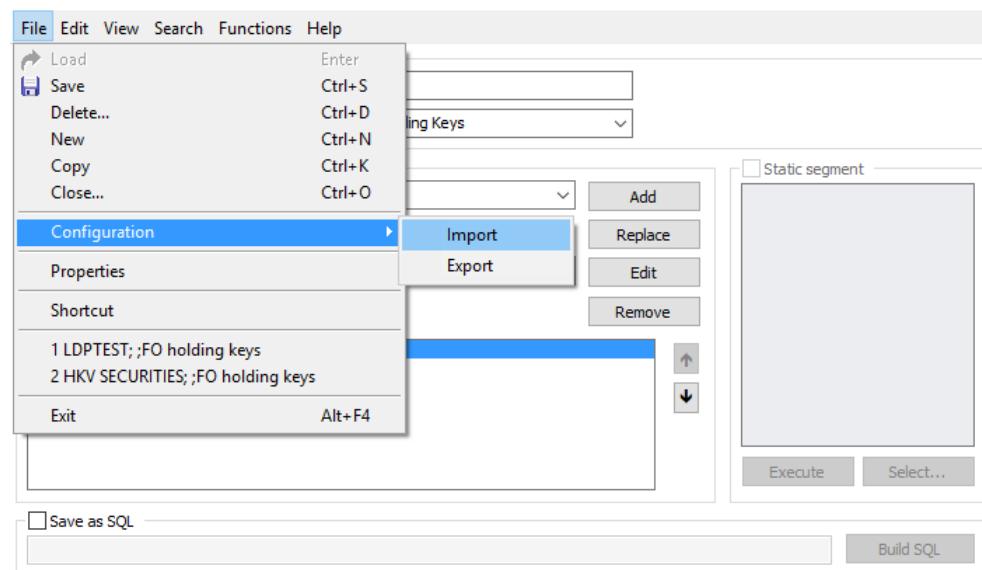


8.3.3 Enabled additional windows for configuration transport

As of this version, you can use the following windows for configuration transport:

- **Front Office Segments**
- **Calculation Figure Reporting Segments**
- **Yield Curve Manager -Definition** and related sub-windows
- **Volatility Curve Manager- Definition** and related sub-window

Therefore, you can now import and export objects from these windows from one SimCorp Dimension installation to another.



You can also select the windows for configuration transport from the **Configuration Transport - Mass Import** and **Configuration Transport - Mass Export** windows.

8.3.4 Browse to external document file

As of version 6.4, you can browse to external document files when creating and editing document links from within SimCorp Dimension.

Previously, you had to enter the document link manually. Now you can use a new browse icon to navigate to and select the external document file from Windows Explorer. This makes it easier to add a new document link and enter the correct path.

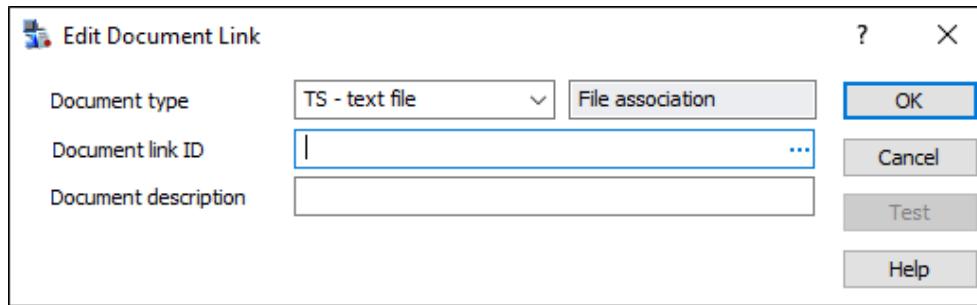
You can use the browse icon for the **File association** and **Program** execution types but not for URL paths.

Before you begin, ensure that document link types have been set up for your requested document links.

To create a document link by using the browse icon:

1. Select the **View > Document Links** menu item or click **Attachment** from the **UTILITY** group on the ribbon, depending upon the window type you are using, for example, for a selected trade in the Trade Manager.
This opens the **Document Links** window.
2. In the **Document Links** window, click **Add**.

3. In the **Edit Document Link** window, select a document type from the **Document type** list. This displays the associated execution type in the adjacent display field.



Note

The first time you do this, the field will be blank. However, once you select a document type, the selected document type will appear as the default type every time you open this window until you choose another type.

4. In the **Document link ID** field, click the browse icon or press F4 to select an external document file from Windows Explorer.
Windows Explorer will open in the folder structure that is specified as the path for the file association in the **Document Link Types** window.
5. Optionally, enter a description for the document link in the **Document description** field.
6. Click **OK** to save the link.

To test the document link, click **Test**.

8.3.5 Configure customised logon messages

As of version 6.4, you can configure customised logon messages to be displayed to users at logon. For example, to alert users to issues to which they must pay special attention when working in SimCorp Dimension.

You can customise two message types:

- A permanent logon message to be displayed every time a user logs onto SimCorp Dimension. This is set up in the **System Environment Configuration** window, typically by a System Administrator.

- A temporary logon message to be displayed only during a specified time span which can also be displayed to users already logged on. You could, for example, create a temporary logon message which displays information about upcoming maintenance schedules. This is set up in the **System Log On/Off Options** window.

Note

The **System Log Off Options** window has been renamed to **System Log On/Off Options** since you can now not only specify log off options but also log on options.

Permanent logon message

To enable a permanent customised logon message:

1. Open the **System Environment Configuration** window and click the **Logon Message** tab.
2. Select the **Logon message for all users** check box.
3. Optionally, fill out the **Header** field withto enter a new title for the logon message.
4. In the **Message** text box, enter or customise the logon message that you want to display when users log on to SimCorp Dimension.
5. Click **OK**.

This message will now be displayed every time a user logs onto SimCorp Dimension. This message is also saved in the configuration file and you must therefore have appropriate access rights to the Cnf.ini file before you can save any changes to the logon message.

The data for the logon message matches the following three parameters in the **[config]** section of the Cnf.ini file.

| Parameter | Value | Description | Example |
|-----------------------|---------------|---|-------------------------------|
| LogonMsgActive | 0 or 1 | Specifies whether the logon message is displayed to users when logging on to SimCorp Dimension. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 0 disables the logon message (default). • 1 enables the logon message. | <code>LogonMsgActive=1</code> |

| Parameter | Value | Description | Example |
|-----------------------|--|--|--|
| LogonMsgHeader | ANSI characters. Max. 100 characters. | Specifies the header shown in the logon message when this is enabled. Default is empty or not present. | <code>LogonMsgHeader=Please remember this is a temporary test installation</code> |
| LogonMsg | ANSI characters. Max 2000 characters. | Specifies the body text of the logon message. Default is empty or not present. | <code>LogonMsg=This testinstalltion will be deleted end of May\n \nPlease contact IT if you needs the installation after May\n\nRegards ITEndof message</code> |

Temporary logon message

To enable temporary customised logon messages:

1. Open the **Log On/Off Options** window and click the **Log On** tab.
2. Select the **Logon message for all users** check box.
3. In the **Start date** and **End date** fields, enter an optional date interval for the time period for which you want to display the logon message, if required.
4. Fill out the optional **Header** field to enter a new title for the logon message, if required.
5. In the **Message** text box, enter or customise the logon message that you want to display when users log onto SimCorp Dimension.
6. Click **Apply** to save your changes.
7. Click **Yes** in the dialog box to confirm that all users currently logged on will get the message while logged on via a SimCorp Dimension mail message; otherwise click **No**.

Note

When you confirm to send a logon message to users currently logged on, the message is sent via a SimCorp Dimension mail.

-
8. Click **OK** to close the window.

Every time a user is logging on to SimCorp Dimension, the pre-configured logon message will be displayed until disabled.

8.3.6 Optional use of **MANAGE ANY QUEUE** database privilege

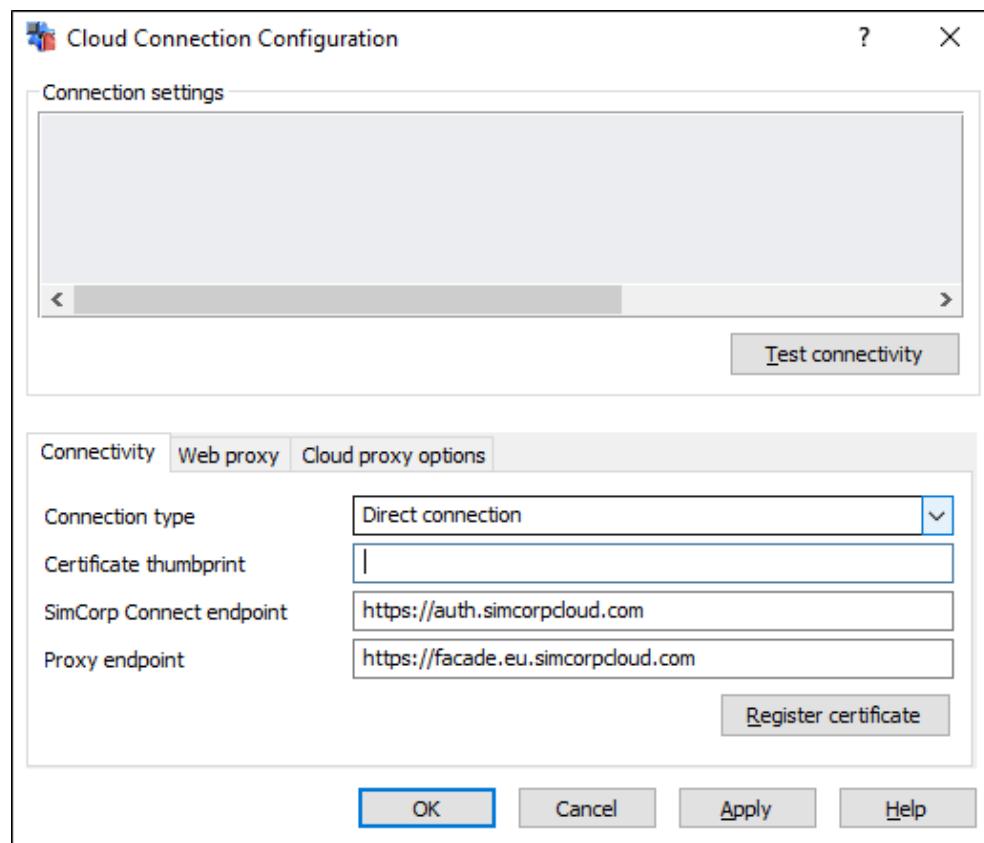
As of version 6.4, it is now optional to specify the **MANAGE ANY QUEUE**

privilege related to creating and managing queues in schemas in the Oracle database. The Oracle database administrator can maintain this privilege, if needed, but it is no longer mandatory to specify this privilege for new data owners, system owners, and user roles.

For existing database users, the functionality remains the same even if this privilege is specified as required in previous versions. However, if the database is configured for concurrent statistics, the privilege must not be removed. For more detailed information, see the **Preferred Oracle Configuration** user manual.

8.3.7 Simplified workflow for connecting to the cloud

As of version 6.4, the workflow for connecting to the cloud has been simplified significantly so that you can easily connect by using the new **Cloud Connection Configuration** window.



To establish a secure cloud connection, use this window to:

- Register the needed certificates.
- Configure easily your connection settings.
- Test and validate your specified configuration settings.

Previously, you had to configure the cloud connection by setting up the **Cloud proxy service** on the Service Platform.

As an easier alternative to the **Cloud proxy service** connection, you can now also connect directly and securely without using this service. Instead, the connection is now authenticated by the use of a new **Cloud authentication service**.

You need to provide only the following settings in the new window to configure your connection securely to the cloud:

- The client certificate installed on your SimCorp Dimension installation.
- The IP-address or URL of the proxy endpoint of the SimCorp Connect service.
- The IP address or URL of the proxy endpoint for your regional SimCorp Facade service.

If required by your IT-infrastructure, you can optionally specify web proxy settings for outbound web requests too.

Once you apply your new configuration settings, these are saved in the cnf.ini configuration file.

You can also connect using a cloud proxy connection which connects to the cloud by also using the **Cloud proxy service** as a gateway for outbound traffic. It is recommended to use this connection type only if your IT-infrastructure does not support a direct connection.

Any cloud connection that has been configured in a previous version of your SimCorp Dimension installation will still be valid. However, you can easily change your configuration and connect using the new direct connection configured in the new window.

The **Cloud Connectivity Diagnostics** window has been removed with this version since you can test and diagnose any issues from the **Cloud Connection Configuration** window instead.

For more information about connecting to the cloud, see the window help and the *Joining Evolution* user manual.

8.3.8 Patched from 6.41

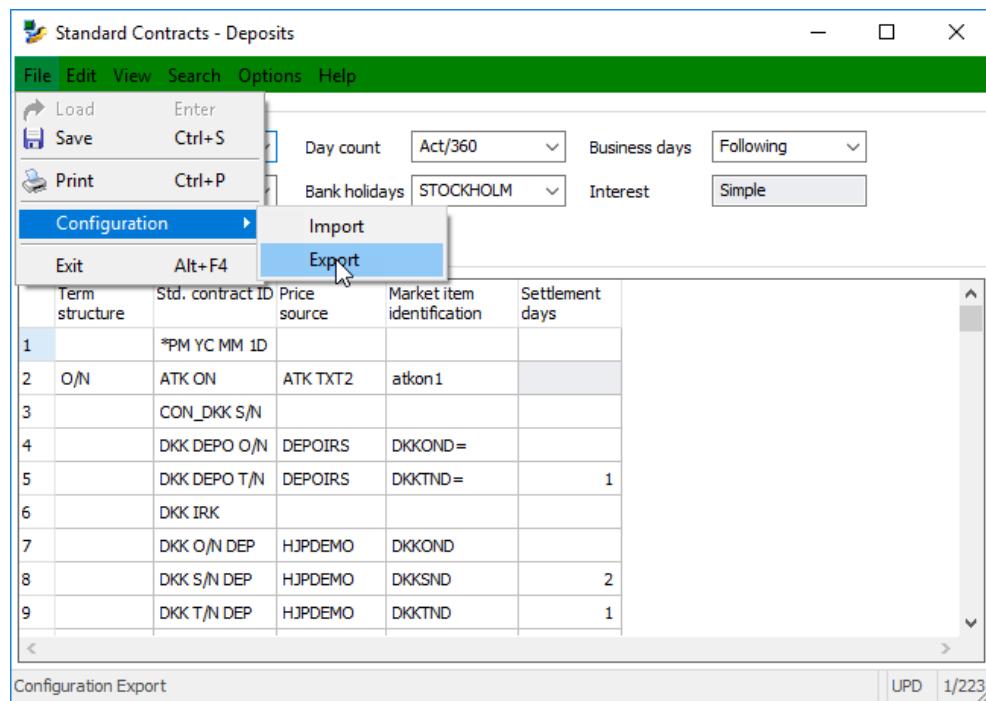
8.3.8.1 All Standard Contracts enabled for configuration transport [6.4]

As of version 6.41, configuration transport is enabled for all **Standard Contracts** windows, including:

- **Basic Swaps**
- **Variance Swaps**
- **FX Options**
- **FX Forwards**
- **OTC Bond Options**
- **OTC Equity/Equity Index Options**

- Credit Default Swaptions
- Zero Coupon Inflation Swaps

You can now import or export **Standard Contracts** definitions from one SimCorp Dimension installation to another.



In the previous example, a deposits standard definition is initiated for export in the **Standard Contracts - Deposits** window.

8.3.8.2 Added configuration transport support for Personal Data Retirement Definitions [6.3] [6.4]

As of version 6.41, configuration transport is enabled for the **Personal Data Retirement Definitions** window: File menu > Configuration > Import or export.

You can import and export personal data retirement definitions from the **Personal Data Retirement Definitions** window from one SimCorp Dimension installation into another and thus comply with the EU GDPR rules and regulations regarding personal data retention policies in SimCorp Dimension.

The configuration transport support facilitates customer GDPR management, since personal data will adhere to many different data objects in SimCorp Dimension, and the **Personal Data Retirement Definitions** window supports the retirement process of personal data in SimCorp Dimension.

The configuration transport support of **Personal Data Retirement Definitions** will equally be crucial in defining and testing these definitions

in a test environment and importing them into a production environment without the risk of manual errors.

9 Performance

9.1 Performance Calculation

9.1.1 Decomposition of 1-legged CDS improves return breakdowns in FIPA

As of version 6.4, you can decompose a 1-legged CDS into a spot and a cash-equivalent position as part of the exposure-based performance work flow. This enhancement enables an improved return breakdown in Factor based FIPA by basing the return on exposure rather than market value. The CDS return can be broken into effects such as currency, carry, and spread movement.

Note

This enhancement improves instrument support in exposure-based performance which changes the decomposition behaviour of SimCorp Dimension. To preserve the previous behavior, apply a holding segment in **Decomposition Settings** for the decomposition of derivatives in the **Performance Calculation**. The holding segment shall exclude 1-legged CDSs from derivatives decomposition to ensure the CDS positions will not be decomposed.

To set up the improved return breakdowns:

1. Create a setup in the **Factor Based FIPA Effect Definitions** window with these recommended settings:

| Effect | Type | Sensitivity key ratio | Factor change key ratio |
|-----------------|--------------------------|-----------------------|-------------------------|
| Carry | Formula | Par spread | |
| Spread carry | Formula | Par spread | |
| Spread movement | Formula | CDS spread duration | Par spread |
| Carry (cash) | Defined from unexplained | | |

2. To configure exposure-based performance for CDS, change the exposure QC value to the face value of the CDS contract: In the assigned **Pricing Profiles** setup, assign a **Key Ratio Mapping** setup where a formula sets the **Exposure** value to **100** or **1**, depending on the quote factor.
3. In the related **Performance Measurement** setup, enable the decomposition of derivatives and assign an **Exposure Distribution Scheme** setup which configures the spot and cash-equivalent positions.

After the performance calculation, you can see position level results for the 1-legged CDS in the **Performance Calculation - List Calculation** window. Aggregated results are available in **Performance Manager** and in the **Performance Reports** and **Performance Analytics** dashboards.

9.1.2 Calc. FIPA local return using PC

As of version 6.4 you can calculate TWR local return in PC instead of RC, which is default. When using this option, yesterday's FX rate is converted to PC.

To activate this option, select **Calc. FIPA local return using PC** in the **Settings - Performance Calculation** window.

Note

If you select this option you must also select **Save PC values** in the **Database options** section in the **Settings - Performance Calculation** window.

You can only select this option when:

- **Results include - Factor based FIPA** is selected in the **Performance Calculation** window.

Performance calculation setups, which use this setting, can be used in the **Performance Measurement** window , provided that:

- **Tree type** is equal to **Investment structure**, **Investment structure node**, **Multiple Model Portfolios**, or **Model Portfolio**.
- **Top node split** is equal to **Portfolio**.

10 Portfolio Management

10.1 Asset Manager

10.1.1 Added swaption transactions and simulations to Asset Manager

As of version 6.4, you can enter bilateral swaption transactions and simulations in **Asset Manager**, also for block and allocation trades.

Previously, you could capture such trades in **Trade Manager**, but not in **Asset Manager** which is the application for portfolio management processes. The enhancement supports a more coherent, more efficient OTC workflow.

To set up the entry of swaptions transactions and simulations in **Asset Manager**, ensure that the corresponding templates are available in **Trade Manager**. **Asset Manager** will use the templates for transaction presets.

To enter a swaption, open **Asset Manager**:

1. Open the **Portfolio Sheet** applet.
2. Select the **New > OTC Simulation** option on the **Portfolio Sheet** ribbon. The **Templates** dialog box opens showing the templates from **Trade Manager**.
3. Select a **Swaption Vanilla** template. The **Swaption Vanilla Simulation** dialog box opens.
4. Enter the swaption as you would in Trade Manager:
 - A. Select **Trade or Block Trade**.
 - B. Fill in the static data.
 - C. Fill in the trade data on the **Trade Information**, **Accounting Information**, and **Codes** tabs.
5. Select the appropriate button at the bottom:
 - A. **Simulate** or **Execute** the trade.
 - B. To add more data, select **Open In Trade Manager**.

This creates a transaction on the **Request status** setting of the template. You can show the transaction in the **Order Outbox**. While you can display and edit the transaction in **Trade Manager**, you cannot raise the **Request status** setting to **Position** or higher if **Asset Manager** requires compliance validation of the transaction.

You can work with the simulated swaption shown in **Asset Manager** on the **Portfolio Sheet** applet and on the **Simulations** applet:

- You can edit the simulation either in line in the **Portfolio Sheet** applet or by right-clicking a trade and selecting **Edit Simulation**.

- You can create a transaction from a simulation with **Request** status set to **Entry**:
 - Either right-click the simulation on the **Simulations** tab and select **Create Transactions**
 - Or edit the simulation in the **Swaption Vanilla Simulation** dialog box and click **Execute**.
- You can perform compliance validation in the **Order Outbox** and, when successful, raise the **Request status** setting, if desired.
- You can perform lifecycle transactions in the **Portfolio Sheet** applet by selecting the **Modify Position** option from the right-click menu. In the **Modify position** dialog, set the **Transaction type** field to:
 - **Close**, or
 - **Novation step-out**

10.1.2 Create simulations and transactions for bilateral bond swap positions in Asset Manager

As of version 6.4, you can create simulations and transactions for bilateral bond swap positions when using the **Contract Simulation** window in Asset Manager. This enhancement supports the post-trade workflow for the bilateral bond swaps, making it a more coherent and more efficient OTC workflow in Asset Manager.

For more information on working in the **Contract Simulation** window in Asset Manager, see the **OTC Order-Based Workflow** user manual in the Help.

10.1.3 Unwind or increase post-trade bilateral cross-currency swaps in Asset Manager

As of version 6.4, you can unwind (close or reduce) or increase bilateral cross-currency swap positions using the **Modify position** window in Asset Manager.

To unwind or increase a bilateral cross-currency swap position, do the following:

1. Select a bilateral cross-currency swap position in the **Portfolio Sheet** or **Multiple Portfolio View** applets.
2. Right-click to select and open the **Modify position** window.
If the position is a simulation, right-click and select **Edit Simulation** to open the **Modify position** window.

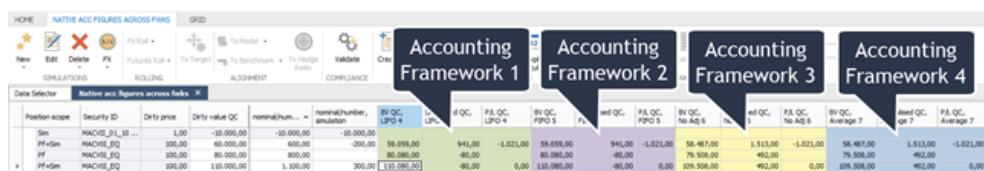
3. Select one of the following transaction types for the position and complete the required trade details.
 - **Close**
 - **Novation step-out**
 - **Increase (existing)**
 - **Increase (new)**
4. When finished, you can
 - See the effect on your portfolio by clicking **Preview**
 - Generate a simulation by clicking **Simulate**, or
 - Create a transaction by clicking **Execute**.

You cannot use the **Order Values** button with these positions.

10.1.4 [New Module] Asset Manager - Accounting Analytics Advanced

| | |
|--|---|
| Client segment | Asset Management, Fund Insurance, Life & Pension |
| Target audience | Portfolio managers; portfolio manager assistants; heads of portfolio management; analysts |
| Subscription-based licensing | Included in the Accounting Analytics subscription package |
| Sales Modules and sales module dependencies | Asset Manager - Base and Asset Manager - Accounting Analytics |

As of version 6.4, you can now see the impact of your investment decisions on profit and loss across different accounting frameworks in one view in Asset Manager. In addition, you can also check the effects of your simulations and orders in complex organisational structures where different booking portfolios are associated with different accounting frameworks. With this new module, you can simultaneously evaluate the implications of your investment decisions at GAAP, IFRS and national standards.



There are two main functional parts being delivered with this new module:

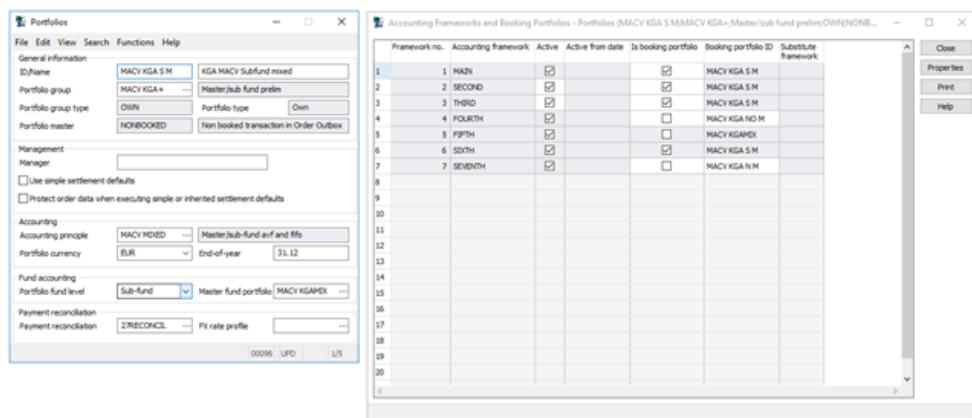
- Booking across portfolios is now supported for simulations, orders and preliminary transactions.
- View P/L at different multiple accounting frameworks simultaneously in the **Portfolio Sheet** applet.

To enable the functionality, select the **Use advanced accounting views** check box on the **Options** tab of the **Front Office Options** window.

Booking across portfolios is now supported for simulations, orders and preliminary transactions

SimCorp Dimension supports the definition of portfolio structures that include either one booking portfolio or many booking portfolios to which you can attach different accounting frameworks. Typically, trades are booked into an investment portfolio, which are then booked across associated booking portfolios. Financial organisations operating globally with complex portfolio hierarchies can benefit from the booking across portfolios functionality. Previously, you could see the effects of this functionality on booked trades only. Now, you can test your investment decisions and evaluate the implications of your simulations, orders and preliminary transactions in different booking portfolios before they are converted into booked trades. The solution is compatible with master/sub fund structures.

For example, there is an investment portfolio called MACV KGA S M which is a sub-fund in this case, but can be an ordinary portfolio. When you create a simulation, you can see its effects in the MACV KGA S M portfolio when viewing the MAIN, SECOND, THIRD, FOURTH and SIXTH accounting frameworks. However, on other accounting frameworks, the simulation is booked into different portfolios.



View P/L at different multiple accounting frameworks simultaneously in the Portfolio Sheet applet

You can now combine multiple accounting views representing different frameworks into a single, selectable accounting view, which is referred to as an 'advanced accounting view'. These advanced views, when added to Asset Manager enable portfolio managers to consider the impact of investment decisions on all the accounting frameworks relevant to the company.

To set up an advanced accounting view, do the following:

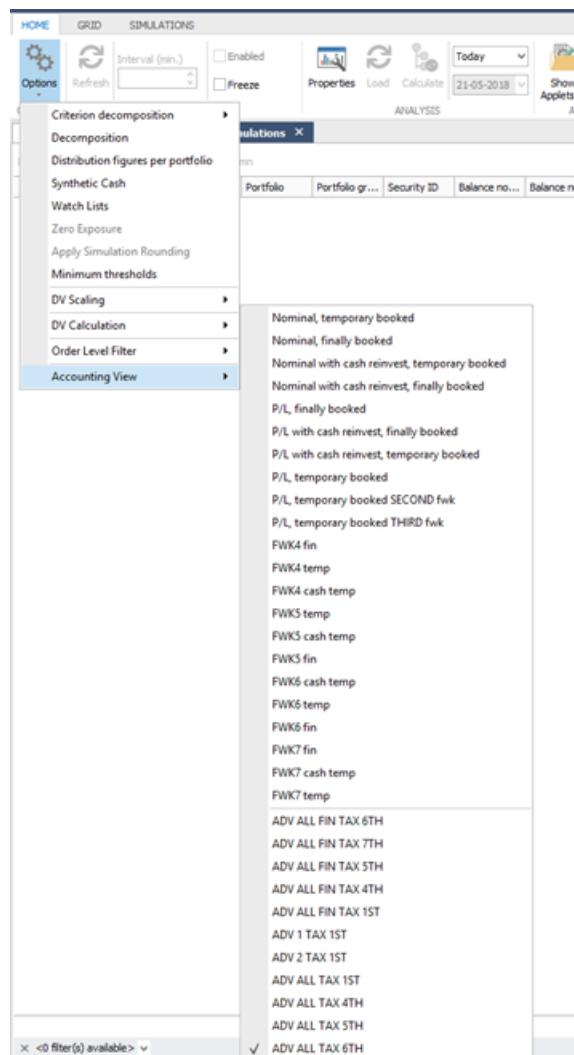
1. Open the **Front Office Accounting Views** window.
2. In an empty row, enter the **Accounting view** and **Accounting view name** fields.
3. Select the **Advanced** check box.
4. Select a nominal accounting view from the existing single accounting views for the **Nominal accounting view** field. This view should have the most granular nominal level framework with all the required split fields.
5. Select an investment accounting view from the existing single accounting views for the **Investment accounting view** field. This view will be applied for the **Tax Lots** applet in Asset Manager.
6. Select additional accounting views (up to 10 optional views) for the **Additional accounting view** fields to reflect all the accounting standards followed by your portfolios.

Note

For an advanced accounting view, single accounting views should be based on the accounting frameworks of the type **Temporarily and Finally Booked**.

The advanced accounting view supports booking into the same portfolio across different frameworks, as well as booking into different portfolios across different frameworks.

You can see the effects of the pre-configured accounting views on your portfolios by selecting the view from Asset Manager's **Options > Accounting View** menu. The advanced accounting views are displayed below the dividing line displayed in the selection menu.



Benefits

- Enables portfolio managers to see current accounting analytics across all relevant frameworks with different accounting principles at the same time.
- Enables portfolio managers to see the accounting effect on positions in their investment portfolio and on aggregated accounting portfolios.
- Enables portfolio managers to see the change in accounting analytics across all accounting frameworks and related aggregated accounting portfolios caused by simulated changes to security positions in their investment portfolio.

10.1.5 Manage cash movement transactions directly from the Cash Viewer

| | |
|--|--|
| Client segment | Asset Management, Fund Insurance, Life & Pension, Service Provider, Bank, Treasury |
| Target audience | Portfolio managers, portfolio manager assistants, analysts, cash managers |
| Subscription-based licensing | Cash Viewer |
| Sales Modules and sales module dependencies | Asset Manager - Cash Viewer |

As with the market data it is possible to see a range of real-time fields linked to the rates such as High/Low/Close. New rates are refreshed straight away in the Asset manager screens and can be set to update at regular intervals or on demand.

As of version 6.4, you can create the same cash movement transactions from the **Cash Viewer** applet in the Asset Manager as you can from the **Cash Management** window.

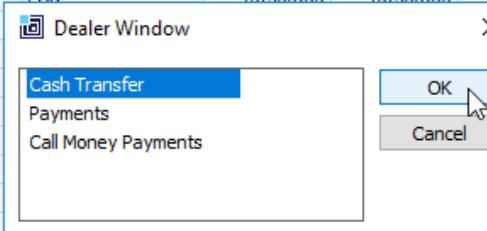
You can launch transaction windows directly from a cash balance field in the cash ladder to support

- Cash transfers
- Payments
- Call Money Payments from Bank Accounts
- Move cash from cash buckets
- Increase cash from cash buckets
- Decrease cash from cash buckets

Certain context data is automatically populated in the transaction window fields, which reduces manual input errors and improves a timely workflow.

To manage cash movement transactions from the **Cash Viewer** applet, right-click on a cell in the data grid, and select **Open Transaction Window**. This displays the **Dealer Window** selection list, where you can see and select from a list of all available transaction windows.

| Portfolio Sheet1 | | Strategy Definition | | Data Selector | | Order Outbox (59) | | Cash Viewer X |
|---|-----------------|---------------------|----------------------------|----------------------------|---------------------------|-------------------|--|---------------|
| Drag a column header here to group by that column | | | | | | | | |
| Security ID | Instrument type | Quotation Currency | Cash balance 23-04-2018 | Cash balance 30-04-2018 | Cash balance In Future | | | |
| FXH02_01 ... | Bank account | EUR | 6.000,02 | 6.000,02 | 6.000,02 | | | |
| FXH02_01 ... | Bank account | GBP | -4.000,00 | -4.000,00 | -4.000,00 | | | |
| FXH02_02 ... | Bank account | EUR | -10.500,00 | -10.500,00 | -10.500,00 | | | |
| ▶ FXH02_02 ... | Bank account | | | | | 000,00 | | |
| FXH02_03 ... | Bank account | | | | | 749,99 | | |
| FXH02_03 ... | Bank account | | | | | 100,00 | | |
| FXH02_03 ... | Bank account | | | | | 100,00 | | |
| FXH02_04 ... | Bank account | | | | | 000,00 | | |
| FXH02_04 ... | Bank account | | | | | 666,66 | | |
| FXH02_05 ... | Bank account | | | | | 000,00 | | |
| FXH02_05 ... | Bank account | | | | | 000,00 | | |
| FXH02_05 ... | Bank account | GBP | -195.000,00 | -195.000,00 | -195.000,00 | | | |
| FXH02_05 ... | Bank account | USD | -195.000,00 | -195.000,00 | -195.000,00 | | | |



The list changes dynamically, depending of the instrument type selected.

From a bank account you can open the **Cash Transfer**, **Payments**, and **Call Money Payments** windows. From a cash bucket you can open the **Move Cash** and **Increase/Decrease Cash** windows.

Note

The **Trade date** field on transactions will always show today's date by default.

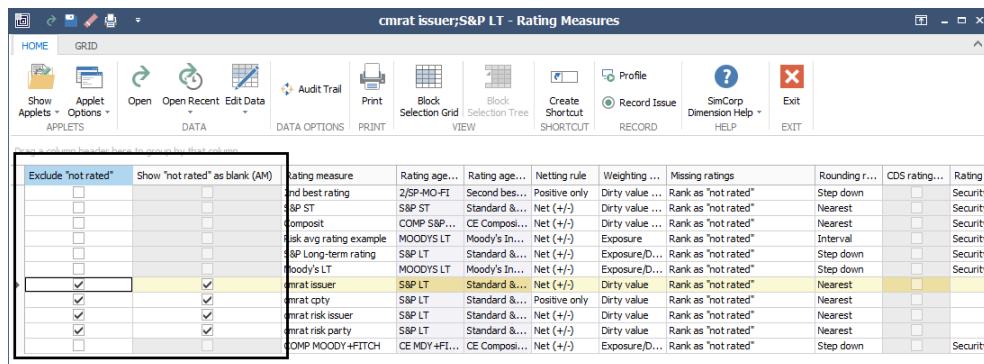
10.1.6 Handle not rated securities and issuers in rating measures [6.3-IMPL]

As of this release version, you can exclude ratings for securities and issuers that are not rated from average weighting calculations used in Asset Manager and Compliance Manager validation rules. Previously, securities or issuers defined in the **Rating Measures** or **Rating Agency** windows as **Not Rated**, were included in average weighting calculations, which could result in unrealistic average ratings where a group of securities are being evaluated.

To mitigate this issue, two new check boxes have been added to the **Rating Measures** window, which you can use for your not rated securities and issuers:

- **Exclude 'not rated'**—The not-rated rating has no impact on the average weighted rating as the affected holding is included in the calculations as a zero weight.

- **Show 'not rated' as blank (AM)**—Displays a blank for the not rated assets in Asset Manager portfolio sheets rather than the default value associated with the not-rated rating in the **Rating Agencies** window. You can select this check box only after you select the **Exclude 'not rated'** check box.



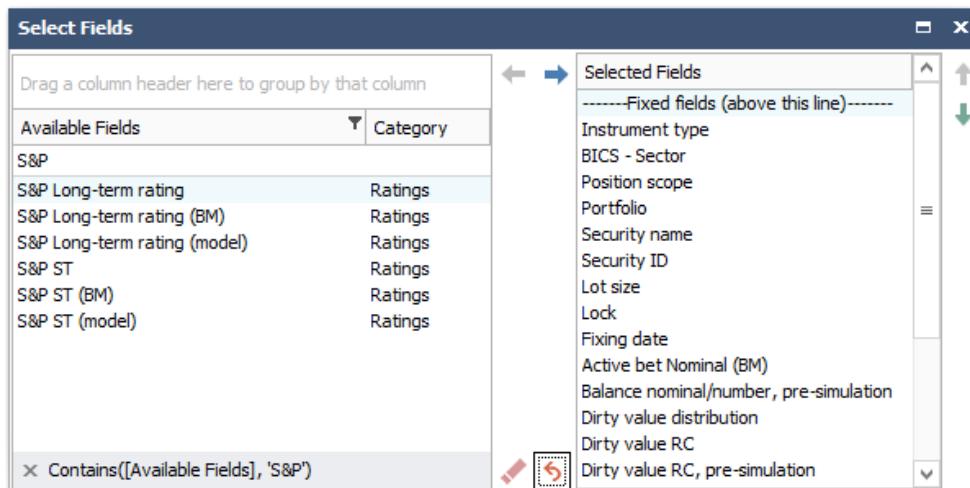
In addition, the options for the **Missing ratings** field in **Rating Measures** window, which is used to define how missing ratings must be handled, have been relabelled with more user friendly titles. Their functionality is the same as before which is:

- **Rank as 'not rated'**—Use the rating specified as the “not rated” step of the rating agency.
- **Weight as zero**—Continue but use zero as weight for the holding.
- **Weight as zero and report**—Continue but use zero as weight for the holding and report an error or data exception.

10.1.7 Display benchmark and model portfolio ratings fields in Asset Manager

All ratings that are defined in the **Rating Measures** window, for a specific rating agency, can be displayed in the **Portfolio Sheet**, **Multiple Portfolio View** and **Pivot** tables of Asset Manager. In previous versions of Asset Manager, these ratings could only be displayed from the perspective of the portfolio, including any average ratings calculated for groupings added to your layout.

In this release version, any rating measures that you create in the **Rating Measures** window are now available for related holdings in either the benchmark or model portfolio. You can select these from the **Select Fields** window, and from the **Ratings** category.

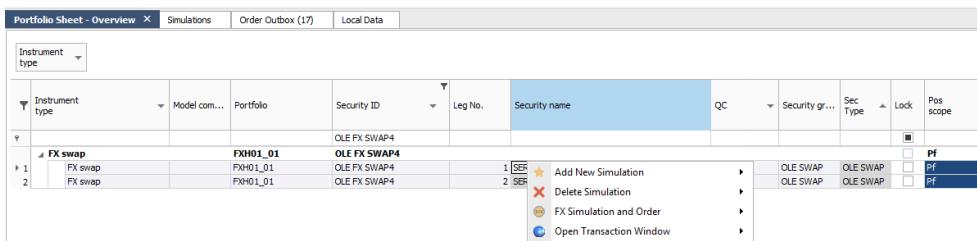


When you add these rating measures to your layout, the average rating for any displayed grouping is calculated by using the same methodology as the existing portfolio-specific fields, but by using the weight or value for the benchmark and model portfolio.

When a rating is not available for a security, the **Exclude "not rated"** setting in the **Rating Measures** window also applies where you have added the equivalent benchmark and model portfolio rating measures to your layout. For further information, see [Handle not rated securities and issuers in rating measures \[6.3-IMPL\] on page 191](#).

10.1.8 Open transaction windows from positions in Portfolio Sheet

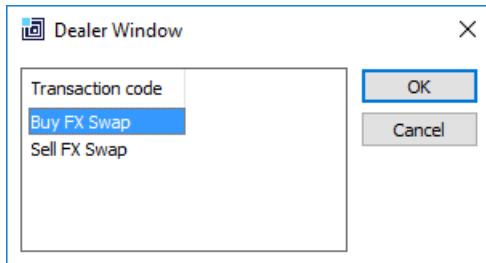
As of version 6.4, you can now quickly access the transaction windows from positions displayed in the **Portfolio Sheet** applet. You can use a new right-click menu option called **Open Transaction Window** to create new transactions based on the existing position.



The right-click menu option is displayed only for booked positions and for all asset classes not created in the Trade Manager.

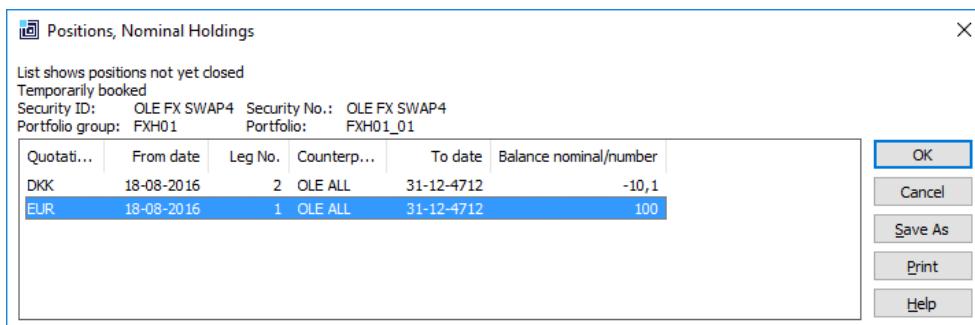
To create a new transaction based on an existing position, do the following:

1. Right-click on a booked position in the **Portfolio Sheet** applet and select **Open Transaction Window**, to display a **Dealer Window** dialog box.

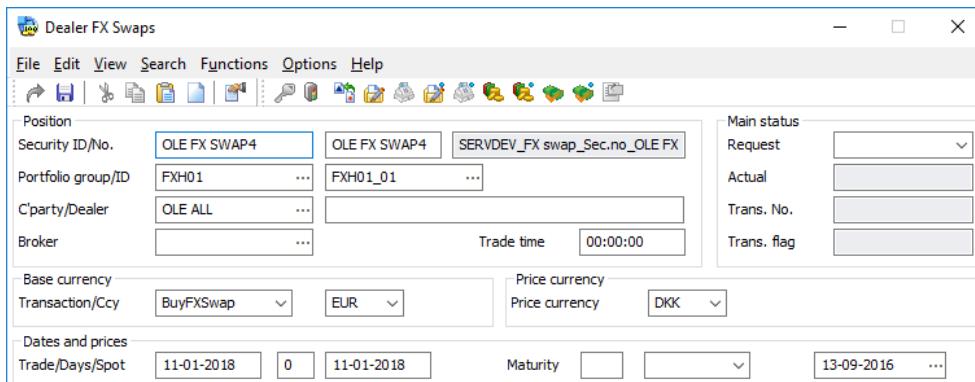


2. Select the transaction type you require from the displayed list, for example **Buy FX Swap**, and click **OK**.

Note that the transaction types displayed in the list will vary according to the asset class of the selected position. The **Positions, Nominal Holdings** window is displayed for you to select a specific leg associated with the position.



3. Select a specific leg and click **OK** to display the related trade transaction window, for example a **Dealer FX Swaps** transaction window.



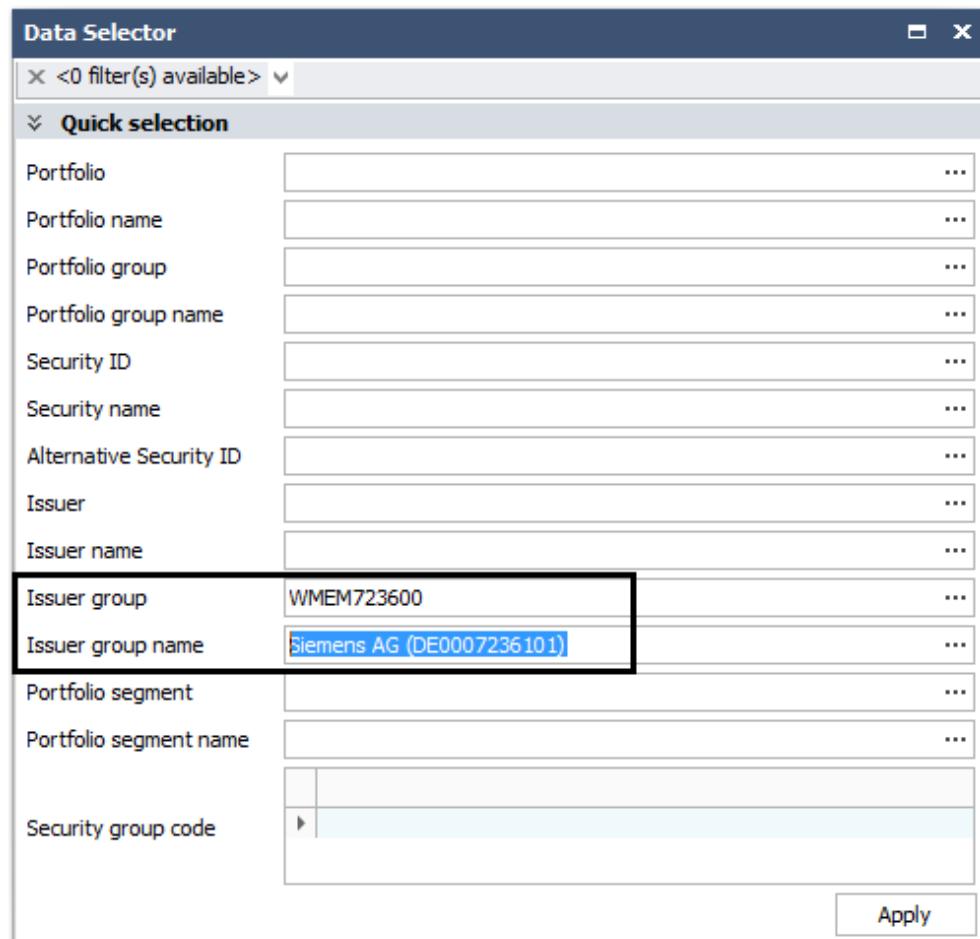
4. Complete the trade transaction window, set the required transaction status, and select **Save** from the **File** menu.

10.1.9 Search on Issuer Group in the Data Selector

As of this release version, two new fields have been added to the **Quick selection** section of the **Data Selector** applet. These new fields enable you to quickly search for holdings based on Issuer groups, that is the level above Issuer.

The new fields added to the **Quick selection** section are:

- **Issuer group**
- **Issuer group name**



These new fields behave in exactly the same way as the other fields in this section. This means that when you enter the few first letters of the name of a portfolio, this displays a drop-down list displaying portfolios whose names begin with those letters. If you prefix the letters with a percent sign (%), this will search for the text string in any name position. Alternatively, you can click in the field of interest and press F4 to display the **Select Value** window, which you can use to search through all values held on the system.

10.1.10 Save data viewing option in Asset Manager layout

In this release version, you can now save the **Hide Zero Holdings With P/L** data viewing option in your Asset Manager layout so that this data perspective is automatically applied each time you run Asset Manager.

To save the data option in your layout:

1. Load the required template.
2. Display the **Portfolio Sheet**, or **Multiple Portfolio View or Single Security Targeting** applet.
3. From the **Data Options** menu in the **Data** ribbon group, select **Hide Zero Holdings With P/L**.
4. Save the layout.

10.1.11 Release single orders and transactions excluded from approval [6.3-IMPL]

As of this release version, Asset Manager can automatically exclude orders and preliminary transactions from the approval flow, where they are part of a bundle being validated for threshold-based approvals. Previously, all orders or preliminary transactions in a validation bundle that hit an absolute or relative limit whose rule **Priority** is linked with the **Request Approval** action, had to be all approved by another portfolio manager before they could be released. For further information, see the following items in the version 6.3 release notes:

- **Add request approval actions to compliance rules**
- **Use approval flow for preliminary transactions**

When you now have a mix of orders or preliminary transactions in the approval segment, and some of them have been excluded from the approval flow because they passed the compliance rules with a **Request approval** action, you can use the **Approve/Release** command in the **Order Outbox** applet to release the excluded orders and send the others for approval.

This feature covers the exclusion from approval for:

- Orders and preliminary transactions
- Single and multi-legged instruments such as FX swaps
- Manually created or STP imported orders

To view the excluded items, you can add a new field called **Excluded from approval** to the Asset Manager **Order Outbox** applet. This field indicates which orders or preliminary transactions have been excluded from approval.

| Order Free code 23 | Approval group | Excluded from approval | Portfolio | Side | Security ID | Nominal/Lots | Actual status | Class | Destination | Validation status | Can release |
|--------------------|----------------|-------------------------------------|------------|------|-------------|--------------|---------------|-------|-------------|-------------------|-------------|
| TRSAPI G1 | | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | TRSAPI1004 | BUY | TRSAPI EQ 1 | 1 Entry | | | | | |
| TRSAPI G1 | | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | TRSAPI1004 | BUY | APREL_EQ | 1 Entry | | | | | |
| TRSAPI G1 | | <input type="checkbox"/> | TRSAPI1004 | BUY | CVA EQ 1 | 1 Entry | | | | | |
| TRSAPI G1 | | <input type="checkbox"/> | TRSAPI1004 | BUY | CVA EQ 1 | 1.000 Entry | | | | | |
| TRSAPI G1 | | <input type="checkbox"/> | TRSAPI1004 | BUY | APREL_EQ | 1.000 Entry | | | | | |
| TRSAPI G1 | | <input type="checkbox"/> | TRSAPI1004 | BUY | TRSAPI EQ 1 | 1.000 Entry | | | | | |
| TRSAPI G1 | | <input type="checkbox"/> | TRSAPI1004 | BUY | TRSAPI EQ 1 | 1 Entry | | | | | |

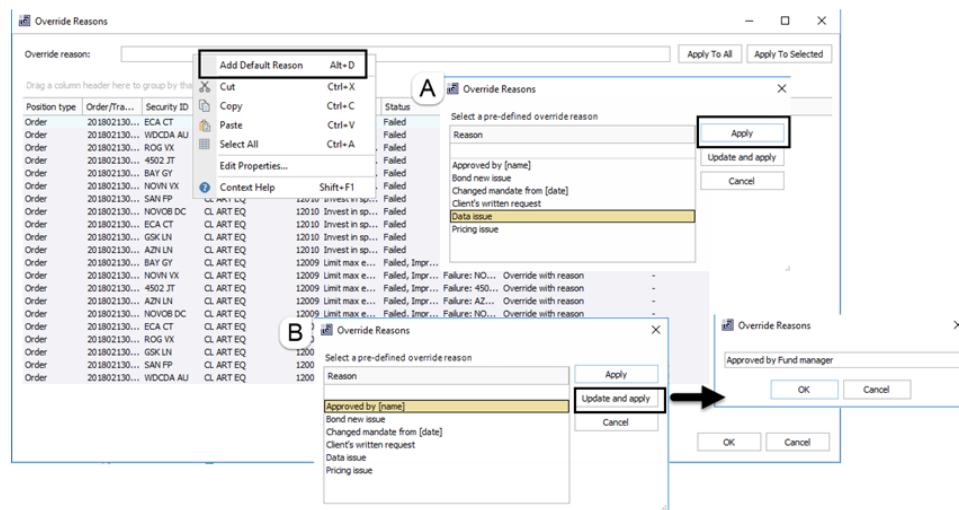
In this example, three transactions are validated, and two pass and one fails, although all three can be released. Two of the transactions are

excluded from the approval flow as they passed the compliance validation but the third transaction has to be approved before releasing.

10.1.12 Apply default override reasons to compliance results in Asset Manager

As of version 6.4, you can create separate reasons for overriding compliance failures in Asset Manager, and store them as your default override reasons. When you want to override a compliance failure in the **Compliance Results** window, or want to add a reason in the **Pre-Trade Monitor** applet of Compliance Manager, you can either select one of the default override reasons or enter your custom override reason.

You can pre-define override reasons in the **Override Reasons** window, and then apply the default reason to one or all selected compliance failures, and you can amend the default text at any time with additional details.



For portfolio managers, this feature reduces the number of clicks needed and helps speed up the order release process. For compliance officers, you can use standardised reasons which simplifies the review process and classification of breaches.

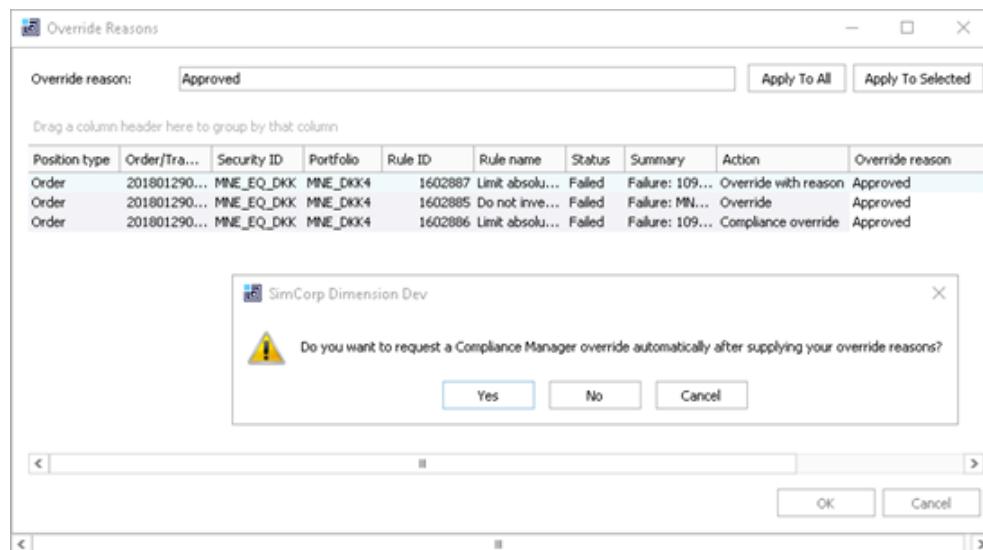
10.1.13 Improved workflow using compliance overrides in Asset Manager

Portfolio managers often have to deal with a mix of compliance breaches of different severity during pre-trade validation. Some of the breaches can require not only portfolio managers' override or override with reason, but also compliance override. As of this release version, you can now override a mixture of different compliance breaches with different severities with a reduced number of user actions in Asset Manager. To reduce the number of clicks required in the override flow, several enhancements have been made to the **Compliance Reasons** applet.

- Smart filtering—It now supports smart filtering of compliance results, so that the **Override** button is enabled only when you select one or

more results in the **Compliance Results** applet and there is at least one breach which requires an override, and override with reason, or a compliance override.

- Request override—A **Request override** button has been added to the **Compliance Results** applet to enable you to manage all your compliance breaches in one place and perform your override and compliance override actions. Compliance overrides can be requested here, but only after all previous breaches have been resolved.
- Override reasons—You can add a reason for the compliance override from the **Compliance Results** applet, to avoid providing a reason in a message box at a later stage in the flow.



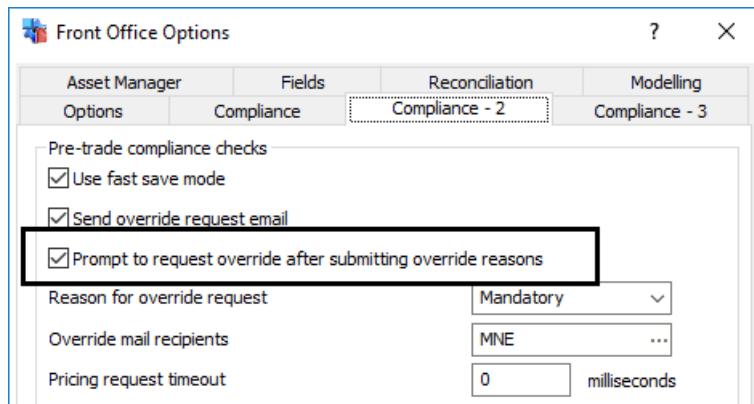
As a consequence of these enhancements to the workflow, some nine individual steps (that is, individual clicks) have been taken out of the flow.

Note

A compliance override can be requested only after all the previous breaches have been managed, and you can still request a compliance override by using the **Order Outbox** as before.

Front office options setup

A new check box called **Prompt to request override after submitting override reasons** has been added to **Compliance - 2** tab of the **Front Office Options** window. You can select this check box to display a confirmation prompt for requesting compliance overrides (that is **Yes** or **No**) when you have overridden all the outstanding compliance breaches in the **Override Reasons** window.



This check box is cleared by default meaning that the compliance override requests will be automatic after submitting your reasons, and the confirmation step will not be included in the flow.

Using the improved compliance override flow

The new compliance override flow can now be performed with the following steps.

1. Select a group of orders in the **Pending orders** folder of the **Order Outbox** and click **Validate**.
2. Click the **Compliance Results** tab and select all compliance results.
3. Click **Override** in the **ACTIONS** ribbon group to display the **Override Reasons** window.
4. Enter an override reason.
5. Apply the override reason to all breaches or only to the selected compliance breaches, and click **OK**.
6. You have one of two courses of action now depending upon whether the **Prompt to request override after submitting override reasons** check box in the **Front Office Options** window has been selected or not:
 - o Selected—A prompt will be displayed at this point. In this case you can click **Yes** to submit the override reasons to the compliance officer or **No** to return to the **Override Reasons** window.
 - o Cleared—You will have to request a compliance override manually from the **Order Outbox**. This is the default behaviour.
7. When the compliance officer accepts the compliance overrides, the portfolio manager can release the orders in Asset Manager.

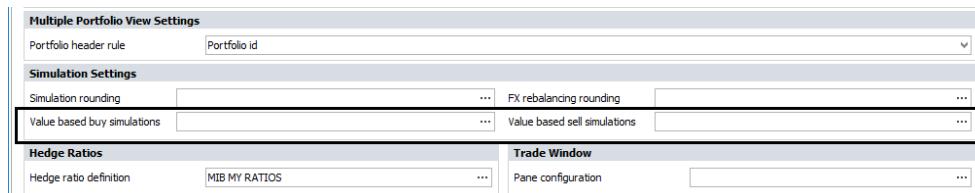
10.1.14 Create value-based simulations dependent on the trade side in Asset Manager [6.1-IMPL] [6.2-IMPL] [6.3-IMPL]

In this release version, you can generate value-based simulations more easily. The **Estimated value QC** field shows values of the existing simulations, and now you can define an instrument segment so that the

value order basis can be automatically applied to simulations depending upon specific security characteristics and the trade side.

Previously, you could generate value-based simulations but only manually setting the **Order basis** field to **Value** and by specifying any value in the **Estimated value** fields added to your portfolio views.

Two new settings have been added to the **General** tab of the **Settings Template** called **Value based buy simulations** and **Value based sell simulations**.



Note

Simulations for value-based orders are supported only for equity-like instrument types such as equity, fund certificate, index certificate, GDR/ADR and right.

To set up an instrument segment for use with value-based simulations, do the following:

1. Open the **Settings Template** window and load your specific template.
2. Right-click the **Value based simulations** field in the **Simulation Settings** section, and select **Open Related**.
3. Select the **General Segments** option in the **Select** window and click **OK**.
4. Select **New** from the **File** menu of the **Segments** window.
5. Complete the **Segments** window to limit the segment only to those instrument types you want to simulate as value-based orders.
It is recommended that the segment is based on the **Instrument** table.
6. Save the new instrument segment.
7. Select the new segment by using the **Value based buy simulations** or **Value based sell simulations** field and save your template.

Once you have defined a segment and associated it with your settings template, you must re-load your Asset Manager setup. You can then generate value-based simulations in-grid or from large rebalancing operations such as **Align to Model**, **Align to Lead Portfolio**, **Align to Target**, and **Execute Strategies**. You can simulate in grid in all open for simulation fields, including nominal fields, and the **Order basis** field will be set to **Value** dependent on the segments specified in **Value based buy simulations** and **Value based sell simulations** settings and side of a trade. However, when you add a new simulation in the **Create Simulations**

window, you must still use the **Balance nominal/number** or **Balance number of units** fields for nominal-based simulations, and the **Estimated value QC** field for value-based simulations.

Note

When you sell out a position, Asset Manager automatically sets the **Order basis** to **Nominal** regardless of the setting to ensure that you do not have any residual value left in the position.

10.1.15 Support for order expiry via the front Office API

As of this release version, you can use the front office to expire orders that have been released, not filled, or partially filled by using a remote API call from your in-house application. A new function called **ExpireOrder** has been added to the front office API, and performs the same function as the **Expire Order** command from the **Order Outbox** applet. You can use this command to expire orders that were created manually in Asset Manager, imported using STP processing or created by using the front office API.

The **ExpireOrder** command comprises two asynchronous API calls, a **Begin** call and an **End** call. You use the **Begin** call to pass a collection of order IDs and use the **End** call to retrieve on success an operation ID or, on error, an error message and error code.

For further details on the use of this new API command, see the **Front Office API** reference manual.

10.1.16 Confirm or reject re-validation attempt for accepted compliance override [6.1-IMPL] [6.2-IMPL] [6.3-IMPL]

As of this release version, you are warned if you attempt to re-validate an order whose compliance override has been previously accepted by a compliance officer. Previously, you could re-validate an order in the **Pending orders** folder, not knowing its override request had been accepted thus forcing you to go through the override process again. Now, a warning prompt is displayed when you attempt to do this, which you must either accept or reject.

You are about to dissolve a validation which has been accepted by a compliance officer. Are you sure you want to continue?

10.1.17 Display transaction events in the Order Outbox applet

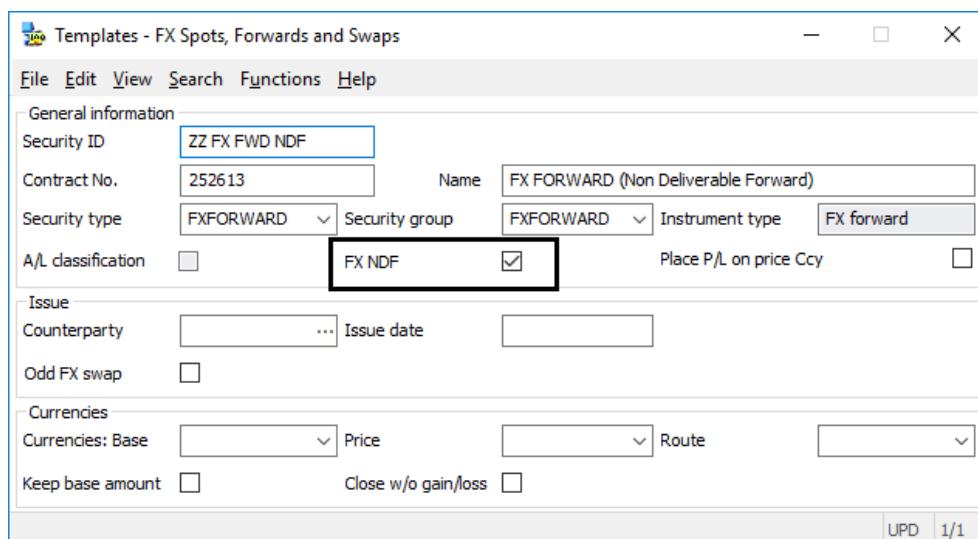
As of this release version, you can see events related to preliminary transactions displayed in the **Order Events** section of the **Order Outbox** applet. Portfolio managers can choose to work with both portfolio orders and preliminary transactions in the **Order Outbox** and so this enhancement provides a consistent audit trail of events for both types of trades.

The events for preliminary transactions are prefixed with the text **Transaction**, such as **Transaction created**, **Transaction changed**, **Transaction approved**. The **Order Events** grid shows the same events as specified in the **Transaction Events** sub-window of the **Dealer** windows.

10.1.18 Distinguish between FX forward and FX NDF orders

As of this release version, portfolio managers can now distinguish between FX forward and FX forward NDF (non-deliverable forward) orders when they are raised either from the **Portfolio Orders** window or from the **Simulations** applet in Asset Manager. Enhancements have been made to the definition of these instrument types to ensure the correct routing of FX forward NDF orders to Order Manager and the inclusion of mandatory aggregation criteria.

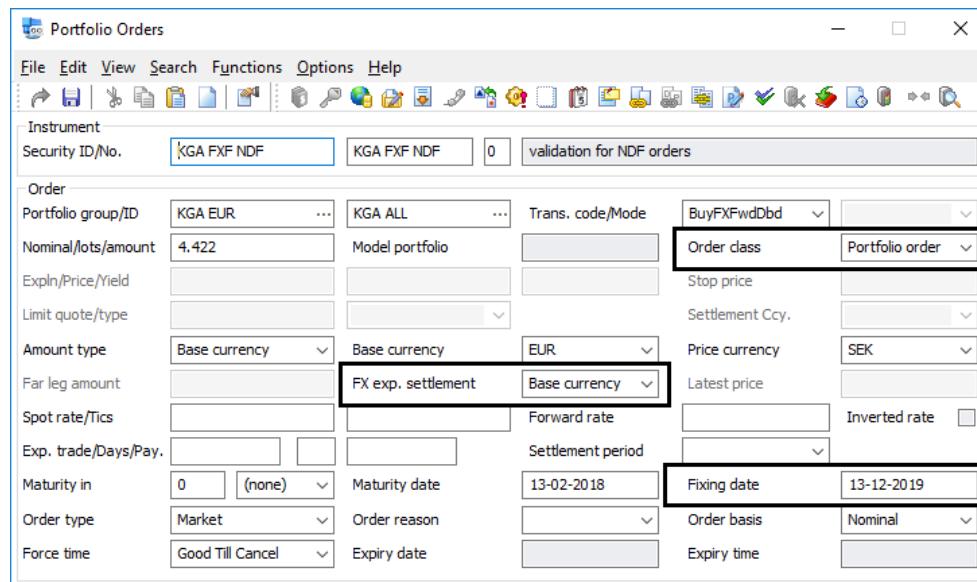
In both cases, you can create the orders from your FX forward instrument template. However, for the creation of the FX forward NDF orders, you must now add mandatory identifying information in the **FX Spots**, **Forwards**, and **Swaps** static data and templates windows when you select the **FX NDF** check box.



When this check box is selected, you must supply the following when creating portfolio orders:

- **Fixing date**—This is now used as mandatory aggregation criteria, and an FX forward NDF order cannot be released to Order Manager without supplying this date.
- **FX expected settlement**—The settlement must be quoted in either the **Price currency** or the **Base currency**.
- **Order destination**—The above restrictions are applicable only where the template used is **FX NDF**, the order type is **Portfolio Order**, and the **Order destination** is **Order Manager**.

The following example shows the mandatory order details completed for an order based on the FX NDF template.



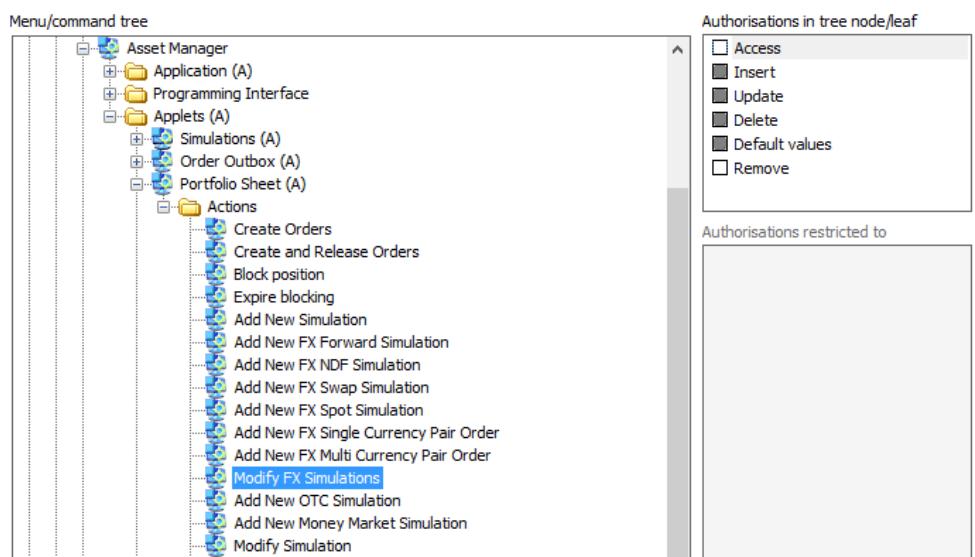
For more information about creating FX NDF securities using the static data window, see [Support for FX NDF in static data](#).

10.1.19 Modify FX simulations as FX currency pair

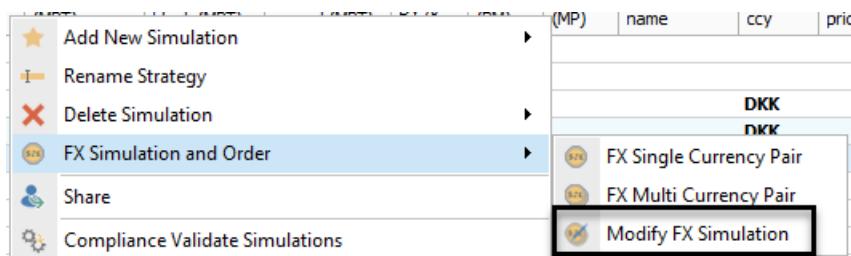
As of this release version, you are now able to modify FX simulations (that is FX forward, FX spot and FX swap simulations) created with either the **FX Single Currency Pair** or **FX Multi Currency Pair** windows in the new **Modify FX Multi Currency Pair Simulations** window. Each FX instrument type has its own customisable layout based on the window format in which they were originally created.

Previously, when you selected an FX simulation in the **Simulations** or other relevant applets and selected **Edit simulation** from the right-click menu, the **Modify simulation** window was displayed showing the FX simulation details.

To allow a more logical and consistent flow for editing FX simulations created in the two **FX Currency Pair** windows, a new **Modify FX Simulations** setting has been added to the **Tasks and Commands** authorisation for each relevant applet.

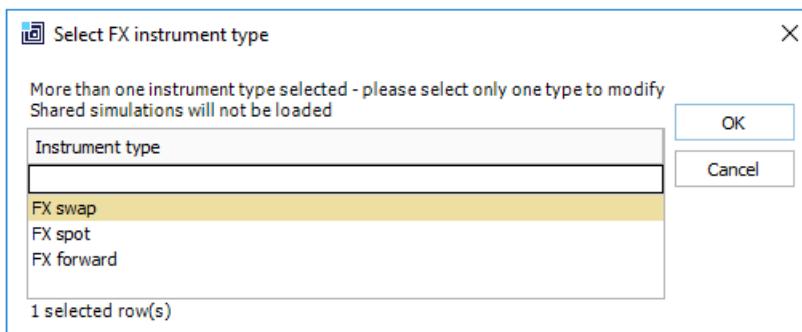


When access to this setting is granted, this enables the **Modify FX simulation** command under the **FX Simulation and Order** menus and disables the existing **Edit simulation** command for FX simulations.

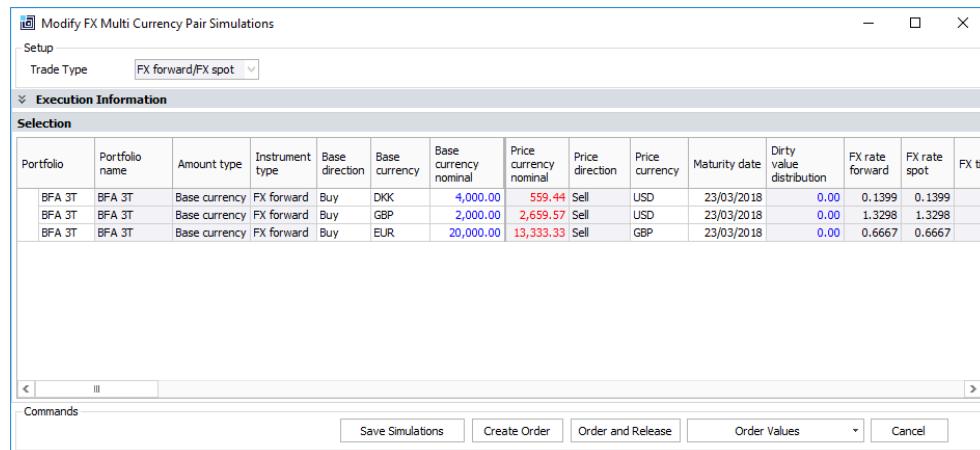


Selecting multiple instrument types using the **Modify FX Simulation** option has the following behaviour:

- Non-FX simulations are ignored.
- Shared (that is, shared but un-grabbed) FX simulations are ignored.
- Selection of more than one FX instrument type prompts you to select the relevant instrument type to be modified by using a pop-up window.



When you open the **Modify FX Multi Currency Pair Simulations** window, the **Execution Information** panel is collapsed by default and contains no values. When you enter values into the fields in this panel, this will propagate those values to all simulations in the **Selection** grid. You can enter individual values or amend them directly in the relevant field.



When you modify FX simulations, the **Amount Type** field is set to **Base Currency** as in the creation process. Asset Manager will automatically convert any FX simulation with **Amount Type = Price Currency** to **Base Currency** accordingly. The **Modify FX Simulations** flow also respects your settings made in the **FX Simulation Defaults** window, such as **Merge FX forward and FX spot**, **FX Swap on two lines** and **Currency precedence**. For further information, see the *Configure FX order generation defaults* topic in the help.

10.1.20 Performance improvements in Asset Manager

As of this release version, a number of enhancements have been made to Asset Manager to improve its performance in loading portfolio positions.

Disable command conditions when loading Order Outbox folders

Commands for the **All**, **Pending orders**, and **Working orders** folders in the **Order Outbox** of the Asset Manager will now be temporarily disabled during position loading. This results in better application performance when working with large numbers of orders or preliminary transactions in the **Order Outbox**. You can still use the folder commands, such as **Validate** or **Release**, but only after all orders or preliminary transactions have been loaded for these folders.

Improvement to Order Outbox-only data selections

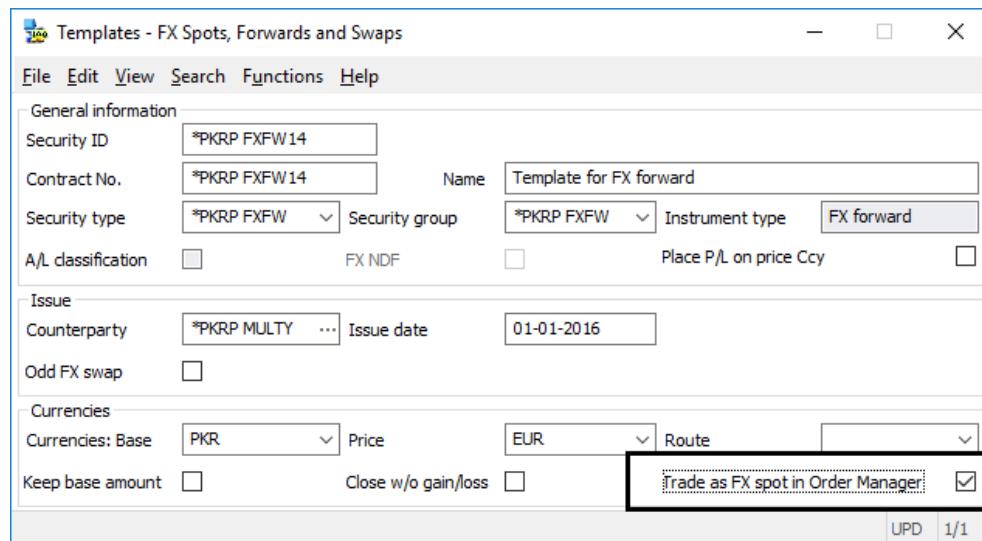
The performance of loading of **Order Outbox only** data selections which contain fields for the **Order Outbox only** section (previously called **Order only**) of the **Selection Editor** of the **Data Selector** applet has been improved.

Improved performance of initial loading of Order Outbox applet

The performance of the initial loading of the **Order Outbox** has been improved by storing links between change requests and program trades in the front office data layer.

10.1.21 Treat FX forwards as FX spots in Order Manager [6.3-IMPL]

As of this release version, you can treat FX forward orders as FX spot orders once they are received in Order Manager. For this purpose you can now select a new check box called **Trade as FX spot in the Order Manager** in the **Templates – FX Spots, Forwards and Swaps** window and in the **FX Spots, Forwards and Swaps** dealer window.



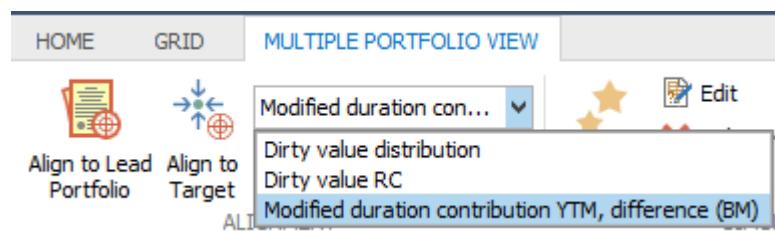
Note

This check box is open for input only when the **Instrument type** field is **FX forward**.

Once allocations are received from Order Manager, FX forward transactions are created.

10.1.22 Use Modified duration contribution YTM, difference (BM) as target for multiple portfolio alignment [6.31-IMP]

As of this release version, you can add the **Modified duration contribution YTM, difference (BM)** field to the **ALIGNMENT** ribbon group in the **Multiple Portfolio Views** applet to align positions across portfolios. The field is available for selection from the drop-down list in this ribbon group when you add the field to the **Lead** portfolio band.



To align portfolios to the same value in the **Modified duration contribution YTM, difference (BM)** field:

1. Select the **Modified duration contribution YTM, difference (BM)** option from the **ALIGNMENT** ribbon group.
2. Do one of the following:
 - Click **Align to Lead** in the ribbon to align all portfolios to the position values for the **Lead** portfolio.
 - Enter a value in the **Target** field for the positions that you want to align across all portfolios, and click **Align to Target** in the ribbon.

10.1.23 View more details about cash balances in the Cash Viewer applet

The **Cash Viewer** applet of Asset Manager shows cash balances and forecasts on the settlement date. As of this release version, you can view the trade date for simulations, orders, preliminary and booked transactions in the **Cash Viewer** applet so you can analyse your cash balances from the perspective of trading activity.

For simulations and orders, if the **Expected trade** date is empty, the **Trade date** field in the **Cash Balance Details** window will show today's date.

Note

You cannot see the trade date for the forecasted cash balances.

As of this release version, you can also select the **Order number** field, so you can reference cash balances for specific orders. In addition, you can select **Payment long security name 1** and **Payment long security name 2** fields for better identification of the securities generating the cash effect.

| Cash Balance Details | | | | | | |
|-------------------------|---------------------------|----------------|----------------|-----------------|------------|-----------------|
| Payment instrument type | Business transaction code | Payment source | Order number | Transaction No. | Trade date | Settlement Date |
| Bank account | CashTransfer | Transaction | | 20180327008041 | 28.03.2018 | 29.03.2018 |
| Bank account | CashTransfer | Transaction | | 20180326000120 | 26.03.2018 | 29.03.2018 |
| Bond | Buy/Sell | Order | 20180329000666 | 0 | 26.03.2018 | 29.03.2018 |
| Bond | Coupon | Transaction | | 20180327000040 | 29.03.2018 | 29.03.2018 |
| Call money | WdrMoney | Transaction | | 20180326000127 | 27.03.2018 | 29.03.2018 |
| Deposit | PlacementDep | Transaction | | 20180327000029 | 28.03.2018 | 29.03.2018 |
| Deposit | RcvBorrow | Transaction | | 20180327000028 | 27.03.2018 | 29.03.2018 |
| Equity | Buy/Sell | Order | 20180329000658 | 0 | 29.03.2018 | 29.03.2018 |
| Fund certificate | Buy/Sell | Simulation | | 0 | 29.03.2018 | 29.03.2018 |
| Fund certificate | Buy/Sell | Simulation | | 0 | 29.03.2018 | 29.03.2018 |
| Fund certificate | Buy/Sell | Simulation | | 0 | 29.03.2018 | 29.03.2018 |

To view additional information on the cash balances, do the following:

1. Within Asset Manager and with your required data selection loaded, display the **Cash Viewer** applet.
2. Right-click on a cash balance and select **Show cash details** to display the underlying transaction details.
3. Add the fields to the **Cash Balance Details** window by using the **Select Fields** window, if needed.

10.1.24 Round Estimated Value QC for value-based simulations

As of version 6.4, you can now round the **Estimated value QC** field for value-based simulations in Asset Manager. You can benefit from this new functionality when you enter amounts in the **Estimated value QC** or **Estimated value QC, simulation** fields, when:

- Changing the value in the **Order basis** field from **Nominal** to **Value**.
- Generating value-based simulations in-grid.
- Performing large rebalancing operations such as **Align to Model**, **Align to Lead Portfolio**, **Align to Target**, and **Execute Strategies**.

See also the release note item [Create value-based simulations dependent on the trade side in Asset Manager \[6.1-IMPL\] \[6.2-IMPL\] \[6.3-IMPL\]](#) on page 199.

| Simulation Settings | | | |
|--|------------|-----|------------------------------|
| Simulation rounding | VALB ROUND | ... | FX rebalancing rounding |
| Value-based buy simulations | BUY_VAL | ... | Value-based sell simulations |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Apply value-based rounding | | | |

To use rounding for value-based simulations, do the following:

1. Open the **Settings Template** window and load the required template.
2. Select a simulation rounding rule by using the **Simulation rounding** field in the **Simulation Settings** section.

3. Select the **Apply value-based rounding** check box in the **Simulation Settings** section.
4. Save your template and re-load your Asset Manager setup.
5. Select the **Apply Simulation Rounding** option from the Asset Manager **Options** menu.

Note

Simulation rounding does not work in the **Create Simulations** window or when adjusting values in the **Estimated value QC** field in the **Simulations** applet.

10.1.25 Make shared simulations private

As of this release version, Asset Manager supports the sharing of simulations between users. Portfolio managers can work with shared responsibilities for decision support on their operating portfolios and allow other colleagues within their team structure to review a proposed investment strategy.

When you share simulations, each member of the specified front office user group can see them in Asset Manager and, depending upon which view mode they select, can grab, edit, or delete them.

If you want to change your decision about sharing, you can grab and delete the simulations. Now, you can make simulations private, modify them, and then share them again, if needed. You can make those simulations shared by other members of your front office user group private to yourself.



To make a shared simulation private to yourself, do the following:

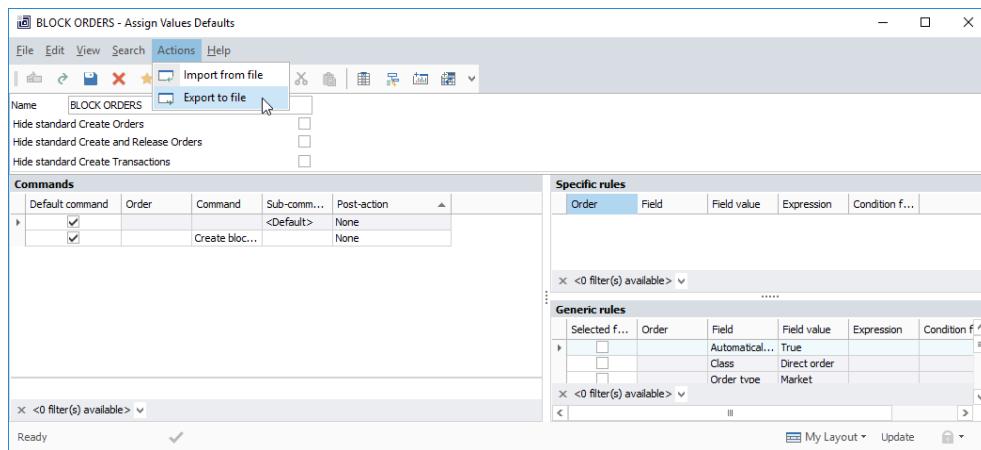
1. Select **Private and Shared** from the **Mode** field in the **SHARING** ribbon group on the **Simulations** tab.
2. Select the required simulations and click **Grab**.
3. Click **Make private**.

Only you can now see and modify the simulation.

10.1.26 Import and export assign value defaults

As of this release version, you can now export the definitions set up in the **Assign Values Defaults** window for reimporting into another SimCorp Dimension installation. Previously, moving assign values default definitions

from one installation to another, such as from a test environment to a production environment, had to be done manually. This could potentially be a slower process where complicated condition rules were involved. Now, an **Export to file** option has been added to the **Actions** menu of the **Assign Values Defaults** window to enable you to create an export definition file, which can be reimported in a different installation by using a new **Import from file** option.



In addition, condition rule fragments can also be copied between rules.

10.1.27 Control how the 'Created by' user is recorded on Order Manager dealer transactions [6.3-IMPL]

As of this release version, you can now control how the creator of dealer transactions from Order Manager is recorded. A new check box called **Use trader as the 'Created by' user** has been added to the **Order Options** window. This allows you to record the actual trader's user name on dealer transactions when the setting is selected, or use the default **SERVER** service name. This new check box affects what is displayed for the **Changed by** and **Created by** fields for dealer transactions listed in the **Linked Transactions** window of Asset Manager.

| Linked Transactions | | | | | | | | | | | |
|---|------------|-----------------|---------------|--------------|---------|-------|------|----------------------|------------|------------------------|---------------|
| Press and hold the mouse button over a column header to sort by that column | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Changed by | Created by | Transaction No. | Instrument... | Nominal/Lots | Nominal | Price | Side | Business Trans. | Payment... | Transaction cancell... | Actual status |
| MNE | MNE | 20180413000087 | Bond | 700 | 700 | 6 | BUY | Buy | 13-04-2018 | Active | Position |
| MNE | MNE | 20180413000087 | Bond | 800 | 800 | 6 | BUY | Buy | 13-04-2018 | Corrected | Position |
| MNE1 | MNE1 | 20180413000086 | Bond | 444 | 444 | 8 | BUY | Buy | 13-04-2018 | Active | Position |
| MNE | MNE | 20180413000085 | Bond | 450 | 450 | 3 | BUY | Buy | 13-04-2018 | Active | Position |

To record the actual trader's user name on dealer transactions from Order Manager, do the following:

1. Open the **Order Options** window for the SimCorp Dimension portal.
2. Click the **Order Manager 1** tab.

3. Select the **Use trader as the 'Created by' user** check box in **Order Manager integration** section.

The screenshot shows the 'Order Manager integration' configuration screen. It includes fields for 'Client name' (Bayside Client), 'System currency' (EUR), 'Send trade portfolio via FIX' (Never), and several checkboxes for trading rules. One specific checkbox, 'Use trader as the 'Created by' user', is highlighted with a red rectangle. Other visible checkboxes include 'Enable pre-trade compliance check for bonds', 'Use trade order status' (which is checked), 'Do not use price rounding', 'Don't accept orders until broker restriction check is performed', 'Broadcast unknown execution alerts to all users', and 'Aggregation: use quick aggregate only'. Below these are fields for 'Counterparty exposure data refresh interval (minutes)' (1) and 'Compliance branch for counterparty exposure' (MAIN). At the bottom, there's a section for 'Use major currency denomination for OM trading' with an 'Instrument segment' dropdown containing 'GAO TEST4'.

4. Click **OK**.

Note

The users displayed in the **Changed by** and **Created by** fields for a dealer transaction can be set to the actual trader of an order only if the Order Manager allocation instruction was received and processed by the **Message queue service**.

10.1.28 Match maturity dates for FX hedge adjustments [6.3-IMPL]

As of this release version, you can now automatically generate FX forward simulations to match the maturity dates of existing FX forwards positions whose balance nominals are in the opposite direction. For example, you have an existing FX forward position where you are buying 8,000,000 EUR for GBP maturing on 30 Apr 2019, and you are simulating an FX forward where you want to sell 5,000,000 EUR for GBP. Asset Manager can now automatically match the existing maturity date to net both positions and create as few and as small outstanding amounts as possible.

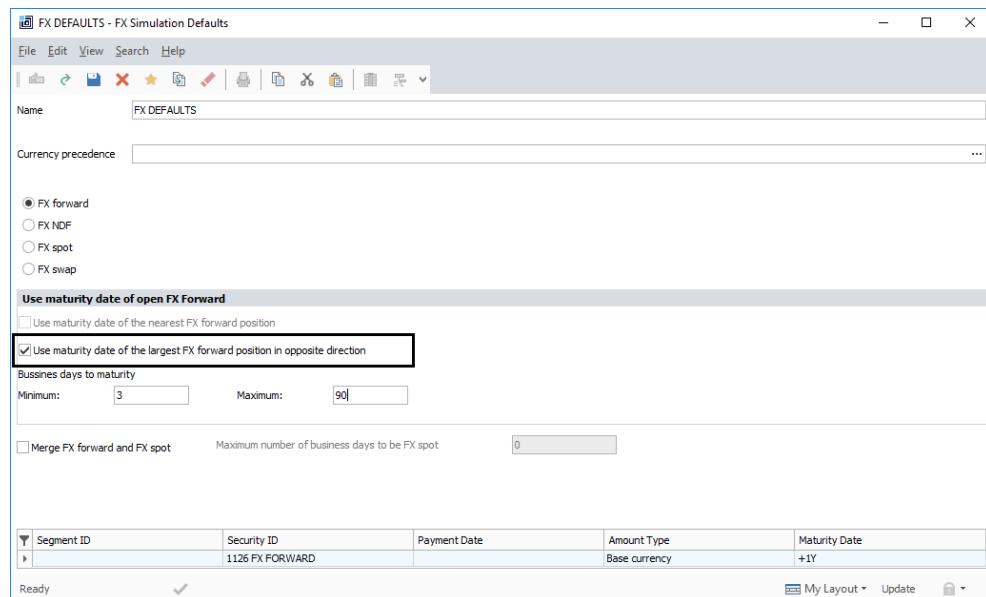
Typically on manually created FX forward simulations, you set the maturity date in the **Maturity date** field in the **Create simulations** window. However, for bulk FX forward simulations such as **Align To Hedge Ratio** and **Align to FX Target**, the maturity date is derived from the reference date you enter in the **Maturity date** field in the **FX Simulation Defaults**

window; for example:

ACT + 1Y

This basic default will dictate what the maturity date should be for all FX forward simulations, which can create many spread out maturity dates.

To match against the nearest maturity date of an existing FX forward positions that provide netting opportunities, you can now select the **Use maturity date of the largest FX forward position in opposite direction** check box in the **FX Simulation Defaults** window. You can access this window only by the **FX simulation defaults** field of the **Settings Template** window.



This setting instructs Asset Manager to find the largest FX forward position with a maturity date falling within the range you set for the **Minimum** and **Maximum** business day fields, but with a FX forward position in the opposite direction to your simulations.

Note

The **Use maturity date of the nearest FX forward position** check box and the **Use maturity date of the largest FX forward position in opposite direction** check box can only be used independently of each other and not together.

10.1.29 Support for cut-off times for fund certificates

As of version 6.4, Asset Manager can now accommodate cut-off times for fund certificates for displaying the appropriate payment date in the **Cash Viewer** applet. For example, you can use the allotted NAV on the same trading day, the previous day, or the next day according to the time you submit your applications and funds. If you now generate simulations, orders

or preliminary transactions on fund certificates that have cut off times defined, Asset Manager will now use this information to determine at which date the payment is displayed in the **Cash Viewer**.

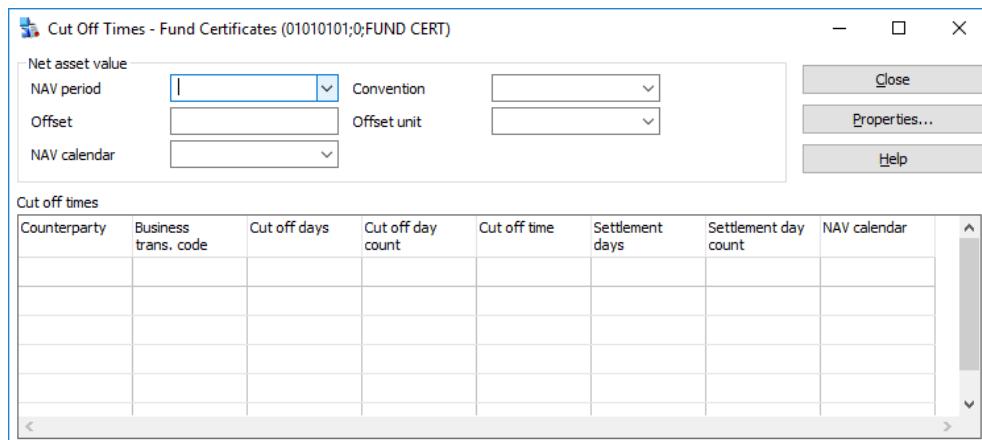
Although cut-off data was previously present in an instrument's static data, this was only available for use in a specific setup by using direct orders. Now simulations, orders, and preliminary transactions generated in Asset Manager can respect the cut-off times of fund certificates in the following ways:

- Cut-off times can be specified for buy and sell preliminary transactions independently together with their required number of settlement days (for example, today + 3 settlement days) for specific fund certificates. If the cut-off time has passed then the expected trade date will be set to tomorrow and the settlement date period will be interpreted as, for example, tomorrow + 3 settlement days.
- If you leave the expected trade date and expected payment dates empty on your fund certificate simulations and orders, the cut-off times are used to calculate new expected trade dates and expected payment dates for the related cash projections which you can view in the **Cash Viewer** applet and in the **Cash Balance Details** window. The **Expected trade date** and **Expected payments date** fields on your simulations and orders will remain empty.
- If you supply the expected trade date and expected payment dates on your fund certificate simulations and orders, then the cut-off times will not be calculated and the related cash projections, which you can view in the **Cash Viewer**, will reflect those supplied trade and payment dates.

To set up cut-off times for a fund certificate, do the following:

1. Open the **Fund Certificates** window and load the required fund certificate instrument.

2. From the **Functions** menu, select **Cut Off Times** to display the **Cut Off Times** sub-window for the selected fund certificate.



3. Enter the required period in which to apply the cut-off times that are using the **NAV period** field, such as **Daily**.
4. Select the required non-business convention in the **Convention** field, such as **Next**.
5. In the **Cut Off Times** section, enter the required transaction type, such as **Buy** or **Sell**, and for the same definition row, enter the required cut-off time in the **Cut off time** field and the number of settlement days in the **Settlement days** field.
6. Complete additional definition rows for each additional cut-off time you need to define for each different transaction type.
7. Close the **Cut Off Times** window, and save your fund certificate.

When you next simulate a transaction for this fund certificate, and leave the **Expected trade date** and **Expected payment date** fields empty, the cut-off times will be referenced to calculate new trade and payments dates which you can see in the **Cash Viewer**.

10.1.30 Support for six additional free codes on orders [6.3-IMPL]

As of this release version, you can use six additional new free codes to pass extra information on your orders to your traders. These free codes are numbered 24 to 29. You can enter free codes on simulations and orders manually or set up assign values or order defaults to populate the values automatically. The functionality is available in Asset Manager, in the **Portfolio Orders**, **Multiple Portfolio Orders** windows, and in other order-related windows in SimCorp Dimension. You can also specify order free codes when you create orders by using the Front Office API.

Order free codes 24 to 29 have the following specifications.

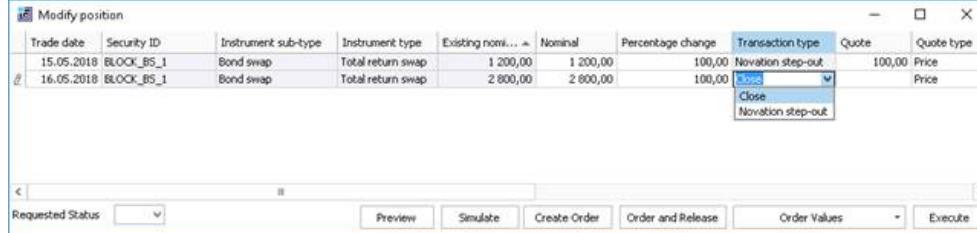
| Order free code | Description | SCD type | Length | Decimal |
|-----------------|-------------|----------|--------|---------|
| 24 | Text | varchar | 40 | N/A |
| 25 | Text | varchar | 40 | N/A |
| 26 | Text | varchar | 40 | N/A |
| 27 | Number | decimal | 21 | 7 |
| 28 | Number | decimal | 21 | 7 |
| 29 | Number | decimal | 21 | 7 |

10.1.31 Unwind bilateral bond swap positions in Asset Manager

As of version 6.4, you can now close or reduce your bilateral bond swap positions directly in Asset Manager in the **Modify position** window.

To unwind a bilateral bond swap position, do the following:

1. Select a bilateral bond swap position in the **Portfolio Sheet**, **Multiple Portfolio View**, or **Single Security Targeting** applets.
2. Right-click on the position and select **Modify position**.
3. Select either the **Close** or **Novation step-out** option from the **Transaction type** field and complete the required trade details.



4. Perform one or more of the following tasks:
 - Click **Preview** to see the effect on your portfolio.
 - Click **Simulate** to generate a simulation.
 - Click **Execute** to create a transaction.
 - Select a command in **Order Values** to assign values and create a transaction.

Note

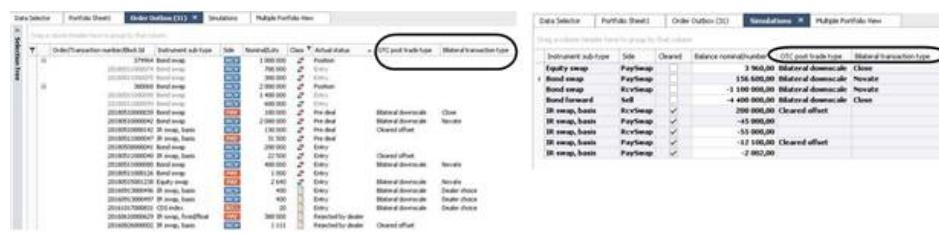
You can use preliminary transactions flow for bond swaps but order flow is not currently supported.

10.1.32 Display OTC post-trade type and bilateral transaction type for simulations and preliminary transactions

OTC trades generated by the Trade Manager may vary significantly from one to another and the **Side** field displayed in Asset Manager for these types of trades may not provide enough information for you to fully appreciate their identity. As of version 6.4, the following additional fields are now available for use in the **Order Outbox** and **Simulations** applets:

- Trade manager transaction type
 - OTC post trade type
 - Bilateral transaction type

While the **Trade manager transaction type** field is new, the **OTC post trade type** and **Bilateral transaction type** fields used to be available only for orders in the **Order Outbox** applet. As of this release, and for better transparency, you can now display them for the relevant simulations in the **Simulations** applet, and for applicable preliminary transactions in the **Order Outbox** applet.



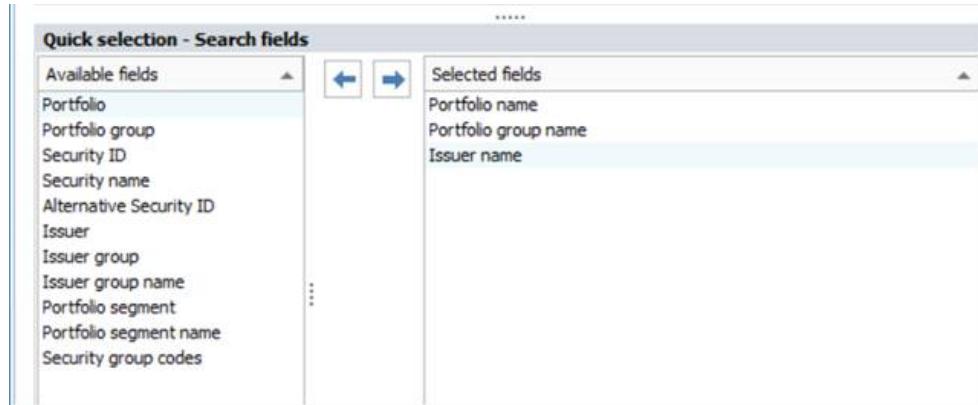
10.1.33 Display only regularly-used Quick selection fields in the Data Selector

As of version 6.4, you can now select the fields you use regularly and remove those fields which are irrelevant for your ad hoc queries in the **Quick selection** section of the **Data Selector** applet in Asset Manager. This enhancement allows you to arrange the fields in the section in a more user-friendly way.

To adjust the **Quick selection** view, do the following:

1. Open the **Settings Template** definition attached to your Asset Manager setup.

2. In the **Quick selection – Search fields** section of the **Data Selector** tab, select the fields you want to use for your ad hoc queries.



3. Save your **Settings Template** definition.
4. Reload your Asset Manager setup and confirm that the **Quick selection** section of the **Data Selector** applet is now displaying only the search fields relevant for you.



10.1.34 Change originator on preliminary transactions in the approval flow

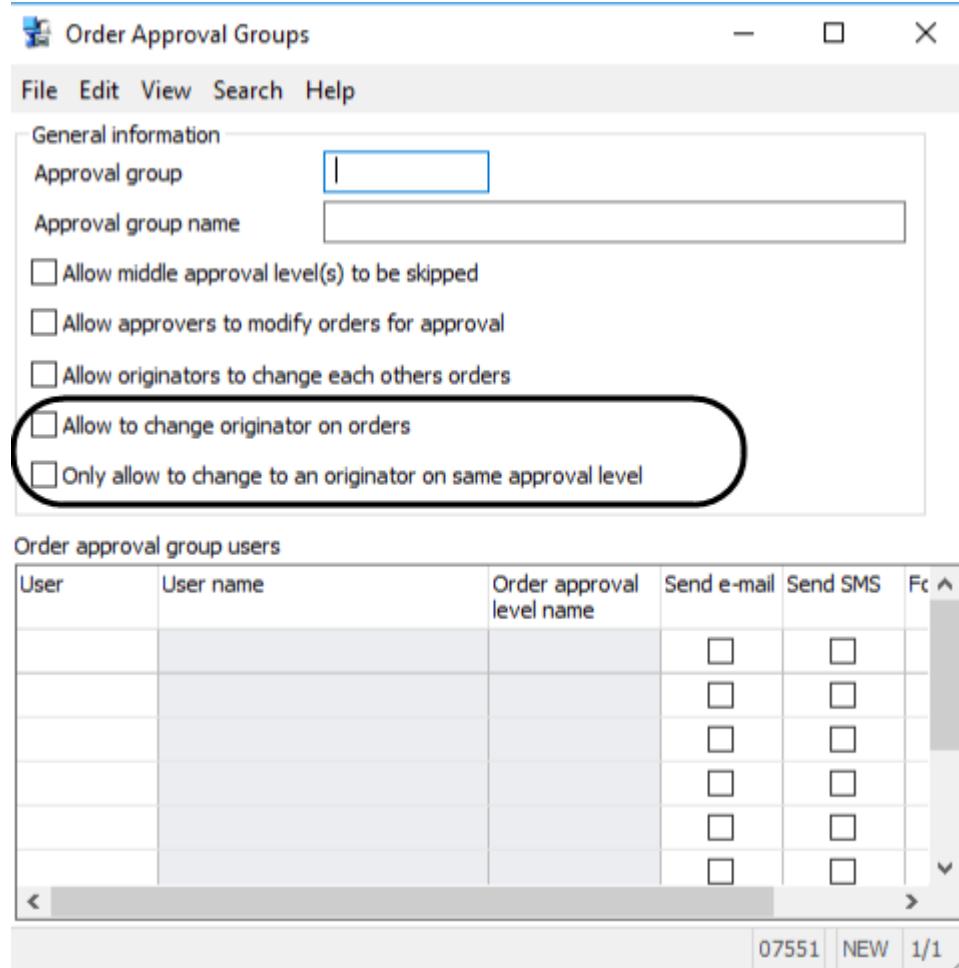
As of version 6.4, you can include preliminary transactions for a pre-defined set of instrument types alongside orders in the approval flow in Asset Manager. You can do this when you:

- Create preliminary transactions in the approval flow either from simulations or from manual captures of trades in the dealer windows. Your user ID is recorded as the originator, and the valid approval group is set accordingly.
- Import transactions by using a batch job. The user ID of the user who runs the batch job is considered as the originator.

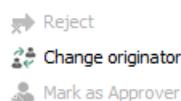
It is not possible to edit the **Originator** field on the transactions in the dealer windows, but you can use the new **Change originator** button in the **Order Outbox** applet. This new button helps to align the user experience when working with both orders and preliminary transactions in the **Order Outbox** applet.

To change the originator on a preliminary transaction in the **Order Outbox** applet, do the following:

1. Select the **Allow to change originator on orders** check box for the corresponding approval group in the **Order Approval Groups** window. You can also limit the possibilities of changing the originator by users at the different approval levels by selecting the **Only allow to change to an originator on same approval level** check box.



2. Select a preliminary transaction in the **Order Outbox** applet.
3. Click **Change originator** in the **ORDER FLOW** ribbon group.



4. Complete the **Originator** field and corresponding **Approval group** field in the **Change originator** window.
5. Click **OK** to change the originator.

10.1.35 Use fixed model weights in Asset Manager

As of release version 6.4, you can now compare your portfolio weights against the client-mandated model weights at the beginning of each business day which you can now fix for the remainder of the day. As security prices change and your portfolio weights may drift as a consequence of this, you can analyse your portfolio holdings and target investments against the same fixed model components weights all day.

This feature is similar to the fixed benchmark weights feature which was available in version 6.2. For further information, see the 6.2 release note ***Use fixed benchmark weights in Asset Manager [6.1-IMPL]***.

To request the use of fixed weights for model components, select the **Fixed model** check box in the **Settings** section of the **Selection editor** window for the required portfolio or portfolio group.

You can use the fixing of the model component weights in either online or historical modes.

10.1.36 Patched from 6.41

10.1.36.1 Aggregate orders using the Front Office API [6.31] [6.4]

As of this release version, you can aggregate orders using the Front Office API, provided that your order aggregation defaults have been set up in the **Order Defaults** window. In addition, they must be either portfolio orders with a Destination field set to Order Manager, or they are orders that follow the direct orders flow.

A new command called **AggregateOrders** has been added to the Front Office API, and performs the same function as the **Aggregate** right-click option from **Pending orders** folder of the **Order Outbox** applet of Asset Manager.

The **AggregateOrders** command comprises two asynchronous API calls, a **Begin** call and an **End** call. You use the **Begin** call to pass a collection of order IDs and use the **End** call to retrieve:

- On success—A list of successfully created block orders ID and a list of not aggregated orders.
- On error—An error message and error code.

Here is an example of the XML structure of a result with both block orders IDs and not aggregated orders:

```
<AggregateOrdersEndResponse  
xmlns="http://SimCorp.IMS/Compliance">  
<AggregateOrdersResult  
xmlns="http://schemas.datacontract.org/2004/07/SimCorp.  
IMS.Compliance"  
xmlns:i="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema-instance">  
<BlockOrders>  
<BlockOrder>  
<AggregatedOrderIds  
xmlns:b="http://schemas.microsoft.com/2003/10/Serializa  
tion/Arrays">  
<b:string>21686-order1</b:string>  
<b:string>21686-order2</b:string>  
</AggregatedOrderIds>  
<BlockOrderId>6434</BlockOrderId>  
</Blockorder>  
  
<Blockorder>  
 . . .  
</Blockorder>  
  
</BlockOrders>  
  
<NotAggregatedOrderIds  
xmlns:b="http://schemas.microsoft.com/2003/10/Serializa  
tion/Arrays" >  
<b:string>21686-order3</b:string>  
</NotAggregatedOrderIds>  
</AggregateOrdersResult>  
</AggregateOrdersEndResponse>
```

For further details on the use of this new API command, see the **Front Office API** reference manual.

10.1.36.2 Authorise access to the Data Selector applet [6.3] [6.31] [6.4]

As of this release version, access authorisation has now been added to the **Data Selector** applet of Asset Manager in the **Tasks and Commands** window. This means that you can remove the individual ribbon buttons and menu items of the **Data Selector** applet that are not required. You are now able to, for example, enable specific users to edit definitions but prevent them from saving definitions. As such, specific users are able to only open a data selection definition to see what portfolios, portfolio groups, model portfolios, and so on have been defined but they cannot save any changes that they might accidentally make in the applet.

In addition, the **New** access option in the **Tasks and Commands** window has been linked to the **Quick Selection** section of the **Data Selector** applet,

so that when you remove access to the **New** command, the **Quick Selection** section will also not be available to specific users.

You can find the access authorisation options for the **Data Selector** applet under the **Asset Manager > Applets > Data Selector > Programming Interface** node.

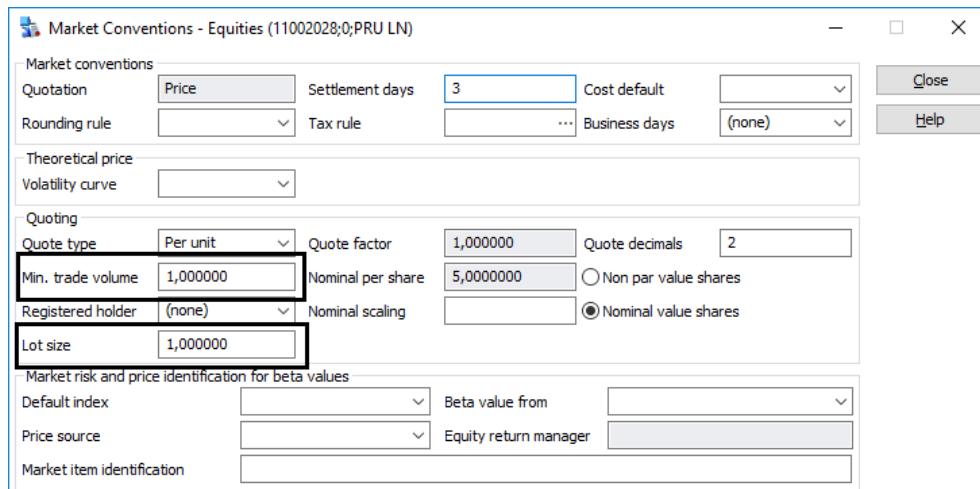


10.1.36.3 Switch off lot size and minimum trade volume checks using the Front Office API [6.4]

As of this release version, you can override the restrictions for lot size and minimum trade volume, set in the **Market Conventions** window for securities' static data, when you create orders by using the front office API. You can add two new parameters called

`<DoNotUseMinimumVolumeNominal>` and `<LotSizeoff>` to your **CreateOrders** API calls to switch off these restrictions.

The following example shows the lot size and minimum trade volume for the PRU LN equity, which is set in its **Market Conventions** window.



The lot size for orders will be checked as a mandatory step when you create or modify orders either through the API or Front Office applications, when you select the **Check lot size when creating or updating orders** in the **Order Options** window. However, you can use the two new parameters with the **CreateOrders** API command to switch off the background check for lot size and minimum trade volume on an order-by-order basis.

This gives you the flexibility to bypass these restrictions for certain order and instrument types where these checks are not needed. Previously all orders were subject to these checks where they were set on a security's static data.

To use the `<DoNotUseMinimumVolumeNominal>` and `<LotSizeOff>` parameters in your CreateOrders API calls, each parameter takes a boolean value where:

- `true` or `1`=Disregard the background check for this order and create the order even though the lot size or minimum trade volume may have specified in the market conventions for the security. No errors will be displayed.
- `false` or `0` (default)=Take into consideration the required lot size or minimum trade size for the order if these have been specified in the market conventions for the security. The lot size will be enforced if the **Check lot size when creating or updating orders** check box is selected in the **Order Options** window.

For further information, see the **Front Office API** reference manual.

10.1.36.4 Release all passed orders in a failed validation bundle in the Order Outbox [6.3] [6.31] [6.4]

As of this release version, you can release, or approve/release, only those orders that have previously passed a compliance validation in a validation bundle that includes some failed orders. This enables you to release as many orders in the **Order Outbox** applet as possible by ignoring the orders

that have failed a compliance validation and releasing or approving/releasing only those that have passed.

To support this feature, additional sub-commands have been added to the existing **Release** and **Approve/Release** buttons in the **ORDER FLOW** ribbon group of the **Order Outbox** applet. These are:

- **Release all passed**—Selects only the orders which have passed the compliance validation from a compliance bundle and releases them.
- **Approve/release all passed**—Select the orders which have passed the compliance validation from a compliance bundle and approves and/or releases them.

The screenshot shows the 'Order Outbox (297)' ribbon tab selected. In the 'Release' section of the ribbon, the 'Release all passed' option is highlighted with a mouse cursor. Below the ribbon, a table displays a list of orders with columns for Side, Security ID, Can release, Validation status, Nominal/Lots, Class, and Actual status. The 'Validation status' column shows a mix of red and green circles, indicating some orders have passed validation while others have failed.

These two new release commands require access authorisation being set by your super user or administrator in the **User Authorisation - Task and Commands** window.

To release all passed orders, do the following:

1. Select a set of orders in the **Pending orders** folder of the **Order Outbox** applet.
2. Select either **Release all passed** or **Approve/release all passed** to release only those orders that passed their compliance validation.

As result, the compliance validation is performed in two steps:

1. The first compliance validation checks all orders that were initially selected for the validation.
2. The second compliance validation is performed automatically on the orders with passed validation.

If all orders pass the validation after the second round, the bundle is released. If at least one order fails the second validation, the bundle is not released. In this instance, you should manage the compliance breaches and re-validate manually.

Note

The unbundling of block orders, program trades and contingent orders is not allowed. If at least one order fails the first validation, the whole bundle is excluded from the second validation.

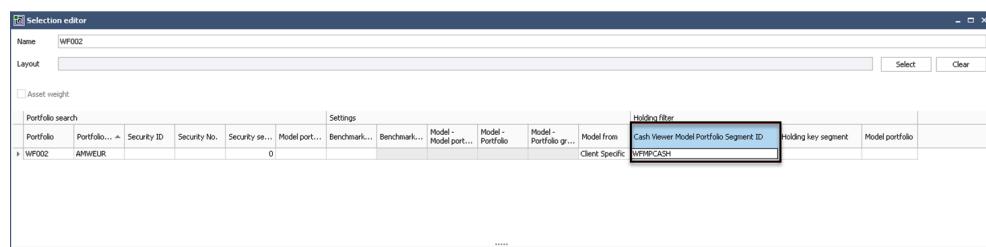
You can, however, manually partial release contingent orders, but you must select only the orders with passed validation status and release them manually using the **Release** button.

The act of releasing an order can display a **No valid validation exists** warning message when there is a missing validation and when a check box on the **Options 1 – Portfolio master** tab of the **Order Options** window has been selected. To reduce the number of clicks you make when releasing orders, you can turn off the display of this warning message.

For further information, see "Improved usability of program trades and order workflows in the Order Outbox" topic in the 6.3 release notes.

10.1.36.5 Added new holding filter field to Data Selector editor [6.4]

As of this release version, you can add a new holding filter field called **Cash Viewer Model Portfolio Segment ID** to the **Selection editor** window of the **Data Selector** applet, to filter your data selections on a general segment of the type **Model portfolio**.



This field allows you to see only cash buckets in the **Cash Viewer** applet that are associated with a model portfolio specified in a general segment. If you leave this field blank, then you will see cash buckets in the **Cash Viewer** applet for all model portfolios.

Note

There are two types of model portfolio segment: **General** and **Authorization**. Only **General** model portfolio segments are supported for use with this holding filter field.

For further information, see [Filter holdings by Cash Viewer model portfolio segment](#).

10.1.37 Patched from 19.01

10.1.37.1 Added alternative security IDs to Cash Balance Details [6.4]

The **Cash Viewer** applet of Asset Manager shows cash balances and forecasts on the settlement date. As of this release version, you can select the following new fields for better identification of securities generating the cash effect:

- Payment long reporting security name
- Payment alternative security IDs as per the identification system

| Cash Balance Details | | | | | | |
|----------------------|-----------------|------------|-------------------------|-------------------------------------|-----------------------------|---|
| Security ID | Instrument type | Balance RC | Payment instrument type | Payment security name | Payment security VALOREN ID | Payment long reporting security name |
| AFC 01 BA | Bank account | -4.926,39 | Fund certificate | UBS ETF (IE) MSCI ACWI SP UCITS ETF | 28650241 | UBS ETFs plc – MSCI ACWI SP UCITS ETF (hedged to CHF) A-ecc |

The alternative security IDs that you can display in the **Cash Balance Details** sub-window are taken from the **Alternative Security Identifications** sub-window of a security's static data definition. This includes the entry in the **Long reporting sec. name** field and any values you have entered in the **Identification code** and **Identification system** fields.

To view additional information on the cash balances, do the following:

1. Within Asset Manager and with your required data selection loaded, display the **Cash Viewer** applet.
2. Right-click a cash balance and select **Show cash details** to display the underlying transaction details.
3. Add the fields to the **Cash Balance Details** sub-window by using the **Select Fields** window, if needed.

In the case of the **Long reporting sec. name** field, this is available as the **Payment long reporting security name** field in the **Select Fields** window of the **Cash Balance Details** sub-window. In the case of the **Identification code** fields and **Identification system** fields, these will be dynamically generated in the **Select Fields** window depending upon which static data has been entered for the securities that relate to the balance details you are viewing. These will be displayed in the **Select Fields** window in the format **Payment security <identification system> ID**.

10.1.37.2 Create and release all passed orders in a failed validation bundle [6.3] [6.4][6.41]

As of this release version, you can as a portfolio managers better manage the conversion of bulk simulations into orders and release them to the trader or market as soon as possible.

As one order might fail the compliance validation for a bundle of say a 1,000 orders, you might find it time consuming to re-validate the 999 orders which are prevented from being released in the first validation.

With the new functionality, Asset Manager will automatically request the re-validation of these 999 orders, and if they all pass the compliance checks, these orders are released to the trader or market. However, you have to handle the compliance breach on the one failed order separately. If the second validation of the 999 orders also fails, then no orders are released until the breaches are managed properly.

In the **Simulations**, **Portfolio Sheet**, **Single Security Targeting** and **Multiple Portfolio View** applets of Asset Manager, a new **Create and Release all passed** sub-command has been added to the **Create and Release** button of the **ORDERS** ribbon group.



The same command is also available as a right-click menu item.

| Security ID | Side | Class | Destination |
|---------------|------|-----------------|---------------|
| AAVFUT | Buy | Portfolio order | Order Manager |
| AVL CARLSBERG | | | |
| FX SPOT | | | |
| FXF | | | |
| FX ODD SWAP | | | |
| FX SWAP 04/13 | | | |

- ★ Add New Simulation
- 📝 Edit Simulation
- ☰ Rename Strategy
- ✖ Delete Simulation
- 🕒 FX Simulation and Order
- ↳ Create wash sale
- 👤 Share
- ⚙️ Compliance Validate Simulations
- ➕ Create Orders
- 📄 Create and Release Orders
- 📄 Create and Release all passed Orders
- 📅 Apply Order defaults
- Add Default Comment Alt+D

With this new functionality, you can perform the following actions:

1. Select a set of simulations in any relevant applet, for example, in the **Simulations** applet.

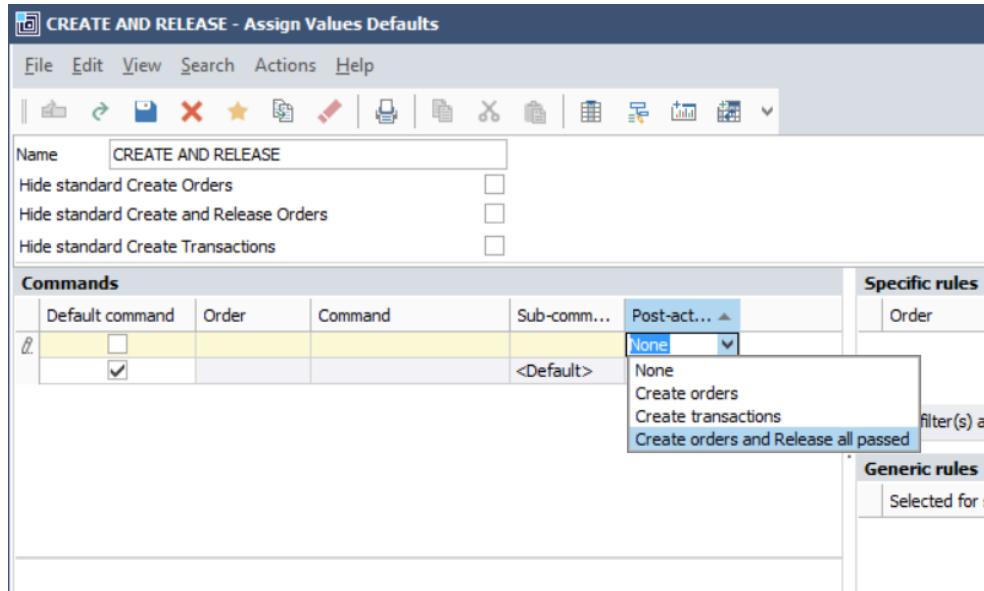
2. Select the **Create and Release all passed** sub-command from the **Create and Release** button.

As a result, Asset Manager performs the following actions:

- The set of simulations is converted into orders.
- The orders are then validated against the relevant compliance rules.
- If there are any orders which failed compliance rules and are prevented from release, they will be removed from the validation bundle and will remain as pending orders in the **Order Outbox** applet.
- Those orders that passed the initial compliance validation are validated again as an adjusted set, and if they all pass the relevant compliance rules they are all automatically released. If at least one order fails the second validation, then the bundle will not be released.

If there are any orders which cannot be released due to a compliance breach, you will be re-directed from the current applet, you are working in, to the **Order Outbox** applet without any warning message, so you can re-validate the orders manually and manage the breaches appropriately.

In addition to the new **Create and release all passed** command, a new **Create orders and Release all passed** post-action has been added to the **Assign Values Defaults** window to enable you to perform the same action on simulations but using predefined defaults instead.



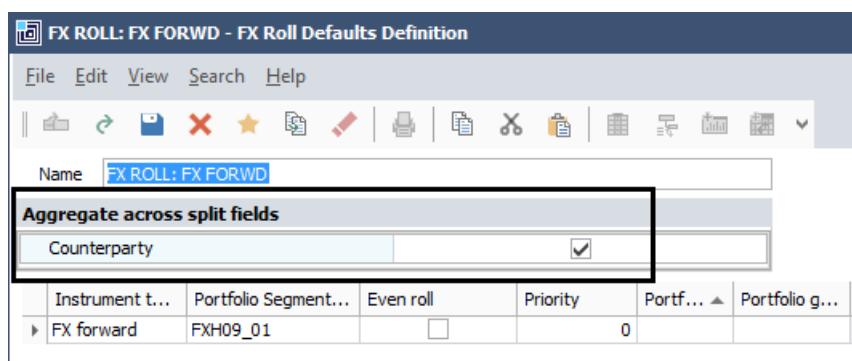
You can release all passed orders in a failed validation bundle in the **Order Outbox** applet. For further information, refer to the version 6.41 release note topic [Release all passed orders in a failed validation bundle in the Order Outbox](#).

10.1.37.3 Aggregate FX roll simulations across split fields [6.31][6.4]

As of this release version, you can use a new check box called **Aggregate across split fields - Counterparty** in the **FX Roll Defaults Definition** window. When you select this check box, the **Counterparty** field will be ignored when generating FX rolls across multiple selected FX holdings in Asset Manager. This means that two FX positions will now be aggregated even though the positions have different counterparties.

To turn on aggregation across split fields for FX rolls:

1. Open the **Settings Template** window and load your defaults.
2. On the **Rolling** tab, right-click in the **FX roll default** field and select **Open Related**.
3. In the **FX Roll Defaults Definition** window, select the **Aggregate across split fields - Counterparty** check box.



4. Save the definition and relaunch Asset Manager.

10.1.37.4 Enhanced visualization of cash exposures in the Cash Viewer applet [6.31][6.4][6.41]

As of version 19.01, you have more visual guidance when you need to monitor cash exposures and identify points for managing currency risk. The yellow warning icon in the **Cash Viewer** applet shows which cash balance, cash movement, or cash weight is affected by a simulation or order, and only in the date field in which the cash effect occurs.

This is a change of behaviour from earlier releases. Previously, the yellow warning icon was displayed only for cash simulations, and was shown on the cash simulation date and for all subsequent cash balance dates for the affected currency row.

In this release, a yellow warning icon is displayed before a cash balance, a cash movement or a weight only on the date where a new simulation or order has an effect. For balances, this will be the first cash effect for a settlement date. For cash movements, an icon will be displayed in the grid for each new cash movement.

The warnings apply to security simulations, cash simulations, preliminary transactions, and orders.

You can hover your cursor over the warning icon to display a tooltip detailing how many simulations and orders are related to this cash effect date and their value.

| Cash Viewer | | | | | | | |
|---|-----------------|--------------------|----------------------------|------|----------------------------|------|----------------------------|
| Drag a column header here to group by that column | | | | | | | |
| | Instrument type | Quotation Currency | Cash balance 29.11.2018 | % | Cash balance 30.11.2018 | % | Cash balance 03.12.2018 |
| ▶ 1 | Bank account | USD | 100 704 763,89 | 9,98 | 100 704 763,89 | 9,98 | 100 704 763,89 |

Warning

- There is 1 cash simulation for USD 20 000 000,00 on payment 29.11.2018
- There are 2 simulations for USD -300 000,00 on payment 29.11.2018
- There are 3 orders for USD 1 449 559,09 on payment 29.11.2018

The currency of the amount is defined by the setting in the **ACCOUNTS** ribbon group of the **Cash Viewer** applet.

10.2 Portfolio Management

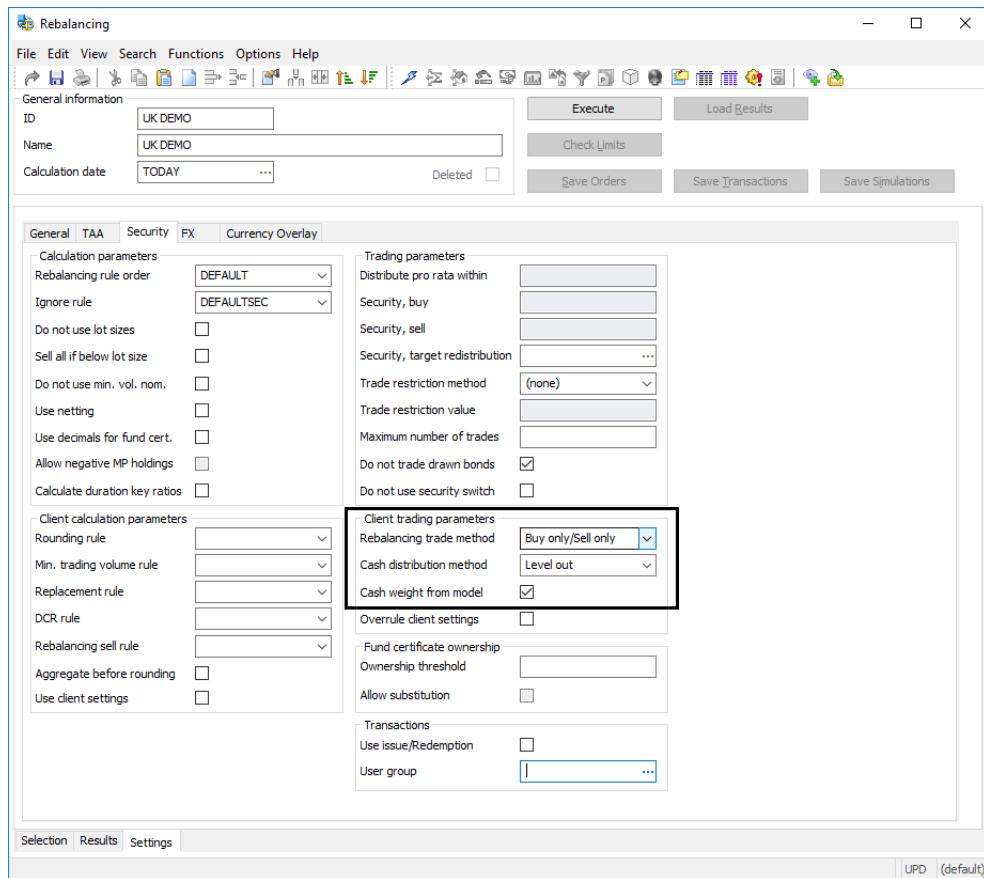
10.2.1 Use rebalancing method with iterative distribution of cash to equal the biggest deviation [6.3-IMPL]

As of this release version, a new rebalancing trade method and an additional cash distribution method have been added to the **Rebalancing** module. The new cash distribution method called **Level Out** is applicable to the **Buy only/Sell only** rebalancing trade method.

The **Level Out** cash distribution method caters for the iterative distribution of cash to equal the deviations measured as the percentage difference between the model portfolio and client portfolio exposure of a security. The method will bring the first biggest deviation to be equal to the second. It will then bring the first and second deviation to be equal to the third, and continue until all the cash is spent or the cash deficit is covered. The **Buy only/Sell only** rebalancing trade method generates either only buy or only sell trades depending on the cash balance.

- Positive cash balances will generate only **Buy** trade suggestions.
- Negative cash balances will generate only **Sell** trade suggestions.

You can select the rebalancing method in the **Client trading parameters** section on the **Settings > Security** tab of the **Rebalancing** window, together with a **Rebalancing trade method** of **Buy only / Sell only**.



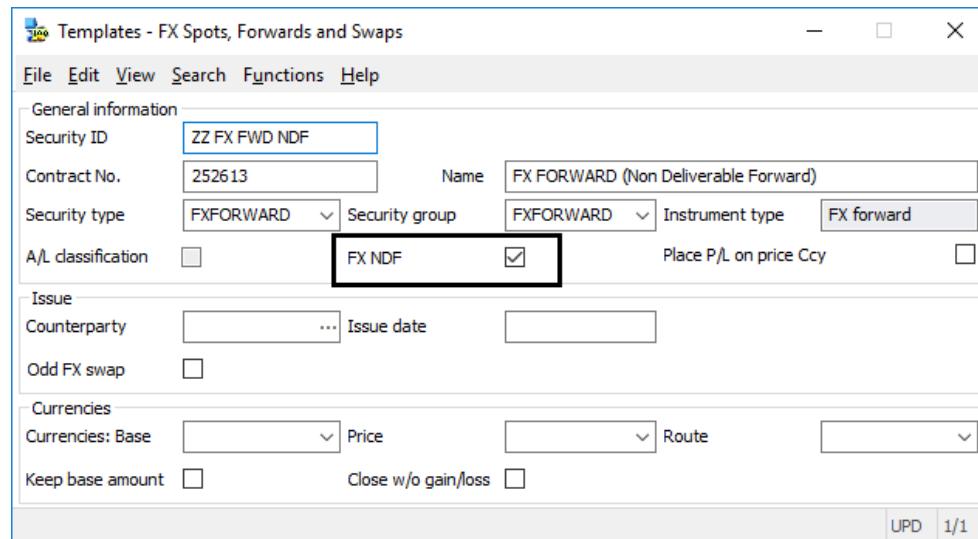
When you select the **Level out** distribution method, the following rebalancing fields are disabled:

- **Allow negative MP holdings**
- **Trading parameters**
 - **Distribute pro rata within**
 - **Security, buy**
 - **Security, sell**
- **Fund certificate ownership**
 - **Ownership threshold**
 - **Allow substitution**

10.2.2 Distinguish between FX forward and FX NDF orders

As of this release version, portfolio managers can now distinguish between FX forward and FX forward NDF (non-deliverable forward) orders when they are raised either from the **Portfolio Orders** window or from the **Simulations** applet in Asset Manager. Enhancements have been made to the definition of these instrument types to ensure the correct routing of FX forward NDF orders to Order Manager and the inclusion of mandatory aggregation criteria.

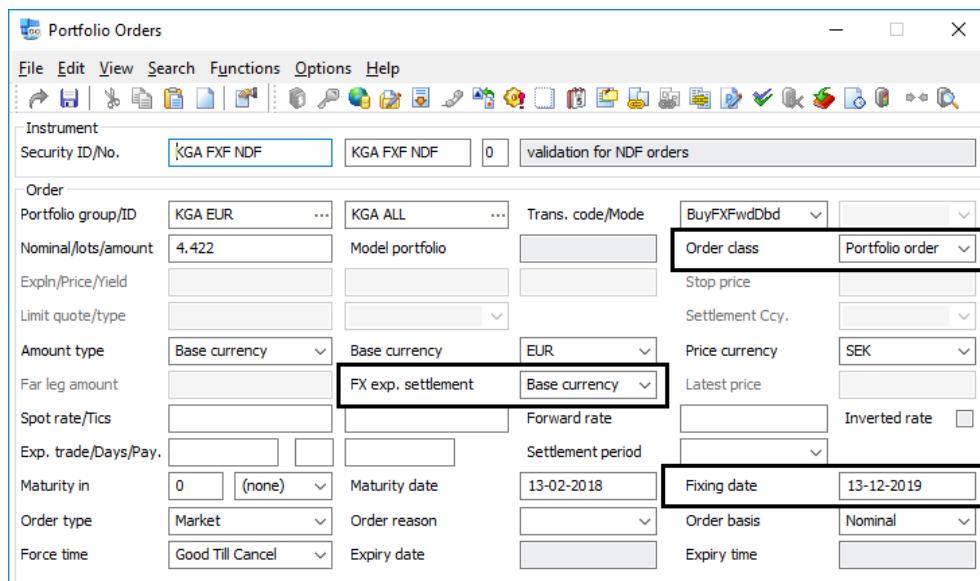
In both cases, you can create the orders from your FX forward instrument template. However, for the creation of the FX forward NDF orders, you must now add mandatory identifying information in the **FX Spots, Forwards, and Swaps** static data and templates windows when you select the **FX NDF** check box.



When this check box is selected, you must supply the following when creating portfolio orders:

- **Fixing date**—This is now used as mandatory aggregation criteria, and an FX forward NDF order cannot be released to Order Manager without supplying this date.
- **FX expected settlement**—The settlement must be quoted in either the **Price currency** or the **Base currency**.
- **Order destination**—The above restrictions are applicable only where the template used is **FX NDF**, the order type is **Portfolio Order**, and the **Order destination** is **Order Manager**.

The following example shows the mandatory order details completed for an order based on the FX NDF template.



For more information about creating FX NDF securities using the static data window, see [Support for FX NDF in static data](#).

10.2.3 Create value-based simulations and orders from the Rebalancing window or module [6.3-IMPL]

As of this release version, the portfolio **REBALANCING** module in SimCorp Dimension has been enhanced to allow you to create value-based simulations and orders arising from rebalancing operations.

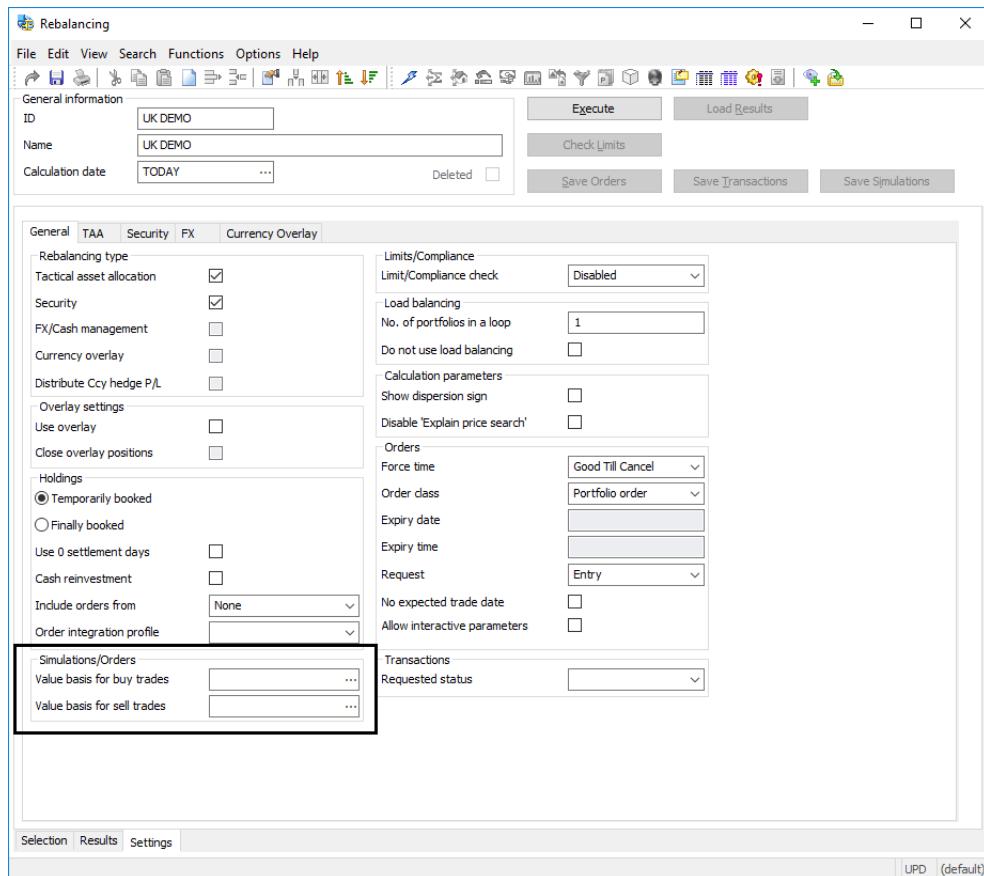
The feature extends the creation of value-based orders for all equity-like instrument types which include:

- Equity
- Fund certificate
- Index certificate
- GDR/ADR
- Right

You can create two separate instrument segments to define which securities are to be created as value-based orders following a rebalancing; there are segments for buy trades and segments for sell trades. The segments for the **Rebalancing** window apply to both the generation of simulations and orders, whereas the segments for use in Asset Manager apply only to the generation of simulations.

Specifying instrument segments in the Rebalancing window

Two new settings called **Value basis for buy trades** and **Value basis for sell trades** have been added to the **General** tab of the **Rebalancing** window.



You use these fields to create segments with the **Table group** field set to **Instrument**.

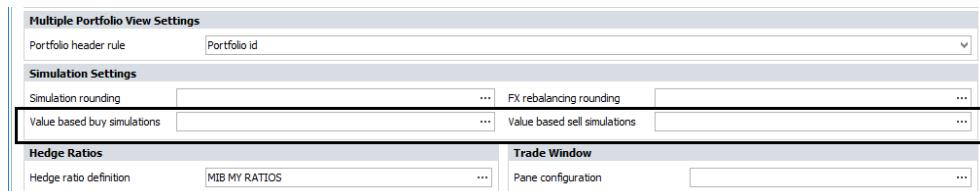
Note

When you sell out a held position or cover your short position, the **Order basis** is always set to **Nominal** regardless of the segments you set here.

You can override the order basis for your value-based simulations or orders by changing the setting in the **Order basis** field on the order. The generation of value-based simulations and orders will respect your normal rounding rules, including your default minimum trade size and rebalancing size.

Specifying instrument segments in Asset Manager

Two new settings have been added to the **General** tab of the **Settings Template** window called **Value-based buy simulations** and **Value-based sell simulations**.

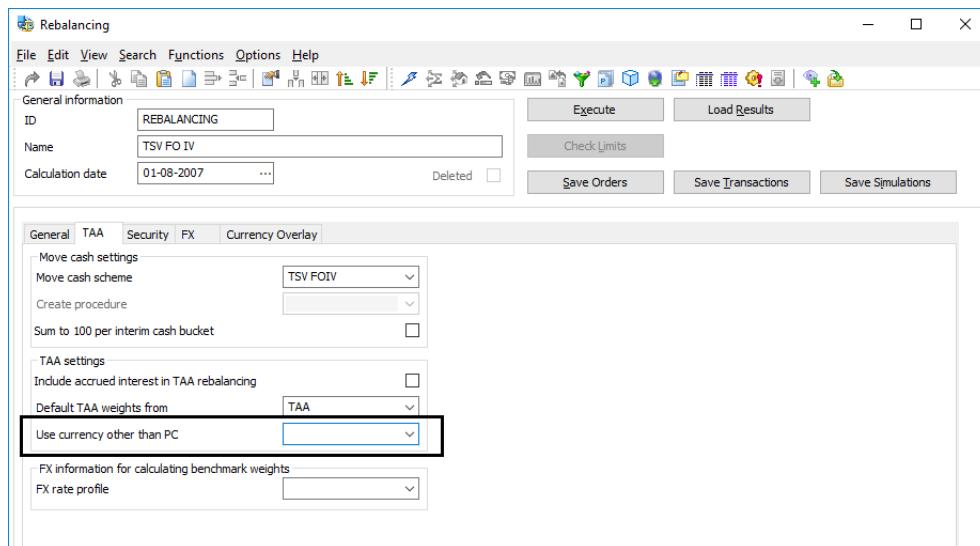


You can use the same segments as you use in the **Rebalancing** window, however these will be used to create only simulations in Asset Manager, for example when you perform the **Align to Model** function. These simulations will have their **Order basis** field automatically set to **Value** which you can see in the **Simulations** applet. You can change the **Order basis** field to **Nominal** if required.

10.2.4 Perform TAA rebalancing without cash buckets in Portfolio Currency

As of version 6.4, you are no longer restricted to using Portfolio Currency for cash buckets to calculate a cash distribution when performing a tactical asset allocation rebalancing using the **Rebalancing** window. You can now run tactical asset allocation rebalancing by selecting a currency which is 'common' among the cash buckets in the portfolios in your data selection, that is the currency cash bucket which exists in all portfolios.

To use this new feature, select the required rebalancing currency from the **Use currency other than PC** field on the **Settings > TAA** tab of the **Rebalancing** window.



Note

This setting is enabled only when you select the **Tactical asset allocation** check box on the **General** tab.

The tactical asset allocation rebalancing generates cash movements across the cash buckets in the rebalancing currency. If you have multiple

portfolios in the selection, you can select a common currency for all portfolios' bank accounts or cash buckets. In addition, you now have more flexibility with the cash bucket and bank account set up; they only need to be in the currency selected for rebalancing.

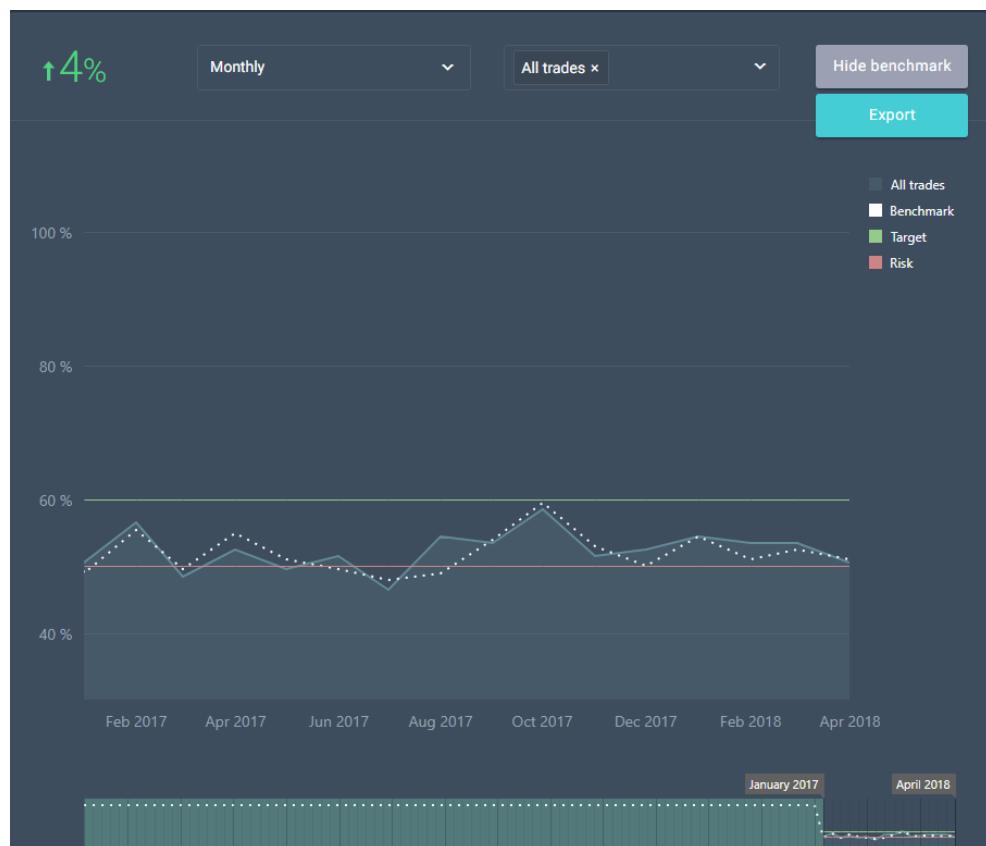
11 Reporting

11.1 Dashboards

11.1.1 [New module] KPI Benchmarking

| | |
|-------------------------------------|--|
| Client Segment | All clients |
| Target Audience | Head of operations, trade manager |
| Subscription based licensing | Included in the N/A (New sales module, only available for Pilot clients) subscription package. |
| Module-based Licensing | KPI Manager |

A new add-on is available for the KPI Manager cloud app, which enables operational stakeholders to monitor trade processing efficiency against peers via an STP rate benchmark. The benchmark is calculated across all SimCorp clients that uses the Trade Processing KPIs.



11.2 Data Warehouse

11.2.1 SimCorp IMW data warehouse data model

11.2.1.1 [New Module] New IMW Data Subject Area - Collateral Administration [6.3] [6.31]

| | |
|-------------------------------------|---|
| Client segment | All |
| Target Audience | Data architects, business analysts and report developers |
| Subscription based licensing | Data Warehouse Manager |
| Module-based Licensing | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Investment Manager Warehouse • Data Warehouse Manager • Data Extractor - Designer • Data Extractor - Run-time only |

The new Data Subject Area - Collateral Administration module is based on the Collateral Manager application in SimCorp Dimension and introduces new facts for structuring reporting of security lending information.

The delivery is based on Collateral Market Positions (including the detailed view of key ratios of the collateralized positions and with relations to the collateral pools and security lending), Collateral Positions (including key ratios on what has been received or delivered together with the logical relation to collateral pool and security lending) and Security Lending Term (including information on the security lending terms and the relation to the pledged security and security lending)

Benefits

- Easy access to security lending information
- Inclusion of security lending results, as part of internal, regulatory, or client reporting.

11.2.1.2 [New Module] New IMW Data Subject Area - Alternative Investments

As of version 6.4, a new data subject area for **Alternative Investment** is now available within the SimCorp **INVESTMENT MANAGEMENT WAREHOUSE** (IMW).

The **Alternative Investment** data subject area covers the following facts:

- **Alternative Investments Asset Links**
- **Alternative Investments Asset properties**
- **Alternative Investment Transactions Flexible Values**

Extend the **IBOR** data subject area with the **Alternative Investment** data subject area.

For more information about the **DATA WAREHOUSE**, see the *Data Warehouse Manager* user manual or contact your SimCorp representative.

11.2.1.3 Added IMW dimensions

As of version 6.4, the **INVESTMENT MANAGEMENT WAREHOUSE (IMW)** data model has been enhanced with the following eight new dimensions:

- Alternative Investments Assets
- Alternative Investments Deal
- Alternative Investments Fund
- Alternative Investments Transaction Type
- Flexible Event Type
- Flexible Value
- Person
- Region

For more information about the **DATA WAREHOUSE**, see the *Data Warehouse Manager* user manual or contact your SimCorp representative.

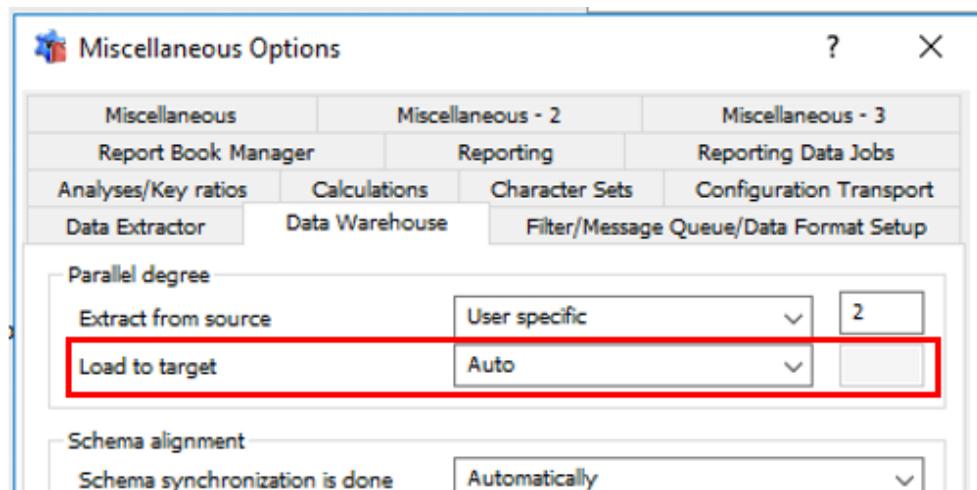
11.2.2 Added field versioning for custom fields in dimensions [6.3]

As of version 6.4, you can set a versioning flag for custom fields in extended dimensions with **Type 2** design patterns in Data Warehouse models, including IMW. This extends versioning to custom fields. Previously, versioning was only available for IMW-defined fields.

To version custom fields in extended **Type 2** dimensions, use the **Versioned by** field, just as for other fields.

11.2.3 Configurable parallel degree of MERGE statements

As of version 6.4, you can control the parallel degree for target load MERGE statements and thereby tune the target tables' loading process.



To set the parallel degree in SCD, go to **Maintenance > System Maintenance > System Options**:

1. Open the **Miscellaneous Options** window.
2. Select the **Data Warehouse** tab.
3. Navigate to the **Parallel degree** section.
4. In the field **Load to target**, choose one of the four options:
 - A. **None**
 - B. **Default**
 - C. **Auto**
 - D. **User specific**
5. Click **OK**

If you choose **User specific**, you will be able to provide a specific number and thereby defining the **Parallel degree**.

For more information on the options, please refer to the Oracle documentation.

Note

The **Parallel degree** setting will be used for all target loading MERGE statements in every DWH schemas loaded from the current installation.

11.2.4 Base Marts - Clean up historical records [6.3]

As of version 6.4, you can clean up redundant historical Base Mart records.

Base Marts with design pattern **Append** have a tendency to accumulate multiple versions of the same record. This may lead to high data volume and many redundant records. However, it is now possible to specify cleanup conditions for these base marts in the added column, **Cleanup condition keys**, and subsequently execute a batch job that cleans up redundant historical records according to the selected cleanup conditions.

The screenshot shows the Oracle Database interface with the title "Base Marts (LAM PROJECT A1)". A modal dialog box is open, titled "Select Destination field(s) for the cleanup conditions". It lists several mapped destination fields with their descriptions:

| Mapped destination fields | Description |
|---------------------------|--|
| DWH_EXTRACT_PROCESS_IK | Unique identifier of the actual extraction execution |
| DWH_LOAD_TS | Data warehouse Load Timestamp |
| SEC_ISIN | Isin |
| SEC_QUOTATION | Quotation |
| SEC_QUOTATION_CURRENCY | Quotation Currency |
| SEC_QUOTED | Quoted |
| SEC_QUOTE_TYPE | Quote Type |
| SEC_SECURITY_GROUP | Security Group |

Buttons in the dialog include OK, Cancel, Select all, and Deselect all.

The screenshot shows the "Batch Jobs" window. The "Object to run in batch" section is highlighted with a red box. It contains the "Batch task" dropdown set to "Data Warehouse-Cleanup Base Mart historical recon" and the "Base mart/Model" dropdown set to "MART_SECURITY / LAM PROJECT A1".

The batch job will remove redundant historical records and leave the Base Mart table unique according to the selected cleanup conditions, keeping only the most recently loaded record version, as illustrated in the example below:

Before cleanup:

The screenshot shows the "DM_MART_SECURITY" table in the "L_A1_1" schema. The table has columns: PROCESS_IK, DWH_LOAD_TS, SEC_ISIN, SEC_QUOTE_TYPE, and SEC_SECURITY_GROUP. Three rows are shown, each with a different SEC_ISIN value (CH0009886828, CH0009886828, CH0009886828) and the same SEC_QUOTE_TYPE and SEC_SECURITY_GROUP values (Percent, PH EQUITY, EQUITIES). The last two rows are highlighted with a red box and labeled "Redundant versions". Arrows point from the "Cleanup condition key" label to the SEC_ISIN column header and the SEC_SECURITY_GROUP column header.

| PROCESS_IK | DWH_LOAD_TS | SEC_ISIN | SEC_QUOTE_TYPE | SEC_SECURITY_GROUP |
|------------|---------------------|--------------|----------------|--------------------|
| 1056557 | 2018-02-22 15:48:38 | CH0009886828 | Percent | PH EQUITY |
| 1056558 | 2018-02-22 15:52:44 | CH0009886828 | Percent | EQUITIES |
| 1056567 | 2018-02-23 10:50:36 | CH0009886828 | Per unit | EQUITIES |

After cleanup:

| _PROCESS_IK | DWH_LOAD_TS | SEC_ISIN | SEC_QUOTE_TYPE | SEC_SECURITY_GROUP |
|-------------|---------------------|--------------|----------------|--------------------|
| 1056557 | 2018-02-22 15:48:38 | CH0009886828 | Percent | PH EQUITY |
| 1056567 | 2018-02-23 10:50:36 | CH0009886828 | Per unit | EQUITIES |

11.2.5 Removed database statistics gathering from DWH loading

As of version 6.4, DWH loading performance has been improved by removing the embedded statistics gathering from staging tables at load time.

Note

Data Warehouse now follows the general SimCorp Dimension recommendation that **statistics gathering** is controlled by client Database Administrator directly on database level.

11.2.6 Enhanced Merge Models capabilities [6.3]

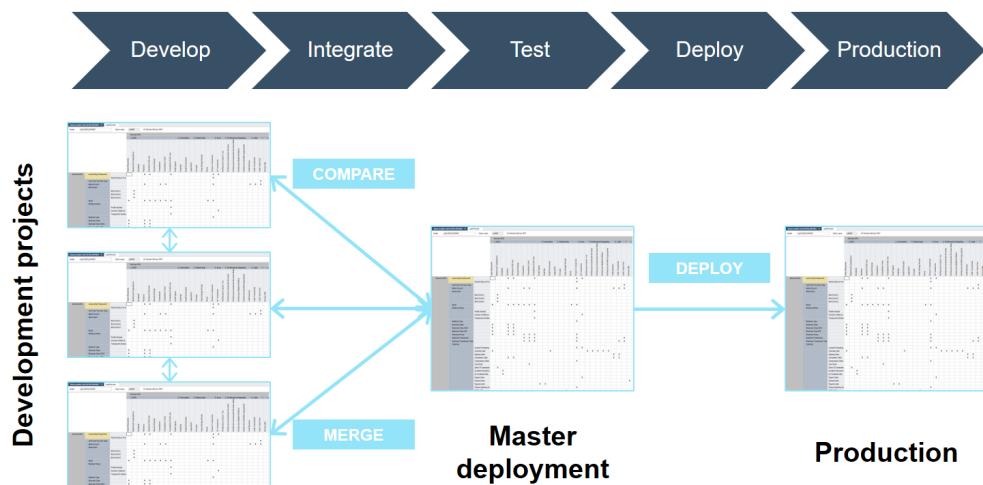
As of version 6.4, the **Merge Models** tool in the **Data Model Designer** ribbon in the **Data Warehouse Manager** has been enhanced to include the copying of an additional component:

- **Base Marts**

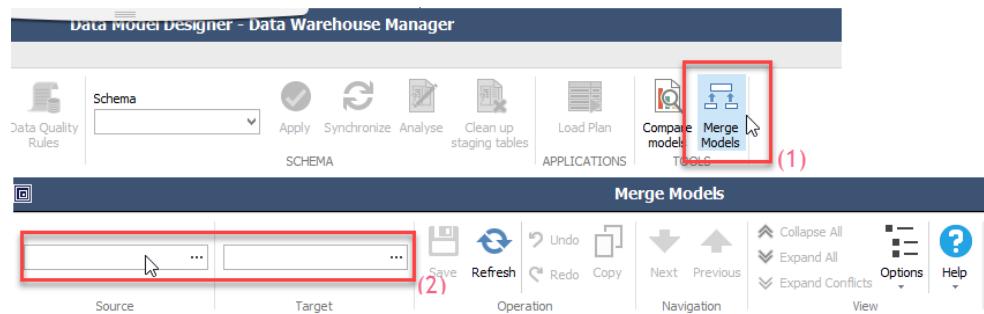
The **Model Merge** tool enables data warehouse developers to copy components from a source model into a target master model prior to, for example, a deployment. The tool is able to merge (copy) the following components:

- **Facts**
- **Dimensions**
- **Relationships**
- **Base Marts**

The **Merge Models** tool enables the client's data warehouse developers to work in parallel on multiple projects or source models, comparing differences, and at completion merge the missing (new or altered) components from the different data warehouse models into a single master model that can be deployed.



The following example is a walk-through of how the tool is intended to be operated. You are in the **Data Warehouse Manager** in the **Data Model Designer** and the source and the target model you are about to compare and merge have been saved and are known data warehouse models:



1. In **Data Model Designer** ribbon in the **Tools** group, click the **Merge Models** icon (1).
2. In the **Merge Models** window, select a **Source** and a **Target** model (2) either
 - A. by clicking in the field and searching for the model by writing part of its name, or
 - B. by clicking the browse button [...] and navigate to the model in the pop-up window.
3. When the models have been selected, they will be presented in a tree structure below the **Merge Models** ribbon in the window.

| Explorer | Source | Target |
|--|----------------------------|----------------------------|
| Explorer Data Warehouse Schema Name DEMO MERGE SOURCE DEMO MERGE TARGET Name Short Name Version Facts (9) Dimensions (3) Base Marts | DEMO MERGE SOURCE MERGS | DEMO MERGE TARGET MERGT |

4. The tree structure shown in the **Explorer** column is the combined components of the source and target models and all the nodes of the tree are initially collapsed.



5. Note that the components are colour coded according to conflicts and in which model they are located:
- Conflicts (red)** - signifies that same component exists in both the source and target models and there are differences in the two versions. Components in conflict cannot be copied.
 - Only in Source (light green)** - signifies that the component only exists in the source model and can be copied to the target model.
 - Only in target (teal)** - signifies that the component only exists in the target model.
 - Changes (grey)** - signifies user made changes that have not been saved yet.

Note

Components in conflict cannot be copied and have to be handled manually in **Data Model Designer**.

6. To look more closely at the components' colour coded categories, you must expand them to show more details.



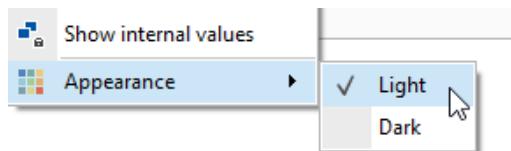
7. This can be done either

- by expanding each node individually by clicking on a node, or
- by applying the **Collaps/Expand** buttons under the ribbon group **View**, you are able to:
 - Collapse All** - collapses all components of the currently selected node in the tree.
 - Expand All** - expands all components of the currently selected node in the tree. This is only available on nodes of fact, dimension or base mart or lower levels of these.
 - Expand Conflicts** - only expands components that have differences.

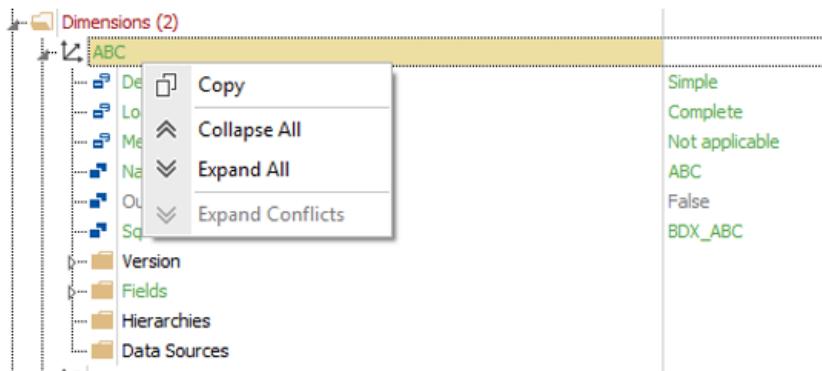
8. In more complex tree structures (larger models than in this example), filtering the models may offer a more clear view. The **Options** button in the **View** group lets you filter on:
 - A. **Show only differences** - filters away all components that do not have differences.
 - B. **Show internal values** - shows internal keys and other technical fields.

Note

Under the **Options** button, you can also change the appearance of the application skin.



9. When you have an overview of the relevant components and conflicts, you will need to merge (copy) components from the source to the target. You do this by right-clicking on a component that is only in the source and selecting **Copy** in the context menu.



10. When selecting **Copy**, the source component will be copied to the target model. If a component is part of a relationship in the model, all other relevant components, such as the related fact/dimension and relationship, will be copied automatically.

Note

Lack of source components in the target model will not prevent the copying of model components. For instance, a base mart may still be copied even though the target model does not contain all the source tables or fields it is based on.

11. When you have copied all the necessary components from the source model into the target model, you must then save the model. Click the **Save** button in the **Operation** group of the **Merge Models** ribbon.

Note

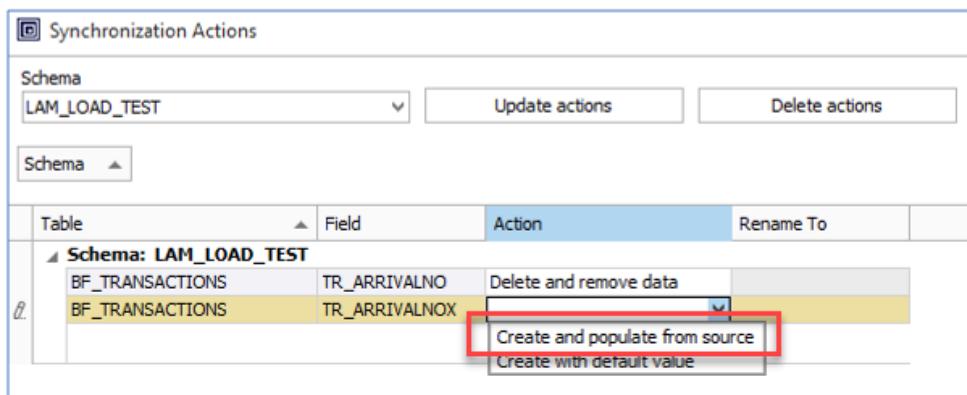
The **Refresh** button in the **Operations** group clears all user changes and reloads both the source and the target models.

12. After saving the target model, this model will have been updated with all the copied components from the source model. This can be verified in the **Data Model Designer**.

11.2.7 Retro-fill historical fact records [6.3]

As of version 6.4, you can retro-fill new fields in historical fact records as part of the **Synchronization Actions** functionality.

When you insert new fields into existing fact tables, it is now possible to automatically fill these fields for already loaded records.



Your retro-fill is handled in the **Synchronization Actions** window in the **Data Model Designer** of the **DATA WAREHOUSE MANAGER**. To use this functionality you>

1. Open your model in the **Data Model Designer**.
2. Insert new fields in a fact with design pattern **Incremental** that already contain data.
3. Save the model.
4. in the **Data Model** ribbon, click either the **Synchronize** or **Analyze** icon to open **Synchronization Actions** window.
5. Set the action for the new fields to **Create and populate from source**.
6. Click **Save** and exit the window.
7. Now, click **Synchronize** to update the model with your changes.

The first load plan executed after the synchronization will detect that retro filling has been requested and create one load job per affected target table.

Note

Fields requested to be retro-filled will load with current values from the source and only current version records are loaded.

Load jobs for retro fill will do a complete load from source to staging, so load duration is typically longer than normal loads.

For more information about the **DATA WAREHOUSE**, see the **Data Warehouse Manager** user manual or contact your SimCorp representative.

11.2.8 Patched from 6.41

11.2.8.1 [New Module] New IMW Data Subject Area - Risk Reporting [6.4]

| | |
|-------------------------------------|--|
| Client segment | All |
| Target Audience | Data architects, business analysts and report developers |
| Subscription based licensing | Data Warehouse Manager |
| Module-based Licensing | Investment Manager Warehouse |

You can implement an MSCI Risk solution by using SimCorp Dimension as your holding platform combined with a MSCI Risk solution. You import MSCI results into SimCorp Dimension and view the results in the **Risk Analysis Manager** or prepare reports by using the **Report Manager**.

The MSCI Risk solution however, does not store the calculated results. To store the results, you need a data repository like the SimCorp Dimension DWH.

One of the complex parts of the MSCI interface solution is data grouping. Data grouping must remain consistent and align with how you view the Risk Reporting results. This is typically implemented in SimCorp Dimension by replicating a complex reporting structure for portfolio and benchmark holdings.

The new Risk Reporting subject area reduces the implementation effort and improves the data enrichment process for Risk Reporting. With the Risk Reporting data subject area, you can store historic MSCI Risk calculation results, while maintaining the data grouping and manage the links to SimCorp Dimension static data in the SimCorp Data Warehouse.

| Data model: RISK REPORTING | | Load Monitor | | | | | |
|----------------------------|----------------|--------------------------|----------------|---|---|--|--|
| Model | RISK REPORTING | Short name | RISKS | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Include SimCorp IMW | | | |
| RISK REPORTING | | | | | | | |
| 10. Risk Reporting | | | | | | | |
| RI | | Risk Aggregation Results | Risk Positions | RiskMetrics AggregationResults | | | |
| Aggregation Type | | | | | X | | |
| Calendar | | X | X | X | X | | |
| Key Ratio Type | | | | | X | | |
| Portfolio | | X | X | X | X | | |
| Asset Portfolio | | | | | | | |
| Assignment | | | | | | | |
| Top Portfolio | | | X | | | | |
| Reporting Structure | | X | | | | | |
| Risk Measurement | | X | X | | X | | |
| Accounting Framework | | | X | | | | |

Risk Reporting data coverage in the SimCorp IMW

The Risk Reporting data subject area covers the following:

- MSCI RiskMetrics Interface, for portfolios and benchmarks at multiple group/aggregation levels, including
 - Market risk value concentrations
 - Standard analytics (Duration, Greeks and other sensitivities)
 - Advanced analytics (VaR, ex-ante Volatilities, Stress tests, and more)
- Risk calculations through the Risk Manager, including
 - Sensitivities and Analytics – based on theoretical pricing models and external prices, interest rates sensitivities, Spread figures, Greeks and User defined key ratios and stress tests
 - Market Risk including Parametric, Historical Monte Carlo VaR etc., Stress tests. User definable time horizons, Risk factor contribution and internal models

Prior to version 6.41, the Risk Reporting data coverage was handled via the Compliance Manager subject area, including

- Credit Risk figures per counterparty and issuers
- Credit Risk - Transparency on all calculations and aggregation levels.

Benefits

- Improved data enrichment process for Risk reporting
- Reduced implementation effort for reporting requirements.

11.2.8.2 New Data Warehouse Read Role [6.3] [6.4]

As of version 6.41, you can easily grant read permissions to end users on DWH tables.

Earlier it was not possible to grant any permanent permissions to end users on DWH tables. If read rights were granted to a user on a DWH table, these permissions were only retained until the next synchronisation of the model. During synchronisation, all the permissions were automatically revoked. So the only stable way, for a user, to read data from a DWH schema, was by using the schema owner's credentials, that is, connect to the server as the schema owner, which provided full permissions to the schema.

Now the DBA can easily let users read from DWH tables through a special role named DWHREPROLE.

To grant read permission to users

1. The DBA creates the DWH user, if the user does not already exists.
2. The DBA creates the role named "DWHREPROLE".
3. The DBA grants the DWHREPROLE to the DWH user who needs to read from DWH tables.

Whenever you synchronise a model, the system checks if the DWHREPROLE role exists. If the role exists, SELECT privileges are granted automatically to the role on the DWH tables. As a result, any user, which is granted the DWHREPROLE role, can read from the DWH tables.

Technically speaking, the system automatically produces and executes a statement like this:

```
GRANT SELECT ON BD_TAX_LOT_DETAIL TO DWHREPROLE;  
GRANT SELECT ON BD_TIME_OF_DAY TO DWHREPROLE;  
GRANT SELECT ON BD_TRANS_CANC_FLAG TO DWHREPROLE;  
GRANT SELECT ON BD_TRANS_STATUS_ACTUAL TO DWHREPROLE;  
GRANT SELECT ON BD_USER TO DWHREPROLE;  
GRANT SELECT ON BF_ASSET_ALLOCATIONS TO DWHREPROLE;
```

New DWH tables will automatically be granted to the role, as soon as the table is physically been created in the schema.

11.3 Reporting Pool

11.3.1 MiFID II: Show status of Reporting Pool data [6.3]

As of version 6.4, you can show the status of Reporting Pool data in a dedicated **Reporting Pool Data Status** window. It shows the status of previous creations of Reporting Pool data, based on funds, portfolios, or segments, on approval level, and for a given time period.

To show the status of Reporting Pool data:

1. Open the **Reporting Pool Data Status** window.
2. Create or load an existing setup by filling in the **Reporting pool data status** and **Reporting pool data status name** fields.
3. Select applicable funds, portfolios, portfolio groups, or segments in the **Selection** section.
4. Select the desired **Level of approval** status settings for the records to show.
5. Define the period of data to show by entering actual or reference dates in the **From date** and **To date** fields.
6. Optionally, select the desired **Pool type** setting.
7. Click **Load**. The created Reporting Pool data sets are listed in the grid.

To process Reporting Pool data sets, select one or several row entries in the grid:

- To delete the created data sets, click **Delete**.
- To display the data in a data set, click **Show Pool Data**.
- To toggle the **Level of approval** status, click **Change status**.

11.3.2 Numeric fields in Reporting Pool use accounting formatting

As of version 6.4, numeric fields in the Reporting Pool use accounting formatting when this is set up in the Windows operating system on which SimCorp Dimension is running. This means that negative numbers can be displayed in round parentheses and with a digit grouping symbol. This aligns the behaviour of the Reporting Pool with, for example, Asset Manager where the same behaviour applies. It is useful when delivering accounting data in the pool, for example, for NAIC reporting.

To set up accounting formatting in the Windows operating system, so it is used also in the Reporting Pool:

1. Open the **Region** window in Windows on the **Formats** tab.
2. Click the **Additional settings...** button. The **Customize Format** window opens.

3. On the **Numbers** tab, ensure that the appropriate settings are configured in these fields:
 - A. **Decimal symbol**
 - B. **Digit grouping symbol**
 - C. **Negative number format**, for example, **(1.1)**.

As a result, the Reporting Pool will use the same formatting for numeric fields. For example, a negative number is displayed as: **(24,404,704.36)**.

11.3.3 Patched from 19.01

11.3.3.1 Added reporting status of fills [6.3] [6.31] [6.4] [6.41]

As of version 19.01, you can see the reporting status of fills whether an allocation has been included in reporting pool results. This adds transparency and ensures that fills are only included in a single reporting pool.

When you create a reporting pool, the **Reporting status** field is set to **Extracted to reporting pool** for all allocation entries in the **Fills** window that are included in the pool data.

As a result, transactions which are part of the same allocation (and with the same **Order Manager allocation ID** value in the **View Transactions** window) are included only in the Fills of one **Reporting Pool** execution.

If you delete pool results that contained any given fill, the transactions will be included in the next results for any pool which could receive the fill.

12 Risk Analysis Manager

12.1 MSCI RiskMetrics Integration

12.1.1 Patched from 19.04

12.1.1.1 Omit model portfolios in MSCI Risk Manager [6.4] [6.41] [19.01]

| | |
|-------------------------------|--|
| Client segment | All clients who use the MSCI RiskMetrics interface solution and model portfolios |
| Target audience | Middle office, risk managers, and portfolio managers |
| Role-based licensing | Risk Analysis Manager and add-ons |
| Module-based licensing | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Risk Reporting • MSCI RiskMetrics - Adaptor |

As of version 19.04, you can choose to omit the display of model portfolios in MSCI Risk Manager. This enables you to focus your analysis on the actual portfolios by streamlining the displayed data and skipping content that you may not need. Previously, model portfolios were included along with portfolios in MSCI Risk Manager, so they cluttered up the display. Model portfolios were also included for each portfolio in the position files that are transferred to MSCI, so this enhancement also optimises the position files and meta files.

Note

Omitting model portfolios means you can no longer map a specific risk to a specific model portfolio.

This only works for **Reporting Structures** setups where the **Tree type** field is set to **Investment structure**.

You can still use modelling to blend portfolios and benchmarks. This enhancement only affects the position and meta files that are transferred to MSCI and the data displayed in the MSCI Risk Manager.

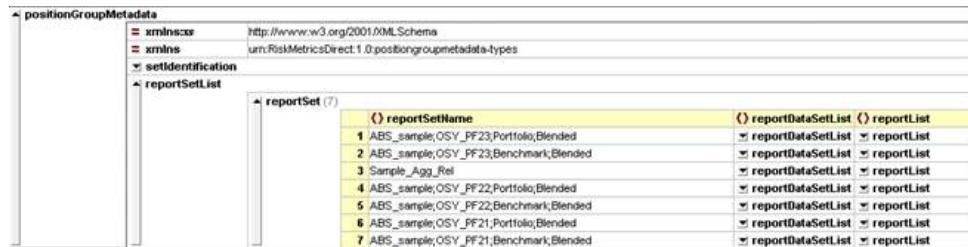
To omit model portfolios in MSCI Risk Manager:

1. Open the **Risk Measurement** window on the **MSCI Risk Metrics > Settings** tab.
2. Clear the **Blended reporting structure representation** check box.
(Selecting the check box includes model portfolios as before, also in the MSCI position files.)

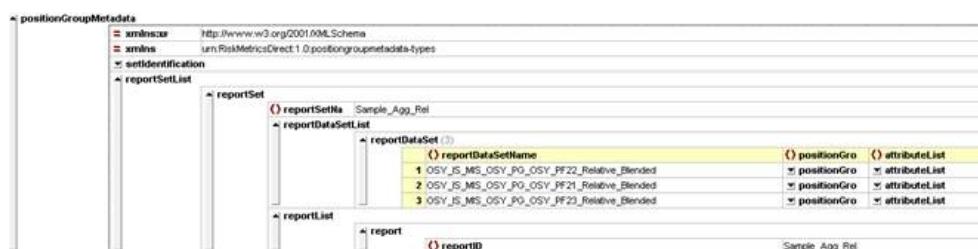
As a result:

1. The MSCI position file aggregates model portfolios under portfolios and thus omits holding groups with model portfolios.
2. The MSCI meta file requests reports for each portfolio.

Consider this sample meta file before the enhancement:



Compare it to this sample meta file with the enhancement:



13 Settlement

13.1 Status

13.1.1 Added more portfolio free codes to the Transaction Status widget in Dashboards [6.3.1-IMPL]

You can use additional portfolio free codes in the **Transaction Status** widget on your Dashboards to enhance your ability to aggregate and sort your data.

The portfolio free codes 1 through 28 and 30 through 91 are available in both charts and pivots.

13.1.2 Improved mapping between SimCorp Dimension and Omgeo OASYS

Several enhancements were made for better synchronisation of the information transferred from SimCorp Dimension to Omgeo OASYS.

For more information about the interface between SimCorp Dimension and Omgeo OASYS, see the new ***Omgeo OASYS Trade Manager*** user manual.

Include custody information in external client trade transactions

You can now include custody information on your block trade allocations regardless of whether you use SimCorp Dimension Order Manager or an external order manager system. The custody information on a block trade and its allocations is required for populating the Agent ID and Agent Internal Account Number fields that are sent to Omgeo OASYS from SimCorp Dimension.

Previously, custody information was only available when the orders came from Order Manager. When your orders came from an external order manager system to create your deal allocations, the custody information was not available and could not be included in messages to Omgeo OASYS.

Now you can include custody information by applying settlement defaults to the block trades in the **Deal Allocation** window. This change means that regardless of the source of the orders the custody information will be available on the block trade allocations and ready to include in the message to Omgeo OASYS.

Include the step-out broker when allocating block trades

You can now include the step-out broker information on your block trade allocations when you are using an external order manager system together with Omgeo OASYS. You add the new **Step-out broker** field to the **Allocations** grid in the **Deal Allocation** window.

View the trade matching information on transactions and allocations

You can now view the TradeMatch status and DTCC control numbers in the following areas of SimCorp Dimension window.

- In the **Omgeo OASYS Trade Manager**, you can see the **TradeMatch status** field in both sections of the **Monitor** tab.
- When creating an OASYS widget in a dashboard, you can include the **TradeMatch status** field.
- When messages are sent back to SimCorp Dimension from Omgeo OASYS, they include the DTCC affirmation number. You can display this number in the **DTC control number** field in the **OASYS communication** section on the **Monitor** tab in the **Omgeo OASYS Trade Manager** window.
- The DTCC affirmation number is available on the `Mappings.xml` and `WorkstationConfiguration.xml`. This is used with the SimCorp Dimension Communication Server solution in connection with the Omgeo OASYS trading platform.

13.1.3 Create transactions for bulk cash in the Transaction Explorer [6.4]

You can create multiple transactions for bulk cash—general costs, coupons, and redemptions for bonds—in the new **Transaction Explorer** window.

You make the distributions for bulk cash in the **Allocate Exceptions** applet in the **Reconciliation Manager** as described in [Distribute bulk cash across several securities](#). You then trigger the creation of the appropriate transactions, which opens the new **Transaction Explorer** window. Here you can inspect and save the transactions.

For more information, see the **Transaction Explorer** user manual.

13.2 SWIFT

13.2.1 Patched from 6.41

14 Trading

14.1 Order Manager

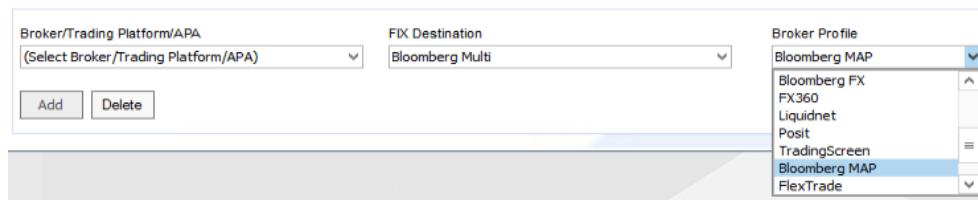
14.1.1 Hardware recommendation changes

As of this version of Order Manager, stress tests and work to improve the stability of **Order Manager - Order Service** have led to an increase in the recommended number of CPUs for large installations. This was previously 1 but is now 16. Please see the **System Administrator's Manual** for more information.

14.1.2 Bloomberg Multi-Asset Protocol for FI and FX

As of this version of Order Manager, there is a new certified interface which enables you to use Bloomberg's Multi-Asset Protocol (MAP) for FI and FX trades (excluding OTCs).

The new pipeline to enable this is available in the Order Manager Operations Console for you to use when setting up FIX associations, but otherwise the interface works exactly as it did before and you will not see any difference when placing orders.



Note

Clients can have a single session or separate sessions for FI and FX.

In addition, you can now use broker restrictions for FX orders with Bloomberg MAP.

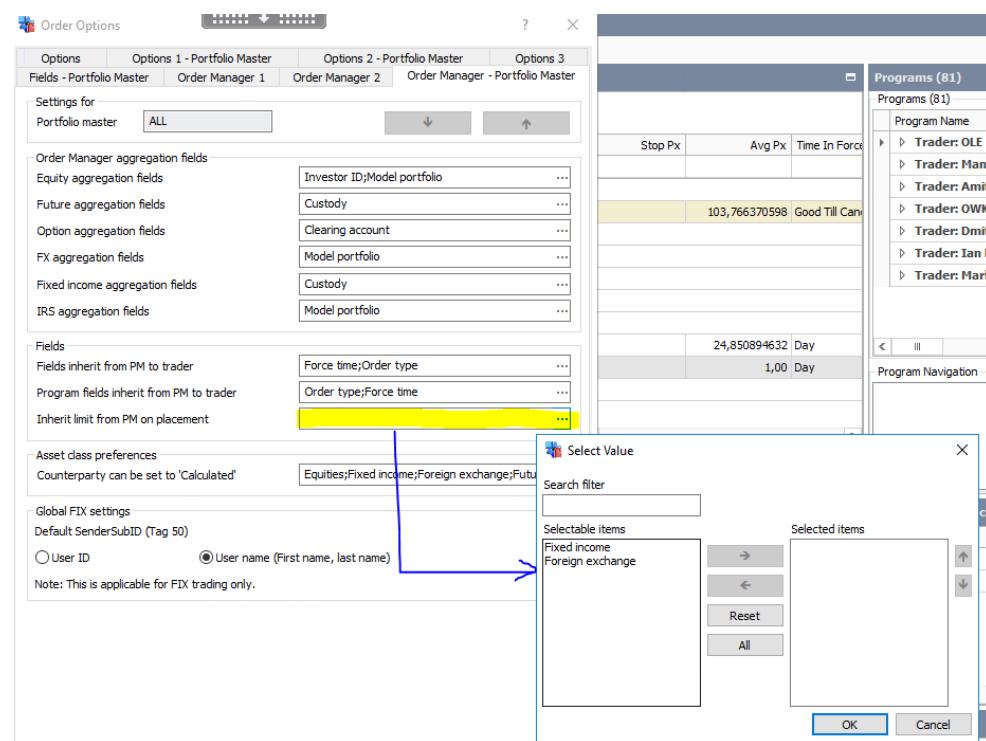
14.1.3 Limit orders

As of this version of Order Manager, you can use Limit Order and Limit Px orders in Order Manager for FI instruments and FX Spots and Forwards.

You can receive Limit Order type orders and Limit Px orders in Order Manager for FI instruments, FX Spots and FX Forwards. You can then place these received orders and the placement will respect the received **Limit Price** and **Order Type** fields.

Note

The values sent are based on the options selected in **Order Options**.



Limit orders are sent from Order Manager with the **Limit Price** as set in the portfolio order. These orders can be sent to the following platforms:

- FI:
 - Tradeweb
 - Bloomberg TSOX (by means of Bloomberg MAP only)
 - MarketAxess
 - Bond Vision
- FX:
 - Bloomberg FXGo (by means of Bloomberg MAP only)

Note

If you send a Limit order to any other platform, it will be treated as a normal "market" order.

You can also receive execution for Limit orders from the platform and can allocate the executed order/fill.

Note

A trader cannot alter or vary the **Limit Price** for these FI and FX orders in Order Manager. The price can only be managed and manipulated in the receiving platform.

Some platforms, for example BondVision, have a defined price tolerance in the number of decimal places that are permitted, and orders that do not meet the requirements may be rejected.

The order type and **Limit Price** are displayed in your blotter as normal.

14.1.4

Composite quotes [IMPL-6.3]

As of this version of Order Manager, you can pass composite quote information from Order Manager allocation messages to single transactions (by way of **Order Filters**) and can capture and store the composite quote and BVAL.

The composite quote is a single price calculated as an aggregation of all the current streaming quotes for the securities that are available on the platform. You can use this price to see where the market is at the point when you want to perform an execution, and you can also use it to compare the execution price with the pricing level in the market at the time.

BVAL is a bond price valuation field calculated by Bloomberg, and represents their estimation of what the price in the market should be. This is most relevant where only a small number of streaming quotes (or no quotes) are available for the security in the market, and you can use it in the same way as the Composite Quote to evaluate how the execution price achieved compares to the estimated price level in the market at that time.

Composite quote information for orders you allocate can be stored on single transactions, enabling transaction cost/best execution analysis to be done.

The composite quote information is saved from Order Manager Order Manager and is displayed in the **Best Execution Information** sub-windows of your dealer windows.

The composite quote information field mappings are as follows:

| OM allocation message attribute | Best Execution Information field | Values |
|---|--|---|
| AllocInstrctn@QuoteType | Composite price type (only map if AllocInstrctn/ExecutionAnalysis@CompositePrice has a value) | 1 = Price 2 = Yield 8 = Dirty price 5= Indexed price 9=Index ed dirty price 10=Yiel d, dirty |
| AllocInstrctn/ExecutionAnalysis@CompositePrice | Composite price | |
| AllocInstrctn/ExecutionAnalysis@CompositeMidPrice | Composite mid-price | |
| AllocInstrctn@QuoteType | BVAL price type (only map if AllocInstrctn/ExecutionAnalysis@BVALPrice has a value) | 1 = Price 2 = Yield 8 = Dirty price 5= Indexed price 9=Index ed dirty price 10=Yiel d, dirty |
| AllocInstrctn/ExecutionAnalysis@BVALPrice | BVAL price | |
| AllocInstrctn/ExecutionAnalysis@BVALMidPrice | BVAL mid-price | |

14.1.5 Improved support of FX NDFs [IMPL-6.3]

As of this version of Order Manager, you can now distinguish between FX forward and FX forward NDF (non-deliverable forward) orders when they are raised in Asset Manager.

For information about FX NDF orders in Asset Manager, see [Distinguish between FX forward and FX NDF orders on page 230](#).

14.1.6 MiFID II manual workflows [IMPL-6.1] [IMPL-6.2] [IMPL-6.3]

As of this version of Order Manager, you can ensure that you are compliant with MiFID II trade and transaction reporting requirements when trading manually with brokers or trading venues. The Front Office modules support the record keeping requirements of brokers and trading venues when trading manually. In Order Manager, you can see the required outbound fields when adding order details manually and can enter the required information when entering order execution details.

This is supported in the following fields:

- Outbound:
 - **Place**
 - **External Netting (File)**
 - **Capture (Take Bid)**
- Blotter and Inbound:
 - **Capture Trade**

The applicable fields are:

- Outbound:
 - **Order Capacity**
 - **Investment Decision maker**
 - **3rd Party Representative**
 - **Short Sell**
- Inbound:
 - **Post Trade Indicator**
 - **Waiver Indicator**
 - **TVTIC**
 - **Trade Reported**
 - **ISIN**
 - **CFI**

For further details, see the ***MiFID II Guide***.

14.1.7 MiFID II inbound and outbound data for program trades - FILE trading [IMPL-6.1] [IMPL-6.2] [IMPL-6.3]

As of this version of Order Manager, you can ensure that you are compliant with MiFID II transaction reporting requirements when trading programs manually with brokers and can also comply with the MiFID II requirements of brokers with whom you trade programs.

SimCorp Dimension enables you to ensure compliance by:

- Exporting the short sell indicator to CSV files using the Program Placement functionality.
- Importing the OTC Post-Trade Indicator from CSV files using the Program Placement and Import Executions functionality.
- Importing execution timestamps to millisecond precision.

Note

Single program order behaviour is covered by MiFID II Manual Workflows ([MiFID II manual workflows \[IMPL-6.1\] \[IMPL-6.2\]](#) [[IMPL-6.3](#)] on the previous page).

For further details, see the ***MiFID II Guide***.

14.1.8

MiFID II FIX to APA reporting [IMPL-6.3]

As of this version of Order Manager, transparency reporting is delivered through the FIX message-based interface from Order Manager to the APA.

MiFID I required the publication of prices for equity trades. This requirement increased and MiFID II extended post-trade transparency requirements to almost all liquid instruments and restricted trading venues' use of waivers from those requirements. Under these rules, venues and market participants must publish trades within a very short time frame to an APA. The buy-side is affected by this publication requirement under certain conditions and Order Manager has been enhanced to provide trade reporting to APA by way of FIX.

Note

Equity Futures and Options support was previously available (in release version 6.3) and support for fixed income instruments has now been added.

The only APA that is supported is Trax.

For further details, see the ***MiFID II Guide***.

14.1.9

Indicator to show active placements at parent level [IMPL-6.3]

As of this version of Order Manager, you can identify parent orders which have active placements. This enables you to know if there are parent orders that need to be placed.

An indicator is displayed in your parent blotter in the Order Manager to indicate that a parent has an associated placement that is in a working state. The indicator is displayed until such time as the placement is complete, cancelled or allocated.

A placement is considered to be active when it is in one of the following states:

- **Order Sent**
- **Order Ack'd**
- **Working**
- **Complete**
- **Cancel Sent**
- **Cancel Ack'd**
- **Amend Sent**
- **Amend Ack'd**

If the placement is in any other state, it is not active. Non-active states are;

- **Cancelled**
- **Rejected**
- **Allocated**
- **Pending Allocation Amend**
- **Allocation Amend Requested**
- **Settled**

14.1.10 **Grouping fills for futures for allocation [IMPL-6.3]**

As of this version of Order Manager, fills for futures can be grouped together for allocation if they have the same price. This reduces the number of transactions you create, and can reduce the cost of back office processing.

The market standard workflow for futures is to keep contracts with different execution prices separate. However, in version 6.1 of Order Manager, you could configure the system so that fills for futures could be allocated individually, or together with an average price. You can now also group together fills with the same price.

14.1.11 **Program merging**

As of this version of Order Manager, you can merge a newly created program to an existing program in the program trading area of Order Manager.

You can combine individual programs released by multiple portfolio managers into single programs to permit greater aggregation opportunities or to combine multiple orders into a single program execution with a broker.

You can merge all the items in a source program in your program view into a target program, if the following rules are met:

- The target program is not in an end state (it must be new or working).
- The source program is in a new state (no placements have been made).
- You must be the current trader for both programs.

This functionality is available regardless of whether you created the programs manually or received them as a program from Asset Manager.

Any fields relating only to the original master program of the source (for example the program name from Asset Manager) are discarded. Only the target program's details are retained.

1. From the **Merge Program** action in the **Program** view, select the source program which you want to merge.
2. Select the required target programs from the drop-down list. The target program must be an existing new program or a working program.

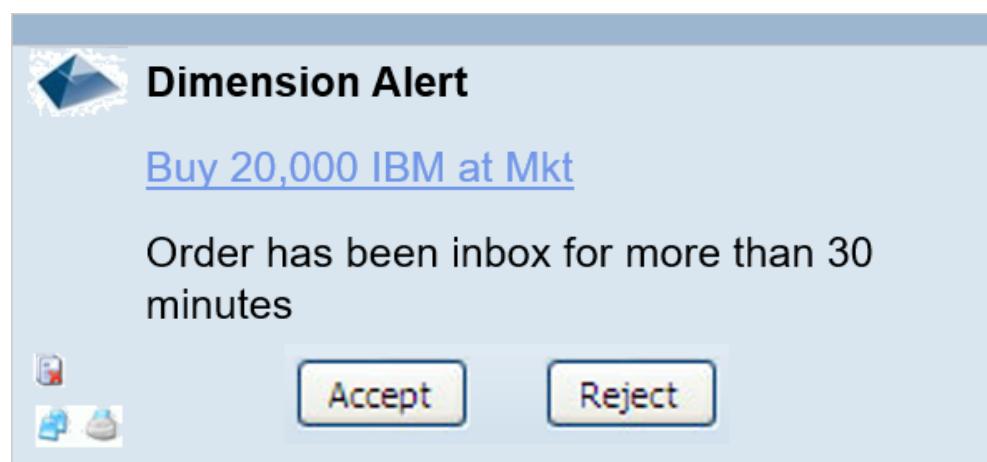
If the merge is successful, the orders in the source program are merged in to the target program and the source program is no longer visible in the program view.

If the source program was received from a portfolio manager, the **PM Program ID** is retained at portfolio order level and can be viewed in the portfolio breakdown blotter.

14.1.12 **Adding a pop-up to force traders to action orders that have been in their inbox for a certain period [IMPL-6.3][IMPL-6.31]**

As of this version of Order Manager, you can set an alert to be triggered once a portfolio order or a program has been in the Order Manager inbox for longer than a pre-configured time period since its arrival (for example 30 minutes) but has not been accepted.

The alert is displayed in the form of a pop-up which is visible to all users with access to the dealing desk on which the order is located. The purpose of the pop-up is to prevent dealers missing out on opportunities to trade.



You can configure the time period at which the alert is triggered or can disable it so that it is never displayed.

To configure the alarm:

1. From the **Order Options** window, select the **Order Manager 2** tab.
2. In the **Order Manager - Notifications** section, specify the **Time for order to remain in inbox before alert (minutes)** in minutes, and click **Save**.

Order Options

| Options | Options 1 - Portfolio Master | Options 2 - Portfolio Master | Options 3 |
|---|------------------------------|------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| Fields - Portfolio Master | Order Manager 1 | Order Manager 2 | Order Manager - Portfolio Master |
| Auto allocation settings | | | |
| Timeout (minutes) | 3 | | |
| Start-up delay (minutes) | 1 | | |
| Polling interval (minutes) | 1 | | |
| Batch size | 0 | | |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable scheduled allocation | | | |
| Allocation time UTC (24hr) | 09:00 | | |
| Auto cancel settings | | | |
| Batch size | 0 | | |
| Force cancel delay (minutes) | 5 | | |
| Order Manager dashboard settings | | | |
| Default period | Yearly | | |
| Default number of periods | 2 | | |
| Default latest period start date | (undefined) ... | | |
| Default reporting currency | EUR ... | | |
| Cache transaction data from | -1Y ... | | |
| Cache transaction data to | -1BD ... | | |
| Time for cache data refresh | 08:49 | | |
| Order Manager - Functional configuration | | | |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Turn off view for live executions | | | |
| Future fills allocation method | Group - same price | | |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Enable voice confirmation with the selected platform | IHE REAL BV_TP ... | | |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Send trade reports to the selected APA | OLE APA PARTY ... | | |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Send Single Program Orders as a program to EMS when placing multiple orders | | | |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Send Single Program Orders to EMS only | | | |
| Order Manager - Notifications | | | |
| Time for order to remain in inbox before alert (minutes) | 0 | | |

14.1.13 Removed Oracle Notification

As of version 6.4 of Order Manager, Oracle Notification is no longer used in Order Manager. This deprecation does not change the functional behaviour of **Order Manager** and was done for architectural improvement only. However, the **Mgmt service notifications** and **Trade order status notifications** configuration parameters are still visible.

14.1.14 Patched from 19.01

14.1.14.1 Pass manually entered commission fees for options on to transactions [6.4][6.41]

As of this version, traders can now see the default calculated commission fees and modify them, if required, when allocating orders for options.

Using the **Cost Setup for Orders** window, you can select **Option** in the **Instrument type** field and assign the appropriate cost or commission.

As a result, the commission fees are passed onto transactions in the single transaction flow and the deal allocation flow. For the single transaction flow, you must add cost-related fields in the order filter for the **Dealer Options** window and set **Order Manager** as the place of use.

14.2 Trade Capture

14.2.1 Added dirty price quotations for bond forward contracts [6.3.1-IMPL]

You can now quote bond forward contracts in SimCorp Dimension based on the dirty price.

When setting up a trade in the **Trade Manager**, you can now also select **Dirty price** in the **Quotation** field. Previously, you could only select **Price** or **Yield**, where price only meant the clean price.

When you use the **Dirty price** quotation type, the forward price result in the **Forward price** field is interpreted as the dirty price.

This dirty price classification follows the trade throughout its lifecycle. For example, when you make a partial or full close of this trade in **Position Search**, the quotation price is locked in as dirty price.

The dirty price classification persists through maturity in the **Maturity Futures and Forwards** window.

- If your trade was specified as cash-settled, the **Price** field is set as dirty price and cannot be changed. Therefore, even if you have imported a clean price for fixing your transaction, that price will be converted to a dirty price and settled based on the dirty price.
- If your trade was configured for a physical delivery, the current value shown in the **Quotation and portfolio values** section is equal to the dirty price. Because it is a dirty price, there is no accrued interest shown in the **Accr. Int.** fields.

14.2.2 Capture tri-party and CCP repos in Trade Manager

As of version 6.4, you can capture cleared and tri-party repos in **Trade Manager**.

Capture a repo trade as a tri-party trade if a third party manages the contract by taking care of the collateral and the administration.

To set up a party as a CCP or a tri-party agent, select the **CCP or Tri-party agent** check box in the **Parties** window on the **Info > Address** tab. You can use the common in-window search to find all tri-party setups.

To capture a cleared or tri-party repo in **Trade Manager**, create a repo trade in **Trade Manager** as usual, for example, by starting with a bond underlying or a pool underlying. In the **Repo** instrument section of the trade, you can:

- Select a setup in the **CCP** field to record the central clearing counterparty as part of the repo's static data.

Note

Filling in the **CCP** field does not drive a clearing workflow.

-
- Select a setup in the **Tri-party agent** field to record the repo's tri-party agent.

You can apply settlement defaults for repos in **Trade Manager** for combinations of **Portfolio**, **Counterparty** and **Tri-party agent** setups after you have set up such defaults in these windows:

- **Settlement - Counterparties Delivery Defaults**
- **Settlement - Our Defaults by Counterparty**
- **Settlement - Counterparties' Payment Defaults**

To apply a corresponding settlement default, first select **Counterparty** and **Tri-party agent** setups, then click the **Apply SSI** button on the **Settlement** tab. The **Our settlement**, **Clearing houses**, and **Counterparty settlement** sections are then filled in, based on the available settlement default settings.

You can also import, modify, and delete tri-party agents by using base filter **BASE_1551** for parties which has been extended by the **Tri-party agent** field. (The **CCP** field was previously available.) The fields **Central_clearing_party** and **Triparty_agent** are also available in **Data Import Rules** setups where the **Import target** field is set to **Trade Manager**.

14.2.3 Capture cross-currency repo from pool template [6.3]

As of version 6.4, you can capture a cross-currency repo in Trade Manager

from a pool template. As of version 6.3, you could already capture such repos in Trade Manager, but not based on a pool template.

Before you capture a cross-currency repo from a pool template, ensure that:

- A suitable pool template setup exists in the **Collateral Pools > Templates** sub-window.
- A pool setup exists in the **Collateral Pools** window which you can assign in the **Underlying security** field of your cross-currency repo.

14.2.4 **Added American optionality for swaptions**

As of version 6.4, **Trade Manager** supports American optionality for swaptions, which means you can select a dedicated American exercise style for swaptions. Previously, **Trade Manager** supported only European optionality.

Currently, **Trade Manager** only supports non-concurrent underlying swaps which means the swap starts only at the exercise date plus the settlement days.

To select American optionality for a new swaption trade:

1. Register a **Vanilla Swaption (OTC)** trade in **Trade Manager** as normal.
2. Set the **Exercise style** field in the **Swaption Information** section to **American**. The **First exercise date** field is displayed.
3. Set the **First exercise date** field to the first day when a customer can exercise the option, with cash settlement or with physical delivery. (You can save a template for this instrument without this date.)
4. Ensure that the **Settlement days** field is set to the correct number of business days before you receive the cash or enter into the physical swap.
5. For cash settled swaptions with par yield settlement methods, you can review the contract logic in the **Cash flow/Fixings > Cash flow** tab in the **Value** field.

Once you have saved such a swaption trade, you can also novate and close the transaction as with other swaptions.

To exercise such an instrument, you must adhere to the following workflow:

1. Register the decision in the **XpressInstrument Decisions** window.
2. Enter the fixings.
3. Enter the payments.

14.2.5 Forecast swap cashflows for physical delivery swaptions

As of version 6.4, you can forecast and display the cashflows of swaps that are underlyings of physical delivery swaptions. This applies to swaptions with European exercise style in the **Trade Manager**.

For swaptions with a cash settlement method, you can configure payment adjustments which affect payment dates and fixing dates:

- For swaptions with the **Cash settlement method** field set to **Par yield (adjusted)** or **Par yield (unadjusted)**, access the **Swaption par yield payment adjustments** section on the **Conventions** tab. There you can select a **Business days convention** setup and a **Calendar** setup. If the swaption has a **Fixing index** setup configured on the **Trade Information** tab in the **Swaption Information** section, the two payment adjustment fields default to the settings of the index and cannot be changed in the swaption trade. Use the **Reference Rates Definitions** window to display or edit the index conventions.
- For swaptions with the **Cash settlement method** field set to **Cash price**, the **Business days convention** setting per **Business centre** setup and a **Holiday calendar** setup in the **Swap payment adjustments** section on the **Conventions** tab for the fixed, floating, and reset floating leg default to the settings of the floating rate **Index** setup in the **Swap Information** section. Use the **Floating Rate Index Definitions** window to display or edit the index conventions. Changing or clearing the floating rate **Index** setup in the **Swap Information** section will clear the payments adjustments.

For the forecasting of cashflows in the **Cash Management** window, ensure that a **Pricing profile** setup in the **Orders** section and, optionally, a **Term structure** setup are configured in the **Cash Management > Settings** sub-window.

When you exercise the swaption, SimCorp Dimension copies the **Swap payment adjustments** settings from the swaption's **Conventions** tab to the swap, specifically the **Business centre** and **Holiday calendar** IDs for the various legs. (These settings take their defaults from the **Floating Rate Index Definitions** setup of the swap's **Index** as assigned on the **Trade Information** tab, but you can override the defaults manually on the swaption.)

For physical delivery swaptions, the **Cash flow/Fixings** tab shows the cashflow forecast and future fixings with dates and values.

The cashflow forecast is also available in the **Cash Management** window and in the **Cash Viewer** of Asset Manager.

To extract the cashflow forecast, execute it in the **Cash Management** window, save the result and use data extract as in other scenarios.

14.2.6 Added collateralized cash price settlement method for swaptions

As of version 6.4, SimCorp Dimension supports collateralized cash price as an additional cash settlement method for European style swaptions. This implements an ISDA market standard method.

The added method calculates the settlement amount by using discount factors which are based on the yield curve that has been defined for the collateral, usually an OIS curve.

The settlement amount is calculated as follows:

- For the Payer swaption: $\text{Max}[(\sum df_t) \times (\text{Fixing} - \text{Strike}); 0]$
- For the Receiver swaption: $\text{Max}[(\sum df_t) \times (\text{Strike} - \text{Fixing}); 0]$

Where df_t is the t-year discount factor with or without compounding:

- When calculated from bond instruments with compounding: $df_t = 1 / (1 + z_t)^t$
- When calculated from money market instruments without compounding: $df_t = 1 / (1 + z_t \times t)$

Where z_t is the t-year zero coupon rate.

To apply this settlement method to a swaption:

1. Capture a swaption trade in **Trade Manager** as usual, for example, a **Swaption Vanilla (Xpress) - Trade** with these settings on the **Trade Information** tab:
 - A. Set the **Settlement method** field to **Cash**.
 - B. Set the **Cash settlement method** field to **Collateralized cash price**.
 - C. Select a **Fixing index** setup. This fills the **Fixed leg** section.
 - D. Select a **Yield Curve Manager** setup in the **Settlement discount curve** field. Eligible are yield curve setups where:
 - I. The **Yield curve type** field is set to **Zero coupon**.
 - II. The **Yield curve class** field is set to **Estimated** or **Quoted**.
 - III. The **Yield curve estimate principle** field is set to **Bootstrap**, **Bootstrap (foreign)**, **Maximum smoothness**, or **Tenor curve**
 - E. Save the trade. This fills the **Observables' first fixings** section automatically, based on the **Payment frequency** setting on the fixed leg. For details, see the **Market Observables** window where you can load data for **Basic type** setting **Yield curve**, based on the yield curve ID in the **Yield curve** field.
2. Near the expiry of the swaption, enter a decision transaction, if the swaption doesn't exercise automatically.

3. On the expiry date of the swaption, define a fixing transaction which defines the value of the fixing index as well as annuity, based on the discount factors.
4. Create a maturity transaction which closes the swaption transaction and pays out the settlement amount.

14.2.7 Aligned swaption pricing in Trade Manager

As of version 6.4, the pricing of swaptions in **Trade Manager** has been aligned with the pricing in other places in SimCorp Dimension and in theoretical pricing. This two-part enhancement removes previous pricing inconsistencies.

Multi-curve pricing

Previously, **Trade Manager** only used the fixing yield curve for both purposes, to calculate the par rate and for pricing. This applied even if a discounting yield curve had been configured in the **Xpress Pricing Model Manager** or the **Pricing definition** field.

As of version 6.4, **Trade Manager** uses both yield curves:

- The fixing yield curve applies to estimating the rates for the floating leg.
- The discounting yield curve applies to:
 - Discounting the cash flows of both the floating and fixed legs to calculate the par rate.
 - Calculating the dirty price in the **Portfolio Calculation**.

This enhancement affects Black 76, Normal, and SABR models and also the compound CMS caps.

Smile correction for delta and gamma

Previously, the **Smile correction for delta and gamma** check box on the **Miscellaneous Options** window on the **Analyses/Key ratios** tab applied only to equity-like derivatives, but not to interest rate derivatives.

As of version 6.4, this option also applies to swaptions in **Trade Manager** and to XpressInstruments caps and floors. This enhancement aligns different approaches to theoretical pricing. It affects Black 76 and Normal models, but not the SABR model.

For additional information about the check box, see the "Use smile correction for delta and gamma" field help entry.

14.2.8 Register amortising, accreting, and rollercoaster cross-currency swaps

As of version 6.4, support for cross-currency amortising and accreting

swaps has been added in Trade Manager. This feature allows you to capture the three cross-currency swaps: **Cross currency, basis, Cross currency fixed/fixed**, and **Cross currency fixed/float** with decreases and/or increases of the notional as pre-determined in the contract term sheet. The intermediate notional exchanges relevant for these swaps are free of FX rate changes. This allows you to capture the swap with pre-determined linear or variable amortisation structure over the lifecycle of the trade.

To capture a cross-currency swap with these changing notional amounts:

1. Complete the information relevant for the trade in the **Trade Information** and **Conventions** tabs.
2. Go to the **Cash flow/Fixings** tab and click the **Calculate cash flow** button.
The **Notional**, **Nominal, percentage**, and **Nominal, relative** fields are now available for editing. If they are not open, ensure that the relevant data is available in the grid and the **Interim payment (MTM)** check box is cleared.
3. To register a change of the notional, update the amount directly in the **Notional** column or change the percentage in the **Nominal, percentage** and **Nominal, relative** fields.

You can see the results of the changes you make in the two new fields, **Redemption amount** and **Final amount**, which have been added to the cash flow grids.

- **Redemption amount** field – This field is always empty for single currency swaps. For cross-currency swaps, the field displays any initial exchange or final exchange. For cross-currency swaps that are amortizing, accreting and rollercoaster swaps, the field displays pre-determined intermediate exchange amounts. The intermediate exchange is the difference between the next period's nominal and the nominal in the current row for cross currency swaps.
- **Final amount** field – This field is the sum of the amounts in the **Coupon amount** and the **Redemption amount** fields.

14.2.9 Use FRN as underlying for bond swaps in Trade Manager

As of version 6.4, you can use Floating Rate Notes (FRN) as underlyings for bond swaps and cross-currency TRS in **Trade Manager**. Previously, **Trade Manager** supported only fixed-rate and zero-coupon bonds as underlyings.

14.2.10 Register cross-currency swaps with only final exchange

As of version 6.4, you can register cross-currency swaps with only final exchange in **Trade Manager**. Previously, you could only register cross-currency swaps either when you had both an initial and a final exchange or when you had neither exchange.

To capture cross-currency swaps with only final exchange, ensure that the **Initial exchange** check box is cleared and the **Final exchange** check box is selected.

14.2.11 Retrieve Trade Manager contract data in database views

As of version 6.4, you can retrieve contract data for OTC XpressInstruments and custom instruments in Trade Manager in regular SimCorp Dimension database table views. This enhancement makes it easier to use Trade Manager data in other parts of SimCorp Dimension, including Data Warehouse.

For this purpose, database views are available for:

- Market standard XpressInstruments of type **OTC Xpress**, for example, AIDED - IV_SWAPPTIONS for swaptions
- Custom XpressInstruments of type **OTC Xpress** where **State** is set to **Released** or **Demo**, for example, AIDED - IV_FXDBARRIER for FX Option Double Barrier (OTC) instruments
- Grids in such instruments, for example, AIDED - IV_FXDBARRIER_CALENDARS for the calendar grid of FX Option Double Barrier (OTC) instruments

When additional XpressInstruments are added, run the SimCorp Dimension portal task **Update XpressInstruments Views** to create the corresponding table views for the added instruments.

To configure the retrieval of Trade Manager contract data, create a setup in the **Extraction Definitions** window as usual with these settings:

1. Select the appropriate table in the grid of the **Source > Tables** sub-tab.
2. Select the required fields in the grid of the **Source > Fields** sub-tab.
3. Set up the required joins in the grid of the **Source > Joins** sub-tab. XpressInstrument tables and custom instrument tables do not support auto-suggestion of joins in the way that standard tables do.
4. Configure **Sorts** and **Conditions**, if applicable.
5. If required, set up an SQL expression in the **SQL condition** section of the **Source > Extra** sub-tab.
6. Complete the extraction definition as normal:
 - A. Configure the output on the **Destination Fields** tab.
 - B. Optionally, apply formulas as selected and configured on the **Formulas** tab.
 - C. Optionally, configure a **Simple Calculator** on the **Plug-ins** tab.

To retrieve Trade Manager contract data, proceed as usual:

1. Assign the **Extraction Definitions** setup you have configured in an **Extraction Setups** setup.
2. Execute the extraction in the **Extracts Exporter Definitions** window or by using a batch job where the **Batch task** field is set to **Extracts Exporter Definitions - Execute**.

14.2.12 Improved workflow for offset close of cleared trades in Trade Manager [6.1-IMPL] [6.2-IMPL] [6.3-IMPL] [6.3.1-IMPL]

The naming of the close steps for cleared OTC trades in both Asset Manager and the **Trade Manager** are now aligned to synchronise workflows.

When you perform a position search for cleared OTC trades in the **Trade Manager**,

- You can close a post-trade event by selecting **Close** on the right-click menu.
- You can close a cleared trade by selecting **Offset Close** on the right-click menu.

The **Offset Close** menu item applies to cleared trades only for the following instruments:

- CDS index
- CDS single name
- IR swap, basis
- IR swap, BRL Pre DI
- IR swap, CNY 7D/3M
- IR swap, fixed/float
- IR swap, OIS
- IR swap, OIS/float
- Year-on-year inflation swap (OTC)
- Zero coupon inflation swap (OTC)
- OTC inflation swap

You can now import offset close trades for all instruments where offset close is enabled in the **Position search** applet.

14.2.13 Improved copy functionality in Trade Manager [6.3.1-IMPL]

As of version 6.4, the process for copying contracts in the **Trade Manager** has been improved so that you can apply authorisations to copying. The two types of copying have been improved, which means you can now select which type of copy function a given type of user profile can use. This reduces human error, operational risks, and possible data management

issues.

In the **Trade Manager**, you can select one of two different copy functions:

- **Copy and reuse Security**—Copies the current contract using the same security ID (previously named **Copy**) (keyboard shortcut CTRL+K)
- **Copy with new Security**—Copies the data to a new contract with a new security ID (keyboard shortcut ALT+K)

Authorisations are easier with the two distinct copy functions. You can restriction access to these copy functions in the **Tasks and Commands** window for either user authorisations or functional authorisation.

Navigate to **Trading > Trade Capture > Trade Manager > Actions** to find the two copy functions that you can authorise as required:

- **Copy and reuse Security**
- **Copy with new Security**

14.2.14 Added additional keyboard shortcuts in the Trade Manager

More keyboard shortcuts were added to the Trade Manager to improve the usability of the interface.

- The **Execute action** button now has the keyboard shortcut CTRL+X.
- Both of the copy functions now have keyboard shortcuts.
 - **Copy with new Security** uses the new keyboard shortcut ALT+K.
 - **Copy and reuse Security** already had a keyboard shortcut: CTRL+K.

ABOUT SIMCORP

SimCorp provides integrated, best-in-class investment management solutions to the world's leading asset managers, fund managers, asset servicers, pension and insurance funds, wealth managers and sovereign wealth funds. Whether deployed on premise or as an ASP solution, its core system, SimCorp Dimension, supports the entire investment value chain and range of instruments, all based on a market-leading IBOR. SimCorp invests more than 20% of its annual revenue in R&D, helping clients develop their business and stay ahead of ever-changing industry demands. Listed on NASDAQ Copenhagen, SimCorp is a global company, regionally covering all of Europe, North America, and Asia Pacific.

For more information, please visit www.simcorp.com.

ONE SYSTEM FOR A COMPLEX WORLD



LEGAL NOTICE

The contents of this publication are for general information and illustrative purposes only and are used at the reader's own risk. SimCorp uses all reasonable endeavors to ensure the accuracy of the information. However, SimCorp does not guarantee or warrant the accuracy, completeness, factual correctness, or reliability of any information in this publication and does not accept liability for errors, omissions, inaccuracies, or typographical errors. The views and opinions expressed in this publication are not necessarily those of SimCorp. © 2014 SimCorp A/S. All rights reserved. Without limiting rights under copyright, no part of this

document may be reproduced, stored in, or introduced into a retrieval system, or transmitted in any form, by any means (electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording, or otherwise), or for any purpose without the express written permission of SimCorp A/S. SimCorp, the SimCorp logo, SimCorp Dimension, and SimCorp Services are either registered trademarks or trademarks of SimCorp A/S in Denmark and/or other countries. Refer to www.simcorp.com/trademarks for a full list of SimCorp A/S trademarks. Other trademarks referred to in this document are the property of their respective owners.